

Microsoft®

# Excel VBA Programming FOR DUMMIES®

## Learn to:

- Use the essential tools and operations for VBA
- Get the most out of Excel's macro recording feature
- Handle errors and eliminate bugs in your code
- Develop custom worksheet functions and user-oriented applications



**John Walkenbach**

Author of Excel 2013 Bible

# Get More and Do More at Dummies.com®



Start with **FREE** Cheat Sheets

Cheat Sheets include

- Checklists
- Charts
- Common Instructions
- And Other Good Stuff!

To access the Cheat Sheet created specifically for this book, go to  
[www.dummies.com/cheatsheet/excelvbaprogramming](http://www.dummies.com/cheatsheet/excelvbaprogramming)

## Get Smart at Dummies.com

Dummies.com makes your life easier with 1,000s of answers on everything from removing wallpaper to using the latest version of Windows.

Check out our

- Videos
- Illustrated Articles
- Step-by-Step Instructions

Plus, each month you can win valuable prizes by entering our Dummies.com sweepstakes. \*

Want a weekly dose of Dummies? Sign up for Newsletters on

- Digital Photography
- Microsoft Windows & Office
- Personal Finance & Investing
- Health & Wellness
- Computing, iPods & Cell Phones
- eBay
- Internet
- Food, Home & Garden

## Find out "HOW" at Dummies.com

\*Sweepstakes not currently available in all countries; visit Dummies.com for official rules.



*Excel® VBA*  
*Programming*

FOR

**DUMMIES®**

3RD EDITION

**by John Walkenbach**



John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

## **Excel® VBA Programming For Dummies®, 3rd Edition**

Published by

**John Wiley & Sons, Inc.**

111 River Street

Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774

[www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com)

Copyright © 2013 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey

Published by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

**Trademarks:** Wiley, the Wiley logo, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, A Reference for the Rest of Us!, The Dummies Way, Dummies Daily, The Fun and Easy Way, Dummies.com, Making Everything Easier, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

**LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: THE PUBLISHER AND THE AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES OR PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY SITUATION. THIS WORK IS SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING LEGAL, ACCOUNTING, OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. IF PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED, THE SERVICES OF A COMPETENT PROFESSIONAL PERSON SHOULD BE SOUGHT. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING HEREFROM. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR A POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER ENDORSES THE INFORMATION THE ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT INTERNET WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ. FULFILLMENT OF EACH COUPON OFFER IS THE SOLE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE OFFEROR.**

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

For technical support, please visit [www.wiley.com/techsupport](http://www.wiley.com/techsupport).

Wiley publishes in a variety of print and electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some material included with standard print versions of this book may not be included in e-books or in print-on-demand. If this book refers to media such as a CD or DVD that is not included in the version you purchased, you may download this material at <http://booksupport.wiley.com>. For more information about Wiley products, visit [www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com).

Library of Congress Control Number: 2012956413

ISBN 978-1-118-49037-2 (pbk); ISBN 978-1-118-49038-9 (ePub); ISBN 978-1-118-49181-2 (eMobi);  
ISBN 978-1-118-49174-4 (ePDF)

Manufactured in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



## *About the Author*

**John Walkenbach** is the best-selling author of more than 50 spreadsheet books and lives in southern Arizona. When he's not using Excel, he's probably playing clawhammer banjo.

## *Dedication*

```
Sub Book_Dedication()
    name = Application.UserName
    reason = InputBox("What makes " & name & " so
                      special?")
    msg = "This book is dedicated to " & name
    msg = msg & " because " & reason
    MsgBox msg, vbInformation, "Dedication"
End Sub
```

## *Author's Acknowledgments*

I'm grateful to all the talented people at Wiley Publishing for giving me the opportunity to write Excel books. Special thanks to Kelly Ewing (project editor) and Niek Otten (technical editor). They certainly made my job easier.

## **Publisher's Acknowledgments**

We're proud of this book; please send us your comments at <http://dummies.custhelp.com>. For other comments, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

Some of the people who helped bring this book to market include the following:

### ***Acquisitions and Editorial***

**Project Editor:** Kelly Ewing

*(Previous Edition: Colleen Totz Diamond)*

**Senior Acquisitions Editor:** Katie Mohr

**Technical Editor:** Niek Otten

**Editorial Manager:** Jodi Jensen

**Editorial Assistant:** Anne Sullivan

**Sr. Editorial Assistant:** Cherie Case

**Cover Photo:** ©Konstantin Inozemtsev/  
iStockphoto

### ***Composition Services***

**Project Coordinator:** Katherine Crocker

**Layout and Graphics:** Jennifer Creasey,  
Christin Swinford

**Proofreaders:** Melissa Cossell, Jessica Kramer,  
Tricia Liebig, Rob Springer

**Indexer:** BIM Indexing & Proofreading Services

---

### ***Publishing and Editorial for Technology Dummies***

**Richard Swadley**, Vice President and Executive Group Publisher

**Andy Cummings**, Vice President and Publisher

**Mary Bednarek**, Executive Acquisitions Director

**Mary C. Corder**, Editorial Director

### ***Publishing for Consumer Dummies***

**Kathleen Nebenhaus**, Vice President and Executive Publisher

### ***Composition Services***

**Debbie Stailey**, Director of Composition Services

# Contents at a Glance

---

<b><i>Introduction .....</i></b>	<b>1</b>
<b><i>Part I: Getting Started with Excel VBA Programming.....</i></b>	<b>9</b>
Chapter 1: What Is VBA? .....	11
Chapter 2: Jumping Right In .....	21
<b><i>Part II: How VBA Works with Excel.....</i></b>	<b>31</b>
Chapter 3: Working in the Visual Basic Editor .....	33
Chapter 4: Introducing the Excel Object Model.....	53
Chapter 5: VBA Sub and Function Procedures .....	67
Chapter 6: Using the Excel Macro Recorder .....	79
<b><i>Part III: Programming Concepts.....</i></b>	<b>91</b>
Chapter 7: Essential VBA Language Elements.....	93
Chapter 8: Working with Range Objects .....	115
Chapter 9: Using VBA and Worksheet Functions.....	129
Chapter 10: Controlling Program Flow and Making Decisions.....	143
Chapter 11: Automatic Procedures and Events .....	163
Chapter 12: Error-Handling Techniques .....	183
Chapter 13: Bug Extermination Techniques .....	197
Chapter 14: VBA Programming Examples.....	209
<b><i>Part IV: Communicating with Your Users .....</i></b>	<b>231</b>
Chapter 15: Simple Dialog Boxes .....	233
Chapter 16: UserForm Basics .....	249
Chapter 17: Using UserForm Controls .....	265
Chapter 18: UserForm Techniques and Tricks .....	283
Chapter 19: Accessing Your Macros through the User Interface.....	307
<b><i>Part V: Putting It All Together.....</i></b>	<b>327</b>
Chapter 20: Creating Worksheet Functions — and Living to Tell about It.....	329
Chapter 21: Creating Excel Add-Ins .....	347

<b><i>Part VI: The Part of Tens</i></b> .....	<b>359</b>
Chapter 22: Ten VBA Questions (and Answers) .....	361
Chapter 23: (Almost) Ten Excel Resources .....	365
Chapter 24: Ten VBA Do's and Don'ts .....	369
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>375</b>

# Table of Contents

---

<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>1</b>
Is This the Right Book? .....	1
So You Want to Be a Programmer. ....	2
Why Bother?.....	2
What I Assume about You .....	3
Obligatory Typographical Conventions Section .....	4
Check Your Security Settings.....	5
How This Book Is Organized .....	6
Part I: Getting Started with Excel VBA Programming.....	6
Part II: How VBA Works with Excel.....	6
Part III: Programming Concepts .....	6
Part IV: Communicating with Your Users .....	7
Part V: Putting It All Together .....	7
Part VI: The Part of Tens.....	7
Icons Used in This Book .....	7
Getting the Sample Files .....	8
Now What?.....	8

## **Part I: Getting Started with Excel VBA Programming ..... 9**

<b>Chapter 1: What Is VBA? .....</b>	<b>11</b>
Okay, So What Is VBA? .....	11
What Can You Do with VBA? .....	12
Inserting a bunch of text .....	13
Automating a task you perform frequently .....	13
Automating repetitive operations .....	13
Creating a custom command.....	13
Creating a custom button .....	13
Developing new worksheet functions .....	14
Creating custom add-ins for Excel.....	14
Creating complete, macro-driven applications.....	14
Advantages and Disadvantages of VBA .....	14
VBA advantages .....	14
VBA disadvantages .....	15
VBA in a Nutshell.....	15
An Excursion into Versions.....	18

**Chapter 2: Jumping Right In ..... 21**

First Things First.....	21
What You'll Be Doing .....	22
Taking the First Steps .....	22
Recording the Macro.....	23
Testing the Macro.....	24
Examining the Macro .....	25
Modifying the Macro .....	27
Saving Workbooks That Contain Macros .....	27
Understanding Macro Security .....	28
More about the NameAndTime Macro .....	30

**Part II: How VBA Works with Excel..... 31****Chapter 3: Working in the Visual Basic Editor ..... 33**

What Is the Visual Basic Editor?.....	33
Activating the VBE .....	33
Understanding VBE components.....	34
Working with the Project Window .....	36
Adding a new VBA module .....	37
Removing a VBA module.....	38
Exporting and importing objects .....	38
Working with a Code Window.....	39
Minimizing and maximizing windows .....	39
Creating a module.....	40
Getting VBA code into a module.....	41
Entering code directly.....	41
Using the macro recorder.....	44
Copying VBA code .....	46
Customizing the VBA Environment.....	47
Using the Editor tab.....	47
Using the Editor Format tab .....	50
Using the General tab .....	51
Using the Docking tab .....	52

**Chapter 4: Introducing the Excel Object Model ..... 53**

Excel Is an Object?.....	54
Climbing the Object Hierarchy .....	54
Wrapping Your Mind around Collections.....	55
Referring to Objects .....	56
Navigating through the hierarchy .....	57
Simplifying object references.....	57
Diving into Object Properties and Methods .....	58
Object properties.....	60
Object methods.....	61
Object events.....	62

Finding Out More.....	63
Using VBA's Help system .....	63
Using the Object Browser .....	64
Automatically listing properties and methods .....	65
<b>Chapter 5: VBA Sub and Function Procedures .....</b>	<b>67</b>
Subs versus Functions .....	67
Looking at Sub procedures.....	68
Looking at Function procedures.....	68
Naming Subs and Functions .....	69
Executing Sub procedures.....	69
Executing the Sub procedure directly .....	71
Executing the procedure from the Macro dialog box .....	72
Executing a macro by using a shortcut key.....	72
Executing the procedure from a button or shape .....	74
Executing the procedure from another procedure .....	75
Executing Function procedures.....	76
Calling the function from a Sub procedure .....	76
Calling a function from a worksheet formula.....	77
<b>Chapter 6: Using the Excel Macro Recorder.....</b>	<b>79</b>
Is It Live, or Is It VBA? .....	79
Recording Basics .....	80
Preparing to Record.....	82
Relative or Absolute? .....	82
Recording in absolute mode.....	82
Recording in relative mode .....	83
What Gets Recorded?.....	85
Recording Options.....	86
Macro name .....	87
Shortcut key .....	87
Store Macro In .....	87
Description .....	87
Is This Thing Efficient?.....	88
<b>Part III: Programming Concepts.....</b>	<b>91</b>
<b>Chapter 7: Essential VBA Language Elements .....</b>	<b>93</b>
Using Comments in Your VBA Code .....	93
Using Variables, Constants, and Data Types .....	95
Understanding variables.....	95
What are VBA's data types? .....	96
Declaring and scoping variables.....	98
Working with constants .....	104
Pre-made constants .....	105
Working with strings .....	106
Working with dates.....	107



Using Assignment Statements.....	108
Assignment statement examples .....	108
About that equal sign .....	109
Smooth operators.....	109
Working with Arrays .....	111
Declaring arrays.....	111
Multidimensional arrays .....	112
Dynamic arrays .....	113
Using Labels .....	114
<b>Chapter 8: Working with Range Objects .....</b>	<b>115</b>
A Quick Review .....	115
Other Ways to Refer to a Range.....	117
The Cells property.....	117
The Offset property.....	118
Some Useful Range Object Properties .....	119
The Value property.....	120
The Text property.....	121
The Count property.....	121
The Column and Row properties.....	121
The Address property .....	122
The HasFormula property .....	122
The Font property.....	123
The Interior property .....	125
The Formula property .....	125
The NumberFormat property.....	126
Some Useful Range Object Methods .....	126
The Select method.....	126
The Copy and Paste methods .....	127
The Clear method .....	128
The Delete method .....	128
<b>Chapter 9: Using VBA and Worksheet Functions .....</b>	<b>129</b>
What Is a Function? .....	129
Using Built-In VBA Functions .....	130
VBA function examples .....	130
VBA functions that do more than return a value.....	132
Discovering VBA functions .....	133
Using Worksheet Functions in VBA.....	136
Worksheet function examples.....	136
Entering worksheet functions .....	139
More about using worksheet functions .....	140
Using Custom Functions .....	140

<b>Chapter 10: Controlling Program Flow and Making Decisions . . . . .</b>	<b>143</b>
Going with the Flow, Dude .....	143
The GoTo Statement .....	144
Decisions, Decisions.....	145
The If-Then structure .....	146
The Select Case structure.....	150
Knocking Your Code for a Loop.....	153
For-Next loops .....	153
Do-While loop .....	159
Do-Until loop.....	159
Using For Each-Next Loops With Collections .....	160
<b>Chapter 11: Automatic Procedures and Events. . . . .</b>	<b>163</b>
Preparing for the Big Event .....	163
Are events useful?.....	165
Programming event-handler procedures.....	165
Where Does the VBA Code Go? .....	166
Writing an Event-Handler Procedure .....	167
Introductory Examples .....	168
The Open event for a workbook .....	168
The BeforeClose event for a workbook.....	171
The BeforeSave event for a workbook.....	172
Examples of Activation Events .....	173
Activate and deactivate events in a sheet .....	173
Activate and deactivate events in a workbook.....	174
Workbook activation events.....	175
Other Worksheet-Related Events .....	176
The BeforeDoubleClick event.....	176
The BeforeRightClick event.....	176
The Change event .....	177
Events Not Associated with Objects .....	179
The OnTime event .....	179
Keypress events.....	181
<b>Chapter 12: Error-Handling Techniques. . . . .</b>	<b>183</b>
Types of Errors .....	183
An Erroneous Example .....	184
The macro's not quite perfect.....	185
The macro is still not perfect .....	186
Is the macro perfect yet? .....	186
Giving up on perfection.....	187
Handling Errors Another Way.....	188
Revisiting the EnterSquareRoot procedure.....	188
About the On Error statement .....	189

Handling Errors: The Details .....	190
Resuming after an error .....	190
Error handling in a nutshell.....	192
Knowing when to ignore errors .....	192
Identifying specific errors.....	193
An Intentional Error .....	194
<b>Chapter 13: Bug Extermination Techniques .....</b>	<b>197</b>
Species of Bugs .....	197
Identifying Bugs .....	198
Debugging Techniques .....	199
Examining your code.....	199
Using the MsgBox function.....	200
Inserting Debug.Print statements .....	201
Using the VBA debugger .....	202
About the Debugger .....	202
Setting breakpoints in your code.....	202
Using the Watch window .....	205
Using the Locals window .....	207
Bug Reduction Tips .....	208
<b>Chapter 14: VBA Programming Examples .....</b>	<b>209</b>
Working with Ranges .....	209
Copying a range .....	210
Copying a variable-sized range .....	211
Selecting to the end of a row or column.....	212
Selecting a row or column .....	213
Moving a range .....	213
Looping through a range efficiently .....	214
Looping through a range efficiently (Part II).....	216
Prompting for a cell value.....	216
Determining the selection type.....	217
Identifying a multiple selection.....	218
Changing Excel Settings.....	219
Changing Boolean settings .....	219
Changing non-Boolean settings.....	220
Working with Charts .....	220
AddChart versus AddChart2 .....	221
Modifying the chart type .....	223
Looping through the ChartObjects collection .....	223
Modifying chart properties.....	224
Applying chart formatting .....	224
VBA Speed Tips.....	225
Turning off screen updating.....	226
Turning off automatic calculation .....	227
Eliminating those pesky alert messages .....	227
Simplifying object references.....	228
Declaring variable types .....	229
Using the With-End With structure.....	229

***Part IV: Communicating with Your Users..... 231*****Chapter 15: Simple Dialog Boxes .....** .233

UserForm Alternatives .....	233
The MsgBox Function .....	234
Displaying a simple message box .....	235
Getting a response from a message box .....	235
Customizing message boxes.....	236
The InputBox Function .....	240
InputBox syntax .....	240
An InputBox example .....	240
Another type of InputBox .....	242
The GetOpenFilename Method .....	243
The syntax for the GetOpenFilename method .....	243
A GetOpenFilename example .....	244
The GetSaveAsFilename Method.....	246
Getting a Folder Name .....	246
Displaying Excel's Built-in Dialog Boxes.....	247

**Chapter 16: UserForm Basics..... 249**

Knowing When to Use a UserForm.....	249
Creating UserForms: An Overview .....	250
Working with UserForms.....	251
Inserting a new UserForm.....	251
Adding controls to a UserForm.....	252
Changing properties for a UserForm control.....	253
Viewing the UserForm Code window .....	254
Displaying a UserForm .....	255
Using information from a UserForm.....	255
A UserForm Example.....	256
Creating the UserForm .....	256
Adding the CommandButtons .....	257
Adding the OptionButtons.....	258
Adding event-handler procedures.....	259
Creating a macro to display the dialog box.....	261
Making the macro available.....	262
Testing the macro.....	263

**Chapter 17: Using UserForm Controls..... 265**

Getting Started with Dialog Box Controls.....	265
Adding controls.....	265
Introducing control properties .....	266
Dialog Box Controls: The Details .....	269
CheckBox control .....	269
ComboBox control.....	270
CommandButton control .....	270
Frame control .....	271
Image control.....	271

Label control .....	272
ListBox control.....	272
MultiPage control.....	274
OptionButton control.....	274
RefEdit control .....	275
ScrollBar control.....	276
SpinButton control .....	277
TabStrip control.....	277
TextBox control .....	278
ToggleButton control .....	279
Working with Dialog Box Controls .....	279
Moving and resizing controls.....	279
Aligning and spacing controls .....	280
Accommodating keyboard users .....	280
Testing a UserForm .....	282
Dialog Box Aesthetics .....	282
<b>Chapter 18: UserForm Techniques and Tricks . . . . .</b>	<b>283</b>
Using Dialog Boxes .....	283
A UserForm Example.....	284
Creating the dialog box .....	284
Writing code to display the dialog box.....	286
Making the macro available.....	286
Trying out your dialog box.....	287
Adding event-handler procedures.....	288
Validating the data.....	289
Now the dialog box works .....	290
More UserForm Examples .....	290
A ListBox example .....	290
Selecting a range .....	295
Using multiple sets of OptionButtons .....	297
Using a SpinButton and a TextBox .....	297
Using a UserForm as a progress indicator .....	299
Creating a modeless tabbed dialog box.....	303
Displaying a chart in a UserForm.....	304
A Dialog Box Checklist .....	305
<b>Chapter 19: Accessing Your Macros through the User Interface . . . . .</b>	<b>307</b>
Ribbon Customization .....	307
Customizing the Ribbon manually.....	307
Adding a macro to the Ribbon .....	310
Customizing the Ribbon with XML .....	310
Customizing Shortcut Menus .....	314
Commanding the CommandBars collection.....	315
Listing all shortcut menus .....	315
Referring to CommandBars .....	315
Referring to controls in a CommandBar .....	316
Properties of CommandBar controls .....	317

VBA Shortcut Menu Examples .....	319
Resetting all built-in, right-click menus.....	320
Adding a new item to the Cell shortcut menu.....	320
Disabling a shortcut menu.....	322
Creating a Custom Toolbar .....	323
<b>Part V: Putting It All Together.....</b>	<b>327</b>
<b>Chapter 20: Creating Worksheet Functions — and Living to Tell about It .....</b>	<b>329</b>
Why Create Custom Functions?.....	329
Understanding VBA Function Basics .....	330
Writing Functions .....	331
Working with Function Arguments .....	331
Function Examples .....	332
A function with no argument.....	332
A function with one argument.....	333
A function with two arguments.....	334
A function with a range argument .....	336
A function with an optional argument .....	337
Wrapper Functions.....	339
The NumberFormat function.....	339
The ExtractElement function.....	340
The SayIt function.....	340
The IsLike function .....	341
Functions That Return an Array .....	341
Returning an array of month names.....	341
Returning a sorted list.....	342
Using the Insert Function Dialog Box.....	344
Displaying the function's description .....	344
Argument descriptions .....	345
<b>Chapter 21: Creating Excel Add-Ins .....</b>	<b>347</b>
Okay . . . So What's an Add-In?.....	347
Why Create Add-Ins? .....	348
Working with Add-Ins.....	349
Add-In Basics.....	350
An Add-In Example .....	351
Setting up the workbook.....	351
Testing the workbook .....	353
Adding descriptive information .....	354
Protecting the VBA code.....	354
Creating the add-in .....	355
Opening the add-in .....	355
Distributing the add-in .....	356
Modifying the add-in.....	356

<i>Part VI: The Part of Tens .....</i>	<i>359</i>
Chapter 22: Ten VBA Questions (and Answers) .....	361
<b>Chapter 23: (Almost) Ten Excel Resources .....</b>	<b>365</b>
The VBA Help System .....	365
Microsoft Product Support .....	365
Internet Websites .....	366
Excel Blogs .....	366
Google .....	367
Bing .....	367
Local User Groups .....	367
My Other Books .....	367
<b>Chapter 24: Ten VBA Do's and Don'ts .....</b>	<b>369</b>
Do Declare All Variables .....	369
Don't Confuse Passwords with Security .....	370
Do Clean Up Your Code .....	370
Don't Put Everything in One Procedure .....	371
Do Consider Other Software .....	371
Don't Assume That Everyone Enables Macros .....	371
Do Get in the Habit of Experimenting .....	372
Don't Assume That Your Code Will Work with Other Excel Versions .....	372
Do Keep Your Users in Mind .....	372
Don't Forget About Backups .....	373
<i>Index .....</i>	<i>375</i>

# Introduction

---

**G**reetings, prospective Excel programmer. . . .

Thanks for buying my book. I think you'll find that it offers a fast, enjoyable way to discover the ins and outs of Microsoft Excel programming. Even if you don't have the foggiest idea of what programming is all about, this book can help you make Excel jump through hoops in no time (well, it will take *some* time).

Unlike most programming books, this one is written in plain English, and even normal people can understand it. Even better, it's filled with information of the "just the facts, ma'am" variety — and not the drivel you might need once every third lifetime.

## *Is This the Right Book?*

Go to any large bookstore (in-person or online), and you'll find many Excel books (far too many, as far as I'm concerned). A quick overview can help you decide whether this book is really right for you. This book

- ✓ Is designed for intermediate to advanced Excel users who want to get up to speed with Visual Basic for Applications (VBA) programming.
- ✓ Requires no previous programming experience.
- ✓ Covers the most commonly used commands.
- ✓ Is appropriate for Excel 2010 or Excel 2013.
- ✓ Just might make you crack a smile occasionally — it even has cartoons.

If you're using Excel 2000, XP, or 2003, this book is not for you. If you're using Excel 2007, it *might* be okay, but some things have changed. You'd probably be better off with the previous edition.

Oh yeah, this is *not* an introductory Excel book. If you're looking for a general-purpose Excel book, check out any of the following books, which are all published by Wiley:

- ✓ *Excel 2013 For Dummies*, by Greg Harvey
- ✓ *Excel 2013 Bible*, by John Walkenbach (yep, that's me)

These books are also available in editions for earlier versions of Excel.

Notice that the title of this book isn't *The Complete Guide to Excel VBA Programming For Dummies*. I don't cover all aspects of Excel programming — but then again, you probably don't want to know *everything* about this topic. If you consume this book and find that you're hungry for a more comprehensive Excel programming book, you might try *Microsoft Excel 2013 Power Programming with VBA*, by John Walkenbach, also published by Wiley. And, yes, editions for older versions of Excel are also available.

## *So You Want to Be a Programmer. . . .*

Besides earning money to pay my bills, my main goal in writing this book is to show Excel users how to use the VBA language — a tool that helps you significantly enhance the power of the world's most popular spreadsheet. Using VBA, however, involves programming. (Yikes! The *p* word.)

If you're like most computer users, the word *programmer* conjures up an image of someone who looks and behaves nothing like you. Perhaps words such as *nerd*, *geek*, and *dweeb* come to mind.

Times have changed. Computer programming has become much easier, and even so-called normal people now engage in this activity — and even admit it to friends and family. *Programming* simply means developing instructions that the computer automatically carries out. *Excel programming* refers to the fact that you can instruct Excel to automatically do things that you normally do manually — saving you lots of time and (you hope) reducing errors. I could go on, but I need to save some good stuff for Chapter 1.

If you've read this far, it's a safe bet that you need to become an Excel programmer. This could be something you came up with yourself or (more likely) something your boss decided. In this book, I tell you enough about Excel programming so that you won't feel like an idiot the next time you're trapped in a conference room with a group of Excel aficionados. And by the time you finish this book, you can honestly say, "Yeah, I do some Excel programming."

## *Why Bother?*

Most Excel users never bother to explore VBA programming. Your interest in this topic definitely places you among an elite group. Welcome to the fold! If you're still not convinced that mastering Excel programming is a good idea, I've come up with a few good reasons why you might want to take the time to learn VBA programming:

- ✓ **It will make you more marketable.** Like it or not, Microsoft's applications are extremely popular. You may already know that all applications in Microsoft Office support VBA. The more you know about VBA, the better your chances for advancement in your job.
- ✓ **It lets you get the most out of your software investment** (or, more likely, your employer's software investment). Using Excel without knowing VBA is sort of like buying a TV set and watching only the odd-numbered channels.
- ✓ **It will improve your productivity (eventually).** Mastering VBA definitely takes some time, but you'll more than make up for this in the amount of time you ultimately save because you're more productive. Sort of like what they told you about going to college.
- ✓ **It's fun (well, sometimes).** Some people really enjoy making Excel do things that are otherwise impossible. By the time you finish this book, you just might be one of those people.

Now are you convinced?

## What I Assume about You

People who write books usually have a target reader in mind. For this book, my target reader is a conglomerate of dozens of Excel users I've met over the years (either in person or out in cyberspace). The following points more or less describe my hypothetical target reader:

- ✓ You have access to a PC at work — and probably at home. And those computers are connected to the Internet.
- ✓ You're running Excel 2010 or Excel 2013.
- ✓ You've been using computers for several years.
- ✓ You use Excel frequently in your work, and you consider yourself to be more knowledgeable about Excel than the average bear.
- ✓ You need to make Excel do some things that you currently can't make it do.
- ✓ You have little or no programming experience.
- ✓ You understand that the Help system in Excel can actually be useful. Face it, this book doesn't cover everything. If you get on good speaking terms with the Help system, you'll be able to fill in some of the missing pieces.
- ✓ You need to accomplish some work, and you have a low tolerance for thick, boring computer books.

## Obligatory Typographical Conventions Section

All computer books have a section like this. (I think some federal law requires it.) Read it or skip it.

Sometimes, I refer to key combinations — which means you hold down one key while you press another. For example, Ctrl+Z means you hold down the Ctrl key while you press Z.

For menu commands, I use a distinctive character to separate items on the Ribbon or menu. For example, you use the following command to create a named range in a worksheet:

Formulas⇒Defined Names⇒Define Name

Formulas is the tab at the top of the Ribbon, Defined Names is the Ribbon group, and Define Name is the actual command.

The Visual Basic editor still uses old-fashioned menus and toolbars. So I might tell you to choose Tools⇒Options. That means choose the Tools menu and then choose the Options menu item.

Any text you need to enter appears in **bold**. For example, I might say, enter **=SUM(B:B)** in cell A1.

Excel programming involves developing *code* — that is, the instructions Excel follows. All code in this book appears in a monospace font, like this:

```
Range("A1:A12").Select
```

Some long lines of code don't fit between the margins in this book. In such cases, I use the standard VBA line-continuation character sequence: a space followed by an underscore character. Here's an example:

```
Selection.PasteSpecial Paste:=xlValues, _
    Operation:=xlNone, SkipBlanks:=False, _
    Transpose:=False
```

When you enter this code, you can type it as written or place it on a single line (omitting the space and underscore combination).

## Check Your Security Settings

It's a cruel world out there. It seems that some scam artist is always trying to take advantage of you or cause some type of problem. The world of computing is equally cruel. You probably know about computer viruses, which can cause some nasty things to happen to your system. But did you know that computer viruses can also reside in an Excel file? It's true. In fact, it's relatively easy to write a computer virus by using VBA. An unknowing user can open an Excel file and spread the virus to other Excel workbooks, and to other systems.

Over the years, Microsoft has become increasingly concerned about security issues. This is a good thing, but it also means that Excel users need to understand how things work. You can check Excel's security settings by using the File⇒Options⇒Trust Center⇒Trust Center Settings command. There is a plethora of options in there, and people have been known to open that dialog box and never be heard from again.

If you click the Macro Settings tab (on the left side of the Trust Center dialog box), your options are as follows:

- ✓ **Disable all macros without notification:** Macros will not work, regardless of what you do.
- ✓ **Disable all macros with notification:** When you open a workbook with macros, you will either see the Message Bar open with an option you can click to enable macros, or (if the Visual Basic Editor window is open) you'll get a message asking if you want to enable macros.
- ✓ **Disable all macros except digitally signed macros:** Only macros with a digital signature are allowed to run (but even for those signatures you haven't marked as trusted, you still get the security warning).
- ✓ **Enable all macros:** Let all macros run with no warnings. This option is not recommended because potentially dangerous code can be executed.

Consider this scenario: You spend a week writing a killer VBA program that will revolutionize your company. You test it thoroughly and then send it to your boss. He calls you into his office and claims that your macro doesn't do anything at all. What's going on? Chances are, your boss's security setting does not allow macros to run. Or maybe he chose to go along with Microsoft's default suggestion and disable the macros when he opened the file.

Bottom line? Just because an Excel workbook contains a macro, it is no guarantee that the macro will ever be executed. It all depends on the security setting and whether the user chooses to enable or disable macros for that file.

In order to work with this book, you will need to enable macros for the files you work with. My advice is to use the second security level. Then when you open a file that you've created, you can simply enable the macros. If you open a file from someone you don't know, you should disable the macros and check the VBA code to ensure that it doesn't contain anything destructive or malicious. Usually, it's pretty easy to identify suspicious VBA code.

Another option is to designate a trusted folder. Choose File⇒Options⇒Trust Center⇒Trust Center Settings. Select the Trusted Locations option and then designate a particular folder to be a trusted location. Store your trusted workbooks there, and Excel won't bug you about enabling macros. For example, if you download the sample files for this book, you can put them in a trusted location.

## *How This Book Is Organized*

I divided this book into six major parts, each of which contains several chapters. Although I arranged the chapters in a fairly logical sequence, you can read them in any order you choose. Here's a quick preview of what's in store for you.

### *Part I: Getting Started with Excel VBA Programming*

Part I has but two chapters. I introduce the VBA language in the first chapter. In Chapter 2, I let you get your feet wet right away by taking you on a hands-on guided tour.

### *Part II: How VBA Works with Excel*

In writing this book, I assume that you already know how to use Excel. The four chapters in Part II give you a better grasp on how VBA is implemented in Excel. These chapters are all important, so I don't recommend skipping them, okay?

### *Part III: Programming Concepts*

The eight chapters in Part III get you into the nitty-gritty of what programming is all about. You may not need to know all this stuff, but you'll be glad it's there if you ever do need it.

## Part IV: Communicating with Your Users

One of the coolest parts of programming in Excel is designing custom dialog boxes (well, at least I like it). The five chapters in Part IV show you how to create dialog boxes that look like they came straight from the software lab at Microsoft.

## Part V: Putting It All Together

The two chapters in Part V pull together information from the preceding chapters. You discover how to include your own custom buttons in the Excel user interface, and you find out how to develop custom worksheet functions, create add-ins, design user-oriented applications, and even work with other Office applications.

## Part VI: The Part of Tens

Traditionally, books in the *For Dummies* series contain a final part that consists of short chapters with helpful or informative lists. Because I'm a sucker for tradition, this book has three such chapters that you can peruse at your convenience.

## Icons Used in This Book

Somewhere along the line, a market research company must have shown that publishers can sell more copies of their computer books if they add icons to the margins of those books. *Icons* are those little pictures that supposedly draw your attention to various features or help you decide whether something is worth reading.

I don't know if this research is valid, but I'm not taking any chances. So here are the icons you encounter in your travels from front cover to back cover:



When you see this icon, the code being discussed is available on the web. Download it to eliminate lots of typing. See "Getting the Sample Files" for more information.



This icon flags material that you might consider technical. You may find it interesting, but you can safely skip it if you're in a hurry.



Don't skip information marked with this icon. It identifies a shortcut that can save you lots of time (and maybe even allow you to leave the office at a reasonable hour).



This icon tells you when you need to store information in the deep recesses of your brain for later use.



Read anything marked with this icon. Otherwise, you may lose your data, blow up your computer, cause a nuclear meltdown — or maybe even ruin your whole day.

## Getting the Sample Files

This book has its very own website where you can download the example files. To get these files, point your web browser to

<http://dummies.com/go/excelvbaprogrammingfd3e>

Having the sample files will save you a lot of typing. Better yet, you can play around with them and experiment with various changes. In fact, I highly recommend playing around with these files. Experimentation is the best way to master VBA.

## Now What?

Reading this introduction was your first step. Now, it's time to move on and become a programmer (there's that *p* word again!).

If you're a programming virgin, I strongly suggest that you start with Chapter 1 and progress through the book until you've discovered enough to do what you want to do. Chapter 2 gives you some immediate hands-on experience, so you have the illusion that you're making quick progress.

But it's a free country (at least it was when I wrote these words); I won't sic the Computer Book Police on you if you opt to thumb through randomly and read whatever strikes your fancy.

I hope you have as much fun reading this book as I did writing it.

Occasionally, John Wiley & Sons has updates to its technology books. If this book does have technical updates, they will be posted at

<http://dummies.com/go/excelvbaprogrammingfdupdates>

## Part I

# getting started with **Excel VBA** **Programming**



Visit [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com) for great Dummies content online.

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ Meet Visual Basic for Applications
- ✓ See examples of some of the things you can do with VBA
- ✓ Travel back in time and see what Excel was like in the olden days
- ✓ Work through a real-live Excel programming session
- ✓ Get a handle on how Excel deals with macro security
- ✓ Visit [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com) for great Dummies content online.

## **Chapter 1**

---

# **What Is VBA?**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Getting a conceptual overview of VBA
  - ▶ Finding out what you can do with VBA
  - ▶ Discovering the advantages and disadvantages of using VBA
  - ▶ Taking a mini-lesson on the history of Excel
- 

If you're anxious to jump into VBA programming, hold your horses. This chapter is completely devoid of any hands-on training material. It does, however, contain some essential background information that assists you in becoming an Excel programmer. In other words, this chapter paves the way for everything else that follows and gives you a feel for how Excel programming fits into the overall scheme of the universe. It's not as boring as you might think, so please try to resist the urge to jump to Chapter 2.

## ***Okay, So What Is VBA?***

VBA, which stands for *Visual Basic for Applications*, is a programming language developed by Microsoft — you know, the company that tries to get you to buy a new version of Windows every few years. Excel, along with the other members of Microsoft Office, includes the VBA language (at no extra charge). In a nutshell, VBA is the tool that people like you and me use to develop programs that control Excel.

Imagine an intelligent robot that knows all about Excel. This robot can read instructions, and it can also operate Excel very fast and accurately. When you want the robot to do something in Excel, you write up a set of robot instructions by using special codes. Then you tell the robot to follow your instructions, while you sit back and drink a glass of lemonade. That's kind of what VBA is all about — a code language for robots. Note, however, that Excel does not come with a robot or lemonade.



## A few words about terminology

Excel programming terminology can be a bit confusing. For example, VBA is a programming language, but it also serves as a macro language. What do you call something written in VBA and executed in Excel? Is it a *macro*, or is it a *program*? Excel's Help system often refers to VBA procedures as *macros*, so I use that terminology. But I also call this stuff a *program*.

I use the term *automate* throughout this book. This term means that a series of steps are

completed automatically. For example, if you write a macro that adds color to some cells, prints the worksheet, and then removes the color, you have *automated* those three steps.

By the way, *macro* does not stand for **M**essy **A**nd **C**onfusing **R**epeated **O**peration. Rather, it comes from the Greek *makros*, which means large — which also describes your paycheck after you become an expert macro programmer.

## What Can You Do with VBA?

You're probably aware that people use Excel for thousands of different tasks. Here are just a few examples:

- ✓ Analyzing scientific data
- ✓ Budgeting and forecasting
- ✓ Creating invoices and other forms
- ✓ Developing charts from data
- ✓ Keeping lists of things such as customers' names, students' grades, or holiday gift ideas (a nice fruitcake would be lovely)
- ✓ Yadda, yadda, yadda

The list could go on and on, but I think you get the idea. My point is simply that Excel is used for a wide variety of tasks, and everyone reading this book has different needs and expectations regarding Excel. One thing virtually every reader has in common is the *need to automate some aspect of Excel*. That, dear reader, is what VBA is all about.

For example, you might create a VBA program to import some numbers and then format and print your month-end sales report. After developing and testing the program, you can execute the macro with a single command, causing Excel to automatically perform many time-consuming procedures. Rather than struggle through a tedious sequence of commands, you can click a button and then hop on over to Facebook and kill some time while your macro does the work.

In the following sections, I briefly describe some common uses for VBA macros. One or two of these may push your button.

## *Inserting a bunch of text*

If you often need to enter your company name, address, and phone number in your worksheets, you can create a macro to do the typing for you. You can extend this concept as far as you like. For example, you might develop a macro that automatically types a list of all salespeople who work for your company.

## *Automating a task you perform frequently*

Assume you're a sales manager and you need to prepare a month-end sales report to keep your boss happy. If the task is straightforward, you can develop a VBA program to do it for you. Your boss will be impressed by the consistently high quality of your reports, and you'll be promoted to a new job for which you are highly unqualified.

## *Automating repetitive operations*

If you need to perform the same action on, say, 12 different Excel workbooks, you can record a macro while you perform the task on the first workbook and then let the macro repeat your action on the other workbooks. The nice thing about this is that Excel never complains about being bored. Excel's macro recorder is similar to recording live action on a video recorder. But it doesn't require a camera, and the battery never needs to be recharged.

## *Creating a custom command*

Do you often issue the same sequence of Excel menu commands? If so, save yourself a few seconds by developing a macro that combines these commands into a single custom command, which you can execute with a single keystroke or button click. You probably won't save *that* much time, but you'll probably be more accurate. And the guy in the next cubicle will be really impressed.

## *Creating a custom button*

You can customize your Quick Access toolbar with your own buttons that execute the macros you write. Office workers tend to be very impressed by buttons that perform magic. And if you *really* want to impress your fellow employees, you can even add new buttons to the Ribbon.

## *Developing new worksheet functions*

Although Excel includes hundreds of built-in functions (such as SUM and AVERAGE), you can create *custom* worksheet functions that can greatly simplify your formulas. I guarantee you'll be surprised by how easy this is. (I show you how to do this in Chapter 20.) Even better, the Insert Function dialog box displays your custom functions, making them appear built-in. Very snazzy stuff.

## *Creating custom add-ins for Excel*

You're probably familiar with some of the add-ins that ship with Excel. For example, the Analysis ToolPak is a popular add-in. You can use VBA to develop your own special-purpose add-ins. I developed my Power Utility Pak add-in by using only VBA, and people all around the world pay me real money so they can use it.

## *Creating complete, macro-driven applications*

If you're willing to spend some time, you can use VBA to create large-scale applications complete with a custom Ribbon tab, dialog boxes, on-screen help, and lots of other accoutrements. This book doesn't go quite that far, but I'm just telling you this to impress you with how powerful VBA really is.

## *Advantages and Disadvantages of VBA*

In this section, I briefly describe the good things about VBA — and I also explore its darker side.

### *VBA advantages*

You can automate almost anything you do in Excel. To do so, you write instructions that Excel carries out. Automating a task by using VBA offers several advantages:

- ✓ Excel always executes the task in exactly the same way. (In most cases, consistency is a good thing.)
- ✓ Excel performs the task much faster than you can do it manually (unless, of course, you're Clark Kent).

- ✓ If you're a good macro programmer, Excel always performs the task without errors (which probably can't be said about you or me).
- ✓ If you set things up properly, someone who doesn't know anything about Excel can perform the task.
- ✓ You can do things in Excel that are otherwise impossible — which can make you a very popular person around the office.
- ✓ For long, time-consuming tasks, you don't have to sit in front of your computer and get bored. Excel does the work, while you hang out at the water cooler.

## VBA disadvantages

It's only fair that I give equal time to listing the disadvantages (or *potential* disadvantages) of VBA:

- ✓ You have to know how to write programs in VBA (but that's why you bought this book, right?). Fortunately, it's not as difficult as you might expect.
- ✓ Other people who need to use your VBA programs must have their own copies of Excel. It would be nice if you could press a button that transforms your Excel/VBA application into a stand-alone program, but that isn't possible (and probably never will be).
- ✓ Sometimes, things go wrong. In other words, you can't blindly assume that your VBA program will always work correctly under all circumstances. Welcome to the world of debugging and, if others are using your macros, technical support.
- ✓ VBA is a moving target. As you know, Microsoft is continually upgrading Excel. Even though Microsoft puts great effort into compatibility between versions, you may discover that the VBA code you've written doesn't work properly with older versions or with a future version of Excel.

## VBA in a Nutshell

Just to let you know what you're in for, I've prepared a quick and dirty summary of what VBA is all about. Of course, I describe all this stuff in semi-excruciating detail later in the book.

- ✓ **You perform actions in VBA by writing (or recording) code in a VBA module.** You view and edit VBA modules by using the Visual Basic Editor (VBE).

- ✓ **A VBA module consists of Sub procedures.** A Sub procedure has nothing to do with underwater vessels or tasty sandwiches. Rather, it's a chunk of computer code that performs some action on or with objects (discussed in a moment). The following example shows a simple Sub procedure called AddEmUp. This amazing program displays the result of 1 plus 1:

```
Sub AddEmUp()
    Sum = 1 + 1
    MsgBox "The answer is " & Sum
End Sub
```

A Sub procedure that doesn't perform properly is said to be substandard.

- ✓ **A VBA module can also have Function procedures.** A Function procedure returns a single value. You can call it from another VBA procedure or even use it as a function in a worksheet formula. An example of a Function procedure (named AddTwo) follows. This Function accepts two numbers (called arguments) and returns the sum of those values:

```
Function AddTwo(arg1, arg2)
    AddTwo = arg1 + arg2
End Function
```

A Function procedure that doesn't work correctly is said to be dysfunctional.

- ✓ **VBA manipulates objects.** Excel provides dozens and dozens of objects that you can manipulate. Examples of objects include a workbook, a worksheet, a cell range, a chart, and a shape. You have many more objects at your disposal, and you can manipulate them by using VBA code.

- ✓ **Objects are arranged in a hierarchy.** Objects can act as *containers* for other objects. At the top of the object hierarchy is Excel. Excel itself is an object called Application. The Application object contains other objects such as Workbook objects and Add-In objects. The Workbook object can contain other objects, such as Worksheet objects and Chart objects. A Worksheet object can contain objects such as Range objects and PivotTable objects. The term *object model* refers to the arrangement of these objects. (Object model mavens can find out more in Chapter 4.)

- ✓ **Objects of the same type form a collection.** For example, the Worksheets collection consists of all the worksheets in a particular workbook. The Charts collection consists of all Chart objects in a workbook. Collections are themselves objects.

- ✓ You refer to an object by specifying its position in the object hierarchy, using a dot (a.k.a., a period) as a separator. For example, you can refer to the workbook Book1.xlsx as

```
Application.Workbooks("Book1.xlsx")
```

This refers to the workbook Book1.xlsx in the Workbooks collection. The Workbooks collection is contained in the Application object (that is, Excel). Extending this to another level, you can refer to Sheet1 in Book1.xlsx as

```
Application.Workbooks("Book1.xlsx").Worksheets("Sheet1")
```

As shown in the following example, you can take this to still another level and refer to a specific cell (in this case, cell A1):

```
Application.Workbooks("Book1.xlsx").Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1")
```

- ✓ If you omit specific references, Excel uses the **active objects**. If Book1.xlsx is the active workbook, you can simplify the preceding reference as follows:

```
Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1")
```

If you know that Sheet1 is the active sheet, you can simplify the reference even more:

```
Range("A1")
```

- ✓ Objects have properties. You can think of a property as a *setting* for an object. For example, a Range object has such properties as Value and Address. A Chart object has such properties as HasTitle and Type. You can use VBA to determine object properties and also to change properties.

- ✓ You refer to a property of an object by combining the object name with the property name, separated by a dot. For example, you can refer to the Value property in cell A1 on Sheet1 as follows:

```
Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1").Value
```

- ✓ You can assign values to variables. A *variable* is a named element that stores information. You can use variables in your VBA code to store such things as values, text, or property settings. To assign the value in cell A1 on Sheet1 to a variable called *Interest*, use the following VBA statement:

```
Interest = Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1").Value
```

- ✓ **Objects have methods.** A *method* is an action Excel performs with an object. For example, one of the methods for a Range object is ClearContents. This aptly named method clears the contents of the range.
- ✓ **You specify a method by combining the object with the method, separated by a dot.** For example, the following statement clears the contents of cell A1:

```
Worksheets ("Sheet1") .Range ("A1") .ClearContents
```
- ✓ **VBA includes all the constructs of modern programming languages, including variables, arrays, and looping.** In other words, if you're willing to spend a little time mastering the ropes, you can write code that does some incredible things.

Believe it or not, the preceding list pretty much describes VBA in a nutshell. Now you just have to find out the details. That's why this book has more pages.

## An Excursion into Versions

If you plan to develop VBA macros, you should have some understanding of Excel's history. I know you weren't expecting a history lesson when you picked up this book, but bear with me. This is important stuff that might make you a hit at the next nerd party.

Here are all the major Excel for Windows versions that have seen the light of day, along with a few words about how they handle macros:

- ✓ **Excel 2:** The original version of Excel for Windows was called Version 2 (rather than 1) so that it would correspond to the Macintosh version. Excel 2 first appeared in 1987, but nobody uses it anymore, so you can pretty much forget that it ever existed.
- ✓ **Excel 3:** Released in late 1990, this version features the XLM macro language. Nobody uses this version either.
- ✓ **Excel 4:** This version hit the streets in early 1992. It also uses the XLM macro language. Perhaps 10 to 12 people still use this version. (They subscribe to the philosophy *if it ain't broke, don't fix it.*)
- ✓ **Excel 5:** This one came out in early 1994. It was the first version to use VBA (but it also supports XLM). I haven't heard from anyone who uses Excel 5 in years.

- ✓ **Excel 95:** Technically known as Excel 7 (there is no Excel 6), this version began shipping in the summer of 1995. It has a few VBA enhancements, and it supports the XLM language. It's rarely used any more.
- ✓ **Excel 97:** This version (also known as Excel 8) was born in January 1997. It has *many* enhancements, and it features an entirely new interface for programming VBA macros. Excel 97 also uses a new file format (which previous Excel versions cannot open). Occasionally, I run into someone who still uses this version.
- ✓ **Excel 2000:** This version's numbering scheme jumped to four digits. Excel 2000 (also known as Excel 9) made its public debut in June 1999. It includes only a few enhancements from a programmer's perspective. Excel 2000 is also rarely used.
- ✓ **Excel 2002:** This version (also known as Excel 10 or Excel XP) appeared in late 2001. Perhaps this version's most significant feature is the ability to recover your work when Excel crashes. People still use it.
- ✓ **Excel 2003:** Of all the Excel upgrades I've ever seen (and I've seen them all), Excel 2003 has the fewest new features. In other words, most hardcore Excel users (including yours truly) were very disappointed with Excel 2003. As I write this, Excel 2003 is still a commonly used version. It's also the last "pre-Ribbon" version of Excel.
- ✓ **Excel 2007:** Excel 2007 signaled the beginning of a new era. Excel 2007 dumped the old menu and toolbar interface and introduced the Ribbon. I, for one, was disappointed to discover that you can't modify the Ribbon by using VBA. But it had enough new features to satisfy me, such as a new file format and support for much larger worksheets — more than a million rows.
- ✓ **Excel 2010:** Microsoft outdid its corporate self with this version. This version has some slick new features (such as sparkline graphics), and it also performs quite a bit better in some areas. And if you need really, really huge workbooks, you can install the 64-bit version. But again, I was disappointed because there's still no way to modify the Ribbon using VBA!
- ✓ **Excel 2013:** The latest version, and the one I used while I was writing this edition of the book. Excel 2013 is also available in an online version and for tablets. The Ribbon is still around, but it now has a flat look — and you *still* can't modify it using VBA!



This book is written for Excel 2010 and Excel 2013. If you don't have one of those versions, you run the risk of getting confused in a few places.

So what's the point of this mini history lesson? If you plan to distribute your Excel/VBA files to other users, it's vitally important that you understand which version of Excel they use. People using an older version won't be able to take advantage of features introduced in later versions. For example, if you write VBA code that references cell XFD1048576 (the last cell in a workbook), those who use a version prior to Excel 2007 will get an error because those pre-Excel 2007 worksheets only had 65,536 rows and 255 columns (the last cell is IV65536).

Excel 2010 and later also have some new objects, methods, and properties. If you use these in your code, users with an older version of Excel will get an error when they run your macro — and you'll get the blame.



The good news is that Microsoft has made available an Office Compatibility Pack, which allows users of Excel 2003 and Excel XP to open and save workbooks in the new file format. This product (which is free, by the way) doesn't give these older versions the new features. It just lets them open and save files in the newer file format.

# **Chapter 2**

---

# **Jumping Right In**

---

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Developing a useful VBA macro: A hands-on, step-by-step example
  - ▶ Recording your actions by using Excel's macro recorder
  - ▶ Examining and testing recorded code
  - ▶ Dealing with macro security issues
  - ▶ Changing a recorded macro
- 

**J**'m not much of a swimmer, but I have found that the best way to get into a cold body of water is to jump right in — no sense prolonging the agony. By wading through this chapter, you can get your feet wet immediately but avoid getting in over your head.

By the time you reach the end of this chapter, you may start feeling better about this Excel programming business, and you'll be glad you took the plunge. This chapter provides a step-by-step demonstration of how to develop a simple but useful VBA macro.

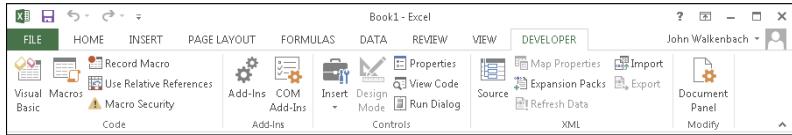
## ***First Things First***

Before you can call yourself an Excel programmer, you must go through the initiation rites. That means you need to make a small change so Excel will display a new tab at the top of the screen: Developer. Getting Excel to display the Developer tab is easy (and you only have to do it one time). Just follow these steps:

- 1. Right-click any part of the Ribbon and choose Customize the Ribbon.**
- 2. In the Customize Ribbon tab of the Excel Options dialog box, locate Developer in the second column.**
- 3. Put a check mark next to Developer.**
- 4. Click OK, and you're back to Excel with a brand-new tab: Developer.**

When you click the Developer tab, the Ribbon displays information that is of interest to programmers (that's you!). Figure 2-1 shows how the Ribbon looks when the Developer tab is selected in Excel 2013.

**Figure 2-1:**  
The  
Developer  
tab is  
normally  
hidden, but  
it's easy to  
unhide.



## *What You'll Be Doing*

In this section, I describe how to create your first macro. The macro that you're about to create will do this.

- ✓ Type your name into a cell.
- ✓ Enter the current date and time into the cell below.
- ✓ Format both cells to display bold.
- ✓ Change the font size of both cells to 16 point.

This macro won't be winning any prizes in the Annual VBA Programmer's Competition, but everyone must start somewhere. The macro accomplishes all these steps in a single action. As I describe in the following sections, you start by recording your actions as you go through these steps. Then you test the macro to see whether it works. Finally, you edit the macro to add some finishing touches. Ready?

## *Taking the First Steps*

This section describes the steps you take prior to recording the macro. In other words, you need to make a few preparations before the fun begins.

1. Start Excel if it's not already running.
2. If necessary, create a new, empty workbook (**Ctrl+N** is my favorite way to do that).

**3. Click the Developer tab, and take a look at the Use Relative References button in the Code group.**

If the color of that button is different than the other buttons, then you're in good shape. If the Use Relative References button is the same color as the other buttons, then you need to click it.

I explain more about the Use Relative References button in Chapter 6. For now, just make sure that the option is turned on. When it's turned on, it will be a different color.

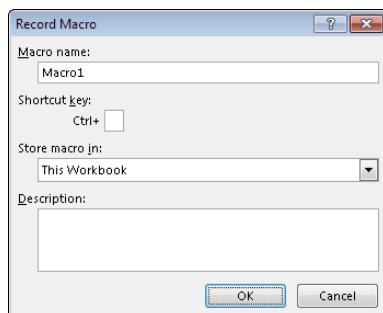
## Recording the Macro

Here comes the hands-on part. Follow these instructions carefully:

- 1. Select a cell — any cell will do.**
- 2. Choose Developer→Code→Record Macro or click the macro recording button on the status bar.**

The Record Macro dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 2-2.

**Figure 2-2:**  
The Record  
Macro  
dialog box  
appears  
when you're  
about to  
record a  
macro.



**3. Enter a name for the macro.**

Excel provides a default name (something like *Macro1*), but it's better to use a more descriptive name. *NameAndTime* (with no spaces) is a good name for this macro.

**4. Click in the Shortcut Key box and enter Shift+N (for an uppercase N) as the shortcut key.**

Specifying a shortcut key is optional. If you do specify one, then you can execute the macro by pressing a key combination — in this case, Ctrl+Shift+N.

**5. Make sure the Store Macro In setting is This Workbook.**

**6. You can enter some text in the Description box, if you like.**

This step is optional. Some people like to describe what the macro does (or is *supposed* to do).

**7. Click OK.**

The Record Macro dialog box closes, and Excel's macro recorder is turned on. From this point, Excel monitors everything you do and converts it to VBA code.

**8. Type your name in the active cell.****9. Move the cell pointer to the cell below and enter this formula:**

```
=NOW()
```

The formula displays the current date and time.

**10. Select the formula cell and press Ctrl+C to copy that cell to the Clipboard.****11. Choose Home $\Rightarrow$ Clipboard $\Rightarrow$ Paste $\Rightarrow$ Values (V).**

This command converts the formula to its value.

**12. With the date cell selected, press Shift+up arrow to select that cell and the one above it (which contains your name).****13. Use the controls in the Home $\Rightarrow$ Font group to change the formatting to Bold and make the font size 16 point.****14. Choose Developer $\Rightarrow$ Code $\Rightarrow$ Stop Recording.**

The macro recorder is turned off.

Congratulations! You just created your first Excel VBA macro. You may want to phone your mother and tell her the good news.

## Testing the Macro

Now you can try out this macro and see whether it works properly. To test your macro, move to an empty cell and press Ctrl+Shift+N.

In a flash, Excel executes the macro. Your name and the current date and time are displayed in large, bold letters.



Another way to execute the macro is to choose Developer $\Rightarrow$ Code $\Rightarrow$ Macros (or press Alt+F8) to display the Macros dialog box. Select the macro from the list (in this case, NameAndTime) and click Run. Make sure you select the cell that will hold your name before executing the macro.

## Examining the Macro

You've recorded a macro, and you've tested it. If you're a curious type, you're probably wondering what this macro looks like. And you might even wonder where it's stored.

Remember when you started recording the macro? You indicated that Excel should store the macro in This Workbook. The macro is stored in the workbook, but you need to activate the Visual Basic Editor (VBE, for short) to see it.

Follow these steps to see the macro:

**1. Choose Developer→Code→Visual Basic (or press Alt+F11).**

The Visual Basic Editor program window appears, as shown in Figure 2-3. This window is highly customizable, so your VBE window may look a bit different. The VBE program window contains several other windows and is probably very intimidating. Don't fret; you'll get used to it.

**2. In the VBE window, locate the window called Project.**

The Project window (also known as the Project Explorer window) contains a list of all workbooks and add-ins that are currently open. Each project is arranged as a *tree* and can be expanded (to show more information) or contracted (to show less information).

The VBE uses quite a few different windows, any of which can be either open or closed. If a window isn't immediately visible in the VBE, you can choose an option from the View menu to display the window. For instance, if the Project window is not visible, you can choose View→Project Explorer (or press Ctrl+R) to display it. You can display any other VBE window in a similar manner. I explain more about the components of the Visual Basic Editor in Chapter 3.

**3. Select the project that corresponds to the workbook in which you recorded the macro.**

If you haven't saved the workbook, the project is probably called VBAPrjject (Book1).

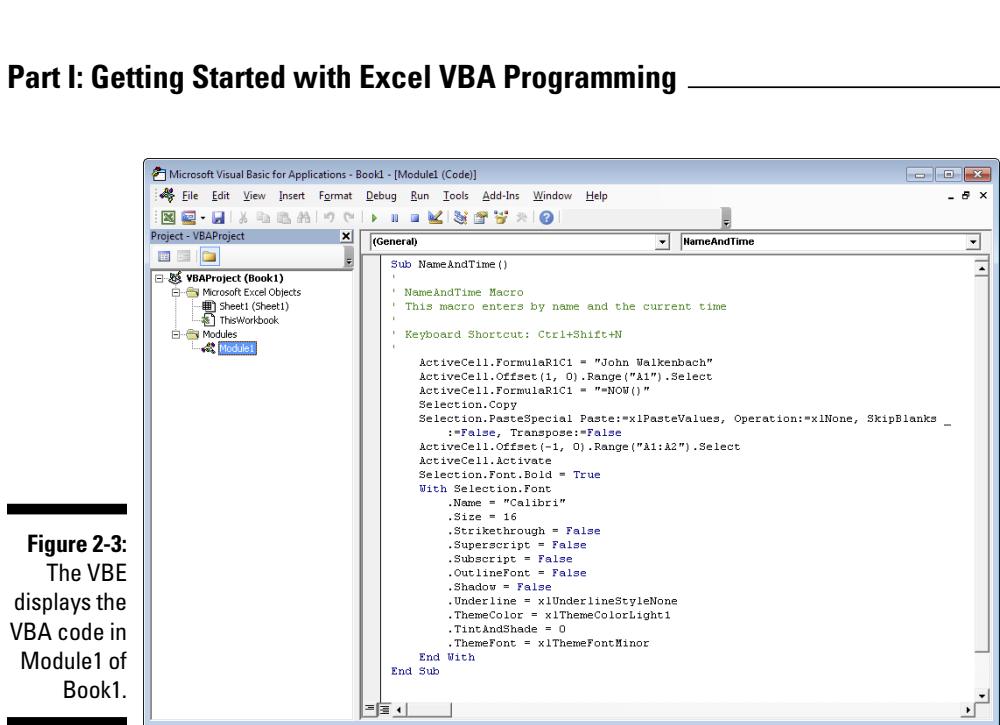
**4. Click the plus sign (+) to the left of the folder named Modules.**

The tree expands to show Module1, which is the only module in the project.

**5. Double-click Module1.**

The VBA code in that module is displayed in a Code window. Figure 2-3 shows how it looks on my screen. Your screen may not look exactly the same. The code that's recorded depends on the specific actions you made while recording the macro.





**Figure 2-3:**  
The VBE  
displays the  
VBA code in  
Module1 of  
Book1.

At this point, the macro probably looks like Greek to you. Don't worry. Travel a few chapters down the road, and all will be as clear as the view from Olympus.

The NameAndTime macro consists of several statements. Excel executes the statements one by one, from top to bottom. A statement that's preceded by an apostrophe (') is a comment. Comments are included only for your information and are ignored. In other words, Excel skips right over comments.

## Hey, I didn't record that!

Earlier in this chapter, I mentioned that the macro recorder is like recording sound on a recorder. When you play back a recording and listen to your own voice, you invariably say, "I don't sound like that." And when you look at your recorded macro, you may see some actions that you didn't think you recorded.

When you recorded the NameAndTime example, you changed only the font size, yet the recorded code shows all sorts of font-changing statements (Strikethrough, Superscript, Shadow, and so on). Don't worry; it happens all the time. Excel often records lots of seemingly useless code. In later chapters, you find out how to remove the extra stuff from a recorded macro.

The first VBA statement (which begins with the word *Sub*) identifies the macro as a Sub procedure and gives its name — you provided this name before you started recording the macro. If you read through the code, you may be able to make sense of some of it. You see your name, the formula you entered, and lots of additional code that changes the font. The Sub procedure ends with the End Sub statement.

## Modifying the Macro

As you might expect, not only can you view your macro in the VBE, you can also change it. Even though you probably have no idea what you're doing at this point, I bet you can make these changes to the code:

- ✓ Change the name that's entered into the active cell. If you have a dog, use your dog's name.
- ✓ Change the font name or size.
- ✓ See if you can figure out the appropriate location for this new statement that makes the cells italic:

```
Selection.Font.Italic = True
```



Working in a VBA code module is much like working in a word-processing document (except there's no word wrap, and you can't format the text). On second thought, I guess it's more like working in Windows Notepad. You can press Enter to start a new line, and the familiar editing keys work as expected.

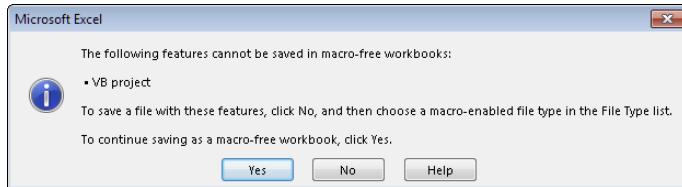
After you've made your changes, jump back to Excel and try out the revised macro to see how it works. Just as you can press Alt+F11 in Excel to display the VBE, you can press Alt+F11 in the VBE to switch back to Excel.

## Saving Workbooks That Contain Macros

If you store one or more macros in a workbook, the file must be saved as a "macro-enabled" file type. In other words, the file must be saved with an XLSM extension rather than the normal XLSX extension.

For example, when you save the workbook that contains your NameAndTime macro, the file format in the Save As dialog box defaults to XLSX (a format that cannot contain macros). Unless you change the file format to XLSM, Excel displays the warning shown in Figure 2-4. You need to click No, and then choose Excel Macro-Enabled Workbook (\*.xlsm) from the Save As Type drop-down list.

**Figure 2-4:**  
If your workbook contains macros, and you attempt to save it in a non-macro file format, Excel warns you.



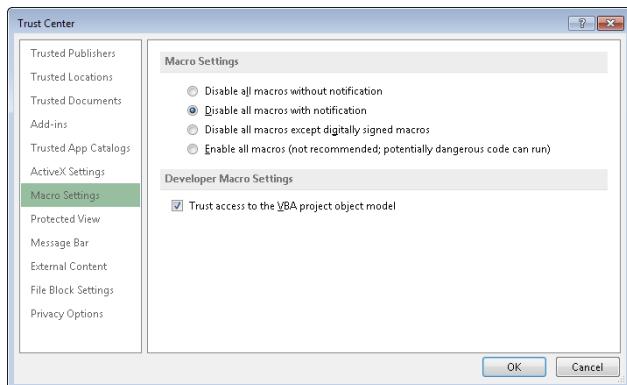
## Understanding Macro Security

Macro security is a key feature in Excel. The reason is that VBA is a powerful language — so powerful that it's possible to create a macro that can do serious damage to your computer. A macro can delete files, send information to other computers, and even destroy Windows so that you can't even start your system.

The macro security features introduced in Excel 2007 were created to help prevent these types of problems.

Figure 2-5 shows the Macro Settings section of the Trust Center dialog box. To display this dialog box, choose Developer→Code→Macro Security.

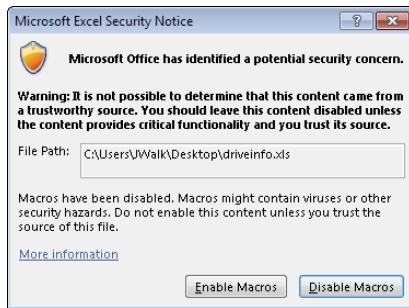
**Figure 2-5:**  
The Macro Settings section of the Trust Center dialog box.



By default, Excel uses the Disable All Macros with Notification option. With this setting in effect, if you open a workbook that contains macros (and the file is not digitally “signed” or stored in a trusted location), Excel displays a warning like the one in Figure 2-6. If you are certain that the workbook comes from a trusted source, click Enable Macros, and the macros will be enabled.

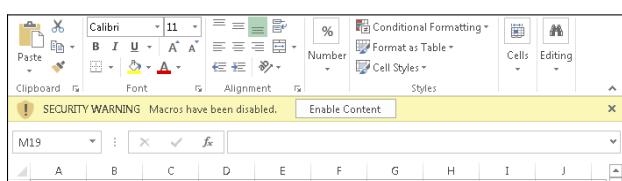


You see the pop-up box in Figure 2-6 only if the VBE is open. Otherwise, Excel displays an eye-catching Security Warning above the Formula bar, as shown in Figure 2-7. If you know the workbook is safe, click the Enable Content button to enable the macros. To use the workbook without macros, click the X to dismiss the warning.



**Figure 2-6:**  
Excel's  
warning that  
the file to  
be opened  
contains  
macros.

Excel will remember if you've designated a workbook to be safe. So, the next time you open it, you won't see the Security Warning. (That's not the case with Excel 2007, though.)



**Figure 2-7:**  
Excel's  
warning  
that the  
workbook  
just opened  
contains  
macros.  
You see this  
warning if  
the VBE is  
not open.

Perhaps the best way to handle macro security is to designate one or more folders as *trusted locations*. All the workbooks in a trusted location are opened without a macro warning. You designate trusted folders in the Trusted Locations section of the Trust Center dialog box.

If you want to find out what the other macro security settings imply, press F1 while the Macro Settings section of the Trust Center dialog box is in view. You'll get a Help screen that describes the security settings.

## More about the NameAndTime Macro

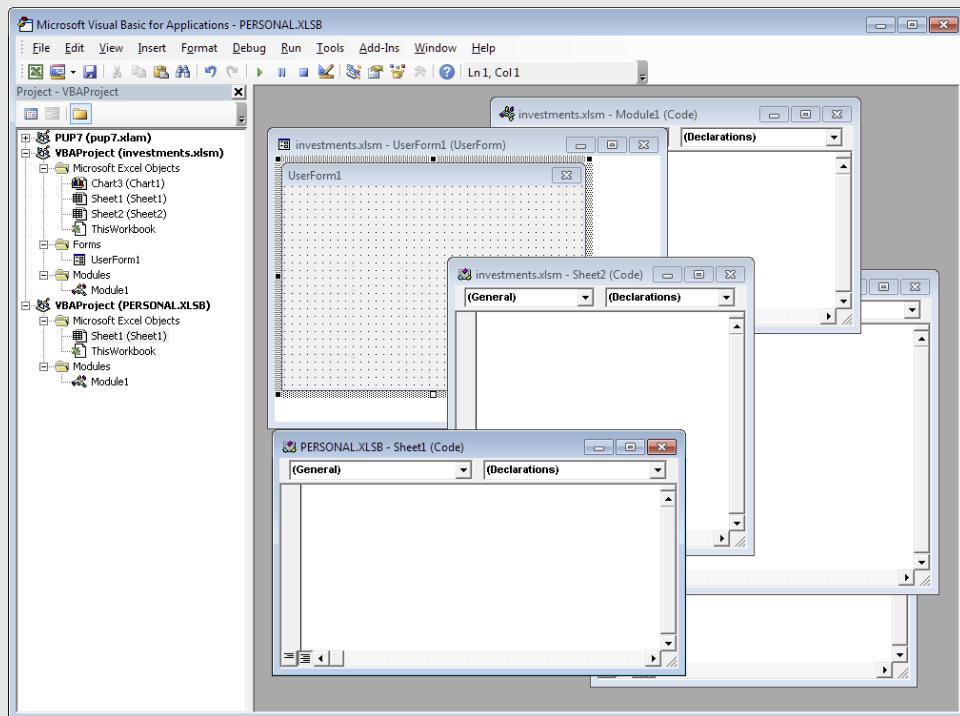
By the time you finish this book, you'll completely understand how the NameAndTime macro works — and you'll be able to develop more sophisticated macros. For now, I wrap up the example with a few additional points about the macro:

- ✓ For this macro to work, its workbook must be open. If you close the workbook, the macro doesn't work (and the Ctrl+Shift+N shortcut has no effect).
- ✓ As long as the workbook containing the macro is open, you can run the macro while any workbook is active. In other words, the macro's own workbook doesn't have to be active.
- ✓ The macro isn't "pro-quality" code. It will overwrite existing text with no warning — and its effects can't be undone.
- ✓ Before you started recording the macro, you assigned it a new shortcut key. This is just one of several ways to execute the macro. (You discover other ways in Chapter 5.)
- ✓ You can create this macro manually rather than record it. To do so, you need a good understanding of VBA. (Be patient, you'll get there.)
- ✓ You can store this macro in your Personal Macro Workbook. If you do so, the macro is available automatically whenever you start Excel. (See Chapter 6 for details about your Personal Macro Workbook.)
- ✓ You can also convert the workbook to an add-in file. (More about this in Chapter 21.)

Congratulations. You've been initiated into the world of Excel programming. (Sorry, there's no secret handshake or decoder ring.) I hope this chapter helps you realize that Excel programming is something you can actually do — and even live to tell about. Keep reading. Subsequent chapters almost certainly answer any questions you have, and you'll soon understand exactly what you did in this hands-on session.

# Part II

# How VBA Works with Excel



Try the *Excel VBA Programming For Dummies* interactive course for more in-depth instruction online at [www.dummies.com/extras/excelvba](http://www.dummies.com/extras/excelvba).

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ See how to access the important part of the Visual Basic Editor
- ✓ Discover VBA code modules (the sheets that store your VBA code).
- ✓ Get an overview of the Excel object model
- ✓ Discover a bit about two key concepts: object properties and methods
- ✓ Find out the difference between subroutines and functions
- ✓ Get a crash course in the Excel macro recorder.
- ✓ Try the *Excel VBA Programming For Dummies* interactive course for more in-depth instruction online at [www.dummies.com/extras/excelvbaprogramming](http://www.dummies.com/extras/excelvbaprogramming).

## Chapter 3

# Working in the Visual Basic Editor

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Understanding the Visual Basic Editor
- ▶ Discovering the Visual Basic Editor parts
- ▶ Knowing what goes into a VBA module
- ▶ Understanding three ways to get VBA code into a module
- ▶ Customizing the VBA environment

**A**s a more experienced-than-average Excel user, you probably know a good deal about workbooks, formulas, charts, and other Excel goodies. Now it's time to expand your horizons and explore an entirely new aspect of Excel: the Visual Basic Editor. In this chapter, you find out how to work with the Visual Basic Editor, and you get down to the nitty-gritty of writing some VBA code.

## *What Is the Visual Basic Editor?*

I'm going to save some wear and tear on my fingers and refer to the Visual Basic Editor as the VBE. The VBE is a separate application where you write and edit your VBA macros. It works seamlessly with Excel. By *seamlessly*, I mean that Excel takes care of opening the VBE when you need it.

In Excel 2013, every workbook displays in a separate window. However, there is only one VBE window, and it works with all open Excel windows.

You can't run the VBE separately; Excel must be running in order for the VBE to run.



## *Activating the VBE*

The quickest way to activate the VBE is to press Alt+F11 when Excel is active. To return to Excel, press Alt+F11 again. Or, you can just click the Close button in the VBE's title bar. When the VBE window closes, Excel is activated.

You can also activate the VBE by using the Developer→Coder→Visual Basic command. If you don't have a Developer tab at the top of your Excel window, refer to the beginning of Chapter 2 where I explain how to get that handy Developer tab to show up.

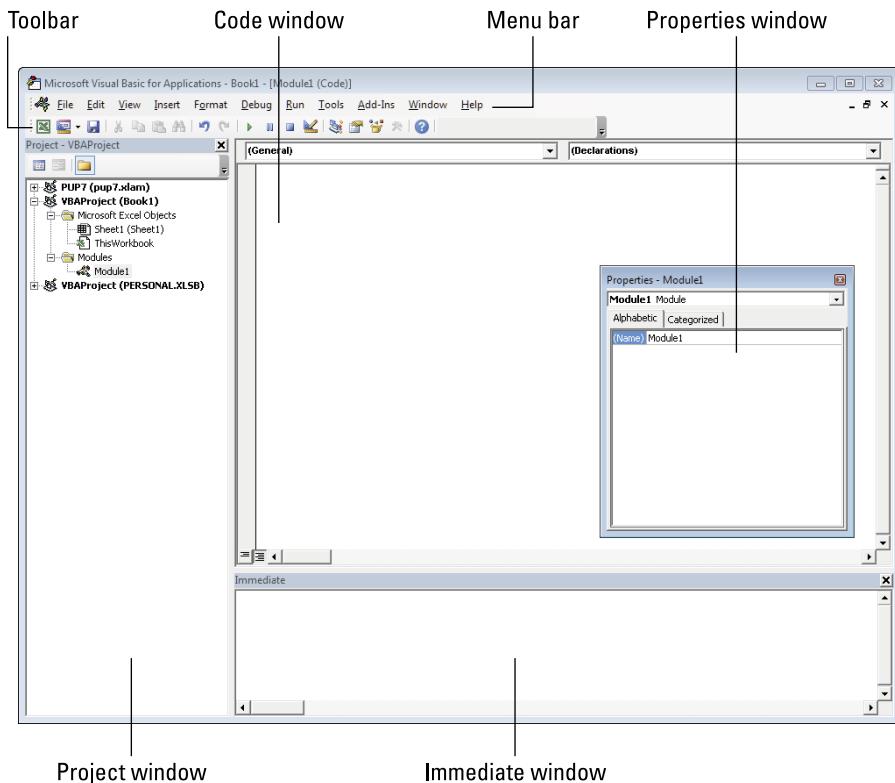
## Understanding VBE components



Figure 3-1 shows the VBE program, with some of the key parts identified. Because so much is going on in the VBE, I like to maximize the window to see as much as possible.

Chances are your VBE program window won't look exactly like what you see in Figure 3-1. The VBE contains several windows, and it's highly customizable. You can hide windows, rearrange windows, dock windows, and so on.

Actually, the VBE has even more parts than are shown in Figure 3-1. I discuss these additional components throughout the book, when they become relevant.



### ***Menu bar***

The VBE menu bar works just like every other menu bar you've encountered. It contains commands that you use to do things with the various components in the VBE. You also find that many of the menu commands have shortcut keys associated with them.



The VBE also features shortcut menus. You can right-click virtually anything in the VBE and get a shortcut menu of common commands.

### ***Toolbar***

The Standard toolbar, which is directly under the menu bar by default (refer to Figure 3-1), is one of four VBE toolbars available. You can customize the toolbars, move them around, display other toolbars, and so on. If you're so inclined, use the View $\Rightarrow$ Toolbars command to work with VBE toolbars. Most people (including me) just leave them as they are.

### ***Project window***

The Project window displays a tree diagram that shows every workbook currently open in Excel (including add-ins and hidden workbooks). Double-click items to expand or contract them within the outline. I discuss this window in more detail in the upcoming "Working with the Project Window" section.

If the Project window is not visible, press Ctrl+R or use the View $\Rightarrow$ Project Explorer command. To hide the Project window, click the Close button in its title bar. Or right-click anywhere in the Project window and select Hide from the shortcut menu.

### ***Code window***

A Code window is where you put your VBA code. Every object in a project has an associated Code window. To view an object's Code window, double-click the object in the Project window. For example, to view the Code window for the Sheet1 object in Book1, double-click Sheet1 in the VBAProject for Book1. Unless you've added some VBA code, the Code window will be empty.

You find out more about Code windows later in this chapter's "Working with a Code Window" section.

### ***Immediate window***

The Immediate window may or may not be visible. If it isn't visible, press Ctrl+G or use the View $\Rightarrow$ Immediate Window command. To close the Immediate window, click the Close button in its title bar (or right-click anywhere in the Immediate window and select Hide from the shortcut menu).

## What's new in the Visual Basic Editor?

Excel 2007 introduced a brand-new user interface. Menus and toolbars were replaced with a slick new Ribbon user interface. But the VBE never got the facelift and has kept the old school menu and toolbar UI.

The VBA programming language has been updated to accommodate the new Excel features, but nothing else has changed. Maybe Microsoft will eventually get around to updating the VBE, but I'm not holding my breath.

One thing that *has* changed is the Help system. In the past, Help information was stored on your computer, and you had the option of accessing Help via the Internet. In Excel 2013, all help information is on the Internet and is displayed in your web browser. In other words, you must be connected to the Internet in order to access the Help system.

The Immediate window is most useful for executing VBA statements directly and for debugging your code. If you're just starting out with VBA, this window won't be all that useful, so feel free to hide it and free up some screen space for other things.

In Chapter 13, I discuss the Immediate window in detail. It may just become your good friend!

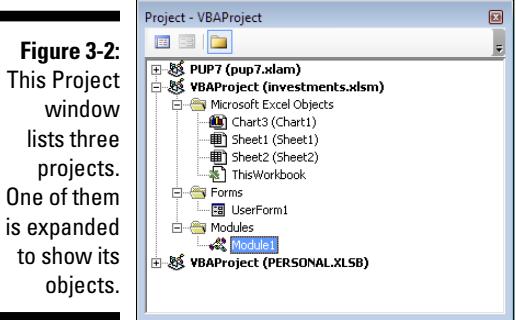
## Working with the Project Window

When you're working in the VBE, each Excel workbook and add-in that's open is a project. You can think of a *project* as a collection of objects arranged as an outline. You can expand a project by clicking the plus sign (+) at the left of the project's name in the Project window. Contract a project by clicking the minus sign (-) to the left of a project's name. Or you can double-click the items to expand and contract them.



If a project is password-protected, you're prompted for the password when you double-click a project name. If you don't know the password, you can't expand the project — which means that you can't view or modify any part of the project.

Figure 3-2 shows a Project window with three projects listed: an add-in named pup7.xlam, a workbook named investments.xlsml, and the Personal Macro Workbook (which is always named PERSONAL.XLSB). Of the three, only the investments.xlsml project is expanded to show all of its objects.



Every project expands to show at least one *node* called Microsoft Excel Objects. This node expands to show an item for each sheet in the workbook (each sheet is considered an object) and another object called ThisWorkbook (which represents the Workbook object). If the project has any VBA modules, the project listing also shows a Modules node. And, as you see in Part IV, a project may also contain a node called Forms, which contains UserForm objects (which hold custom dialog boxes).

The concept of objects may be a bit fuzzy for you. However, I guarantee that things become much clearer in subsequent chapters. Don't be too concerned if you don't understand what's going on at this point.

## Adding a new VBA module

Follow these steps to add a new VBA module to a project:

1. In the VBE, select the project's name in the Project window.
2. Choose Insert>Module.

Or

1. Right-click the project's name.
2. Choose Insert>Module from the shortcut menu.



When you record a macro, Excel automatically inserts a VBA module to hold the recorded code. Which workbook holds the module for the recorded macro depends on where you chose to store the recorded macro, just before you started recording.

## Removing a VBA module

Sometimes you need to remove a VBA module from a project. For example, it may contain code that you no longer need, or it's empty because you inserted the module and then changed your mind. To remove a VBA module from a project:

- 1. Select the module's name in the Project window.**
- 2. Choose File→Remove xxx, where xxx is the module name.**

Or

- 1. Right-click the module's name.**
- 2. Choose Remove xxx from the shortcut menu.**

Excel, always trying to keep you from doing something you'll regret, will ask if you want to export the code in the module before you delete it. Almost always, you don't. (If you *do* want to export the module, see the next section.)

You can remove VBA modules, but there is no way to remove the other code modules — those for the Sheet objects or ThisWorkbook.

## Exporting and importing objects

Every object in a VBA project can be saved to a separate file. Saving an individual object in a project is known as *exporting*. It stands to reason that you can also *import* objects to a project. Exporting and importing objects might be useful if you want to use a particular object (such as a VBA module or a UserForm) in a different project. Or, maybe you want to send a coworker a copy of a VBA module, which she can then import into her project.

Follow these steps to export an object:

- 1. Select an object in the Project window.**
- 2. Choose File→Export File or press Ctrl+E.**

You get a dialog box that asks for a filename. Note that the object remains in the project; only a copy of it is exported. Excel provides the file extension for you, and the extension depends on what type of object you're exporting. In all cases, the result is a text file. If you're so inclined, you can open it with a text editor and take a look.

Importing a file to a project goes like this:

- 1. Select the project's name in the Explorer window.**
- 2. Choose File→Import File or press Ctrl+M.**



You get a dialog box that asks for a file. Locate the file and click Open. You should only import a file if the file was exported by using the File→Export File command.

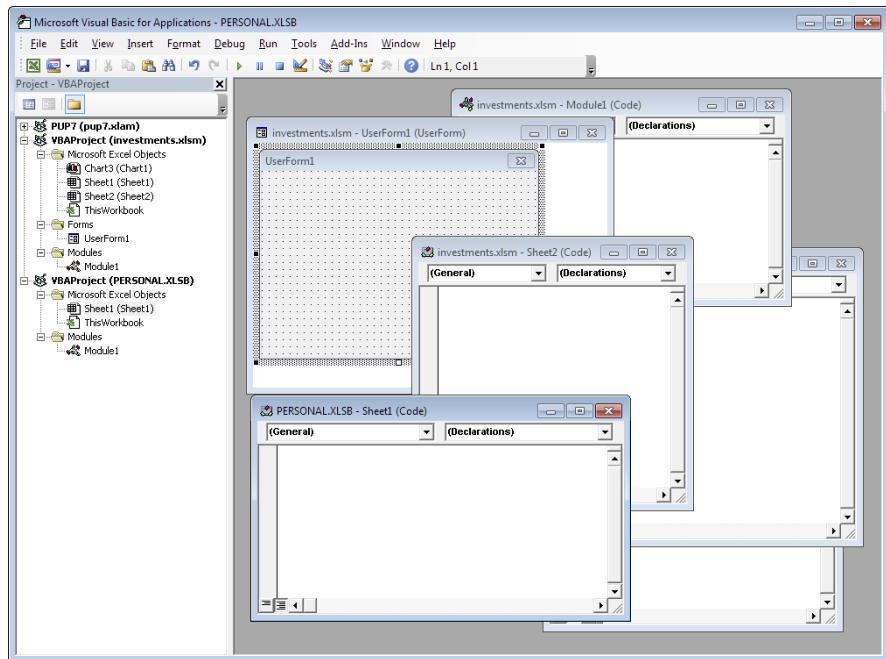
## Working with a Code Window



As you become proficient with VBA, you spend lots of time working in Code windows. Macros that you record are stored in a module, and you can type VBA code directly into a VBA module.

### Minimizing and maximizing windows

If you have several projects open, the VBE may have lots of Code windows at any given time. Figure 3-3 shows an example of what I mean.



**Figure 3-3:**  
Code  
window  
overload  
isn't pretty.

Code windows are much like workbook windows in Excel. You can minimize them, maximize them, resize them, hide them, rearrange them, and so on. Most people find it much easier to maximize the Code window that they're working on. Doing so lets you see more code and keeps you from getting distracted.

To maximize a Code window, click the Maximize button in its title bar (right next to the X). Or just double-click its title bar to maximize it. To restore a Code window to its original size, click the Restore button. When a window is maximized, its title bar isn't visible, so you'll find the Restore button below the VBE title bar.

Sometimes you may want to have two or more Code windows visible. For example, you may want to compare the code in two modules or copy code from one module to another. You can arrange the windows manually or use the Window→Tile Horizontally or Window→Tile Vertically command to arrange them automatically.

You can quickly switch among Code windows by pressing Ctrl+F6. If you repeat that key combination, you keep cycling through all the open Code windows. Pressing Ctrl+Shift+F6 cycles through the windows in reverse order.



Minimizing a Code window gets it out of the way. You can also click the window's Close button (which displays X) in a Code window's title bar to close the window completely. (Closing a window just hides it; you won't lose anything.) To open it again, just double-click the appropriate object in the Project window. By the way, working with these Code windows *sounds* more difficult than it really is.

## *Creating a module*

In general, a VBA module can hold three types of code:

- ✓ **Declarations:** One or more information statements that you provide to VBA. For example, you can declare the data type for variables you plan to use, or set some other module-wide options. Declarations are basically housekeeping statements. They aren't actually executed.
- ✓ **Sub procedures:** A set of programming instructions that, when executed, performs some action.
- ✓ **Function procedures:** A set of programming instructions that returns a single value (similar in concept to a worksheet function, such as SUM).

A single VBA module can store any number of Sub procedures, Function procedures, and declarations. Well, there *is* a limit — about 64,000 characters per module. By way of comparison, this particular chapter has about

half that many characters. After more than 15 years of VBA programming, I haven't even come close to reaching the 64,000-character limit. And if I did, the solution is simple: Just insert a new module.

How you organize a VBA module is completely up to you. Some people prefer to keep all their VBA code for an application in a single VBA module; others like to split up the code into several different modules. It's a personal choice, just like arranging furniture.

## Getting VBA code into a module

An empty VBA module is like the fake food you see in the windows of some Chinese restaurants; it looks good but it doesn't really do much for you. Before you can do anything meaningful, you must have some VBA code in the VBA module. You can get VBA code into a VBA module in three ways:

- ✓ Enter the code directly.
- ✓ Use the Excel macro recorder to record your actions and convert those actions to VBA code (see Chapter 6).
- ✓ Copy the code from one module and paste it into another.

## Entering code directly

Sometimes, the best route is the most direct one. Entering code directly involves . . . well, entering the code directly. In other words, you type the code using your keyboard. Entering and editing text in a VBA module works as you might expect. You can select, copy, cut, paste, and do other things to the text.



### Pause for a terminology break

I need to digress for a moment to discuss terminology. Throughout this book, I use the terms *Sub procedure*, *routine*, *program*, *procedure*, and *macro*. These terms are a bit confusing. Programming folks usually use the word *procedure* to describe an automated task. Technically, a procedure can be a Sub procedure or a

Function procedure — both of which are sometimes called *routines* — or even *programs*. I use all these terms interchangeably. As detailed in later chapters, however, there is an important difference between Sub and Function procedures. For now, don't worry about the terminology. Just try to understand the concepts.

Use the Tab key to indent some of the lines to make your code easier to read. Indenting isn't necessary, but it's a good habit to acquire. As you study the code I present in this book, you'll understand why indenting code lines is helpful.



A single line of VBA code can be as long as you need it to be. However, you may want to use the line-continuation characters to break up lengthy lines of code. To continue a single line of code (also known as a *statement*) from one line to the next, end the first line with a space followed by an underscore (\_). Then continue the statement on the next line. And don't forget the space. An underscore character that's not preceded by a space won't do the job.

Here's an example of a single statement split into three lines:

```
Selection.Sort Key1:=Range("A1"), _
    Order1:=xlAscending, Header:=xlGuess, _
    Orientation:=xlTopToBottom
```

This statement would perform exactly the same way if it were entered in a single line (with no line-continuation characters). Notice that I indented the second and third lines of this statement. Indenting is optional, but it helps clarify the fact that these lines are not separate statements.



The white-coated engineers who designed the VBE anticipated that people like us would be making mistakes. Therefore, the VBE has multiple levels of undo and redo. If you deleted a statement that you shouldn't have, use the Undo button on the toolbar (or press Ctrl+Z) until the statement shows up again. After undoing, you can use the Redo button to perform the changes you've undone. I recommend playing around with this feature until you understand how it works.

Are you ready to enter some real-live code? Try the following steps:

- 1. Create a new workbook in Excel.**
- 2. Press Alt+F11 to activate the VBE.**
- 3. Click the new workbook's name in the Project window.**
- 4. Choose Insert>Module to insert a VBA module into the project.**
- 5. Type the following code into the module:**

```
Sub GuessName()
    Msg = "Is your name " & Application.UserName & "?"
    Ans = MsgBox(Msg, vbYesNo)
    If Ans = vbNo Then MsgBox "Oh, never mind."
    If Ans = vbYes Then MsgBox "I must be psychic!"
End Sub
```

**6. Position the cursor anywhere within the text you typed and press F5 to execute the procedure.**

F5 is a shortcut for the Run⇒Run Sub/UserForm command. If you entered the code correctly, Excel executes the procedure, and you can respond to the simple dialog box shown in Figure 3-4. Unless your name happens to be the same as mine, the text in the dialog box will be different from the text shown in the figure.

**Figure 3-4:**  
The  
GuessName  
procedure  
displays this  
dialog box.



When you enter the code listed in Step 5, you might notice that the VBE makes some adjustments to the text you enter. For example, after you type the Sub statement, the VBE automatically inserts the End Sub statement. And if you omit the space before or after an equal sign, the VBE inserts the space for you. Also, the VBE changes the color and capitalization of some text. This is all perfectly normal. It's just the VBE's way of keeping things neat and readable.

If you followed the previous steps, you just wrote a VBA Sub procedure, also known as a *macro*. When you press F5, Excel executes the code and follows the instructions. In other words, Excel evaluates each statement and does what you told it to do. (Don't let this newfound power go to your head.) You can execute this macro any number of times — although it tends to lose its appeal after a few dozen times.

## Compile Error?

There's a chance that the GuessName macro won't work. When you try to run it, Excel may complain and pop up an error message: Compile Error: Variable Not Defined. Don't worry; there's an easy fix for that.

If you get that error, look at the top of your module, and you'll see this text: Option Explicit. Just delete that line, and the

macro should work. That line, when present at the top of a module, means that you must "declare" all of your variables. I cover this topic in Chapter 7 (see "Declaring and scoping variables"). If that line was added, it means that your VBE is set up to add the line automatically. For now, don't worry about it. Just delete the line and forget about the rude interruption.

For the record, this simple macro uses the following concepts, all of which are covered later in this book:

- ✓ Defining a Sub procedure (the first line)
- ✓ Assigning values to variables (Msg and Ans)
- ✓ *Concatenating* (joining) a string (using the & operator)
- ✓ Using a built-in VBA function (MsgBox)
- ✓ Using built-in VBA constants (vbYesNo, vbNo, and vbYes)
- ✓ Using an If-Then construct (twice)
- ✓ Ending a Sub procedure (the last line)

Not bad for a beginner, eh?

## Using the macro recorder

Another way you can get code into a VBA module is by recording your actions, using the Excel macro recorder. If you worked through the hands-on exercise in Chapter 2, you already have some experience with this technique.



By the way, there is absolutely no way you can record the GuessName procedure shown in the preceding section. You can record only things that you can do directly in Excel. Displaying a message box is not in Excel's normal repertoire. (It's a VBA thing.) The macro recorder is useful, but in many cases, you'll probably need to enter at least some code manually.

Here's a step-by-step example that shows you how to record a macro that inserts a new worksheet and hides all but the first 10 rows and all but the first 10 columns. If you want to try this example, start with a new, blank workbook and follow these steps:

**1. Activate a worksheet in the workbook.**

Any worksheet will do.

**2. Click the Developer tab and make sure that Use Relative References is not highlighted.**

This macro will be recorded using Absolute References.

**3. Choose Developer→Code→Record Macro, or you can click the icon next to the Ready indicator in the left side of the status bar.**

Excel displays its Record Macro dialog box.

**4. In the Record Macro dialog box, name the macro TenByTen and type Shift+T for the shortcut key.**

The macro can be executed when you press Ctrl+Shift+T.

**5. Click OK to start recording.**

Excel automatically inserts a new VBA module into the project that corresponds to the active workbook. From this point on, Excel converts your actions into VBA code. While recording, the icon in the status bar turns into a small square. This is a reminder that the macro recorder is running. You can also click that blue square to stop the macro recorder.

**6. Click the New Sheet icon to the right of the last sheet tab.**

Excel inserts a new worksheet.

**7. Select the entire Column K (the 11<sup>th</sup> column) and press**

**Ctrl+Shift+RightArrow; then right-click any selected column and choose Hide from the shortcut menu.**

Excel hides all of the selected columns.

**8. Select the entire Row 11 and press Ctrl+Shift+Down Arrow; then right-click any selected row and choose Hide from the shortcut menu.**

Excel hides all of the selected columns.

**9. Select cell A1.****10. Choose Developer→Code→Stop Recording, or click the Stop Recording button in the status bar (the small square).**

Excel stops recording your actions.

To view this newly recorded macro, press Alt+F11 to activate the VBE. Locate the workbook's name in the Project window. You see that the project has a new module listed. The name of the module depends on whether you had any other modules in the workbook when you started recording the macro. If you didn't, the module will be named Module1. You can double-click the module to view the Code window for the module.

Here's the code generated by your actions:

```
Sub TenByTen()
'
' TenByTen Macro
'
' Keyboard Shortcut: Ctrl+Shift+T
'
    Sheets.Add After:=ActiveSheet
    Columns("K:K").Select
    Range(Selection, Selection.End(xlToRight)).Select
    Selection.EntireColumn.Hidden = True
    Rows("11:11").Select
    Range(Selection, Selection.End(xlDown)).Select
    Selection.EntireRow.Hidden = True
    Range("A1").Select
End Sub
```

To try out this macro, activate any worksheet and press the shortcut key that you assigned in Step 4: Ctrl+Shift+T.

If you didn't assign a shortcut key to the macro, don't worry. Here's how to display a list of all macros available and run the one you want:

**1. Choose Developer→Code→Macros.**

Keyboard fans can press Alt+F8. Either of these methods displays a dialog box that lists all the available macros.

**2. Select the macro in the list (in this case, TenByTen).**

**3. Click the Run button.**

Excel executes the macro, and you get a new worksheet with 10 visible rows and 10 visible columns.

You can execute any number of commands and perform any number of actions while the macro recorder is running. Excel dutifully translates your mouse actions and keystrokes to VBA code.

And, of course, you can also edit the macro after you record it. To test your new skills, try editing the macro so that it inserts a worksheet with nine visible rows and columns — perfect for a Sudoku puzzle.

## *Copying VBA code*

The final method for getting code into a VBA module is to copy it from another module or from some other place (such as a website). For example, a Sub or Function procedure that you write for one project might also be useful in another project. Instead of wasting time reentering the code, you can activate the module and use the normal Clipboard copy-and-paste procedures (I'm rather fond of the keyboard shortcuts, Ctrl+C to copy and Ctrl+V to paste). After pasting it into a VBA module, you can modify the code if necessary.

By the way, you'll find lots of VBA code examples on the web. If you'd like to try them, select the code in your browser and press Ctrl+C to copy it. Then, activate a module and press Ctrl+V to paste it.

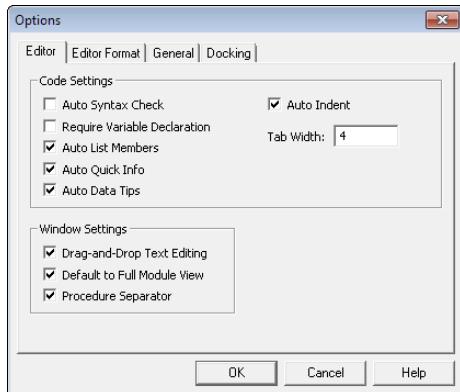
## Customizing the VBA Environment

If you're serious about becoming an Excel programmer, you'll spend a lot of time with VBA modules on your screen. To help make things as comfortable as possible (no, please keep your shoes on), the VBE provides quite a few customization options.

When the VBE is active, choose Tools⇒Options. You'll see a dialog box with four tabs: Editor, Editor Format, General, and Docking. I discuss some of the most useful options in the sections that follow.

### Using the Editor tab

Figure 3-5 shows the options accessed by clicking the Editor tab of the Options dialog box. Use the options in the Editor tab to control how certain things work in the VBE.



**Figure 3-5:**  
This is the  
Editor tab in  
the Options  
dialog box.

#### *Auto Syntax Check option*

The Auto Syntax Check setting determines whether the VBE pops up a dialog box if it discovers a syntax error while you're entering your VBA code. The dialog box tells roughly what the problem is. If you don't choose this setting, VBE flags syntax errors by displaying them in a different color from the rest of the code, and you don't have to deal with any dialog boxes popping up on your screen.

I usually keep this setting turned off because I find the dialog boxes annoying, and I can usually figure out what's wrong with a statement. But back in the olden days (before I was a VBA veteran), I found this assistance quite helpful.

### ***Require Variable Declaration option***

If the Require Variable Declaration option is set, VBE inserts the following statement at the beginning of each new VBA module you insert:

```
Option Explicit
```

Changing this setting affects only new modules, not existing modules. If this statement appears in your module, you must explicitly define each variable you use. In Chapter 7, I explain why you should develop this habit.

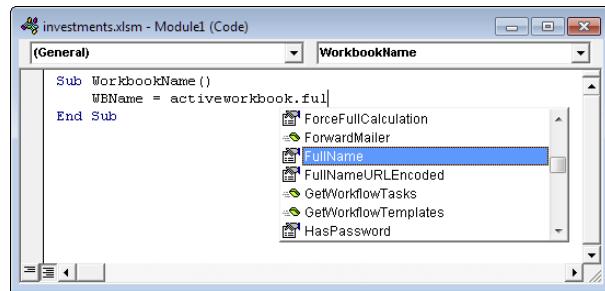
Normally, I keep this option turned off because I prefer to add the Option Explicit statement myself.

### ***Auto List Members option***

If the Auto List Members option is set, VBE provides some help when you're entering your VBA code. It displays a list that would logically complete the statement you're typing. This bit of magic is sometimes called *IntelliSense*.

This is one of the best features of the VBE, and I always keep it turned on. Figure 3-6 shows an example (which will make lots more sense when you start writing VBA code).

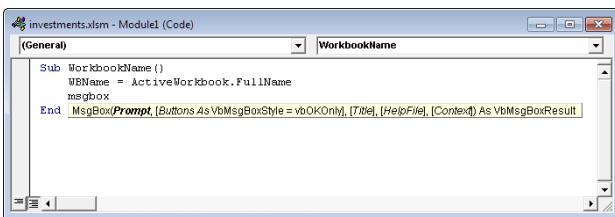
**Figure 3-6:**  
An example  
of Auto  
List  
members.



### ***Auto Quick Info option***

If the Auto Quick Info option is set, VBE displays information about functions and their arguments as you type. This can be very helpful. Figure 3-7 shows this feature in action, telling me about the arguments for the MsgBox function.

**Figure 3-7:**  
Auto Quick  
Info offers  
help about  
the MsgBox  
function.



### *Auto Data Tips option*

If the Auto Data Tips option is set, VBE displays the value of the variable over which your cursor is placed when you’re debugging code. When you enter the wonderful world of debugging, as I describe in Chapter 13, you’ll appreciate this option.

### *Auto Indent setting*

The Auto Indent setting determines whether VBE automatically indents each new line of code the same as the previous line. I’m big on using indentations in my code, so I keep this option on.



Use the Tab key to indent your code, not the spacebar. Also, you can use Shift+Tab to “unindent” a line of code. If you want to indent more than just one line, select all the lines you want to indent. Then press the Tab key.



The VBE’s Edit toolbar (which is hidden by default) contains two useful buttons: Indent and Outdent. These buttons let you quickly indent or “unindent” a block of code. Select the code and click one of these buttons to change the block’s indenting.

### *Drag-and-Drop Text Editing option*

The Drag-and-Drop Text Editing option, when enabled, lets you copy and move text by dragging and dropping with your mouse. I keep this option turned on, but I never use it. I prefer to copy and move by using the keyboard.

### *Default to Full Module View option*

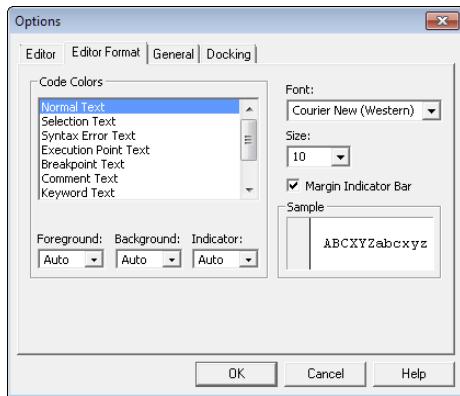
The Default to Full Module View option sets the default state for new modules. (It doesn’t affect existing modules.) If set, procedures in the Code window appear as a single scrollable list. If this option is turned off, you can see only one procedure at a time. I keep this option turned on.

### Procedure Separator option

When the Procedure Separator option is turned on, separator bars appear at the end of each procedure in a Code window. I like the idea of separator bars, so I keep this option turned on.

## Using the Editor Format tab

Figure 3-8 shows the Editor Format tab of the Options dialog box. With this tab, you can customize the way the VBE looks.



**Figure 3-8:**  
Change  
the VBE's  
looks with  
the Editor  
Format tab.

### Code Colors option

The Code Colors option lets you set the text color and background color displayed for various elements of VBA code. This is largely a matter of personal preference. Personally, I find the default colors to be just fine. But for a change of scenery, I occasionally play around with these settings.

### Font option

The Font option lets you select the font that's used in your VBA modules. For best results, stick with a fixed-width font such as Courier New. In a *fixed-width font*, all characters are exactly the same width. This makes your code more readable because the characters are nicely aligned vertically, and you can easily distinguish multiple spaces (which is sometimes useful).

### ***Size setting***

The Size setting specifies the point size of the font in the VBA modules. This setting is a matter of personal preference determined by your video display resolution and how many carrots you've been eating.

### ***Margin Indicator Bar option***

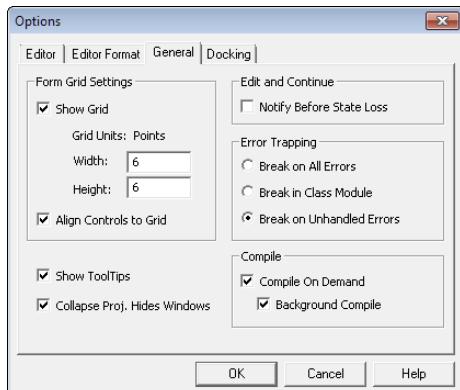
This option controls the display of the vertical margin indicator bar in your modules. You should keep this turned on; otherwise, you won't be able to see the helpful graphical indicators when you're debugging your code.

## ***Using the General tab***

Figure 3-9 shows the options available under the General tab in the Options dialog box. In almost every case, the default settings are just fine.

The most important setting is Error Trapping. I strongly suggest that you use the Break On Unhandled Errors setting (which is the default). If you use a different setting, your error-handling code won't work. You can read more about this in Chapter 12.

If you're really interested in these options, click the Help button for details.



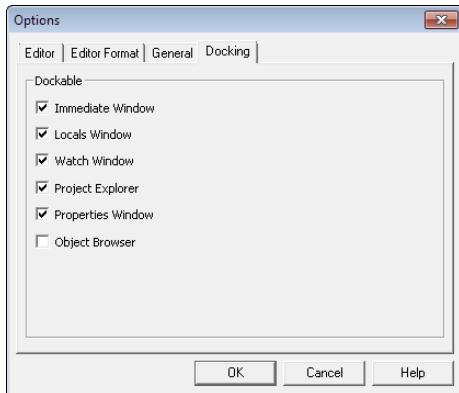
**Figure 3-9:**  
The General  
tab of the  
Options dia-  
log box.

## Using the Docking tab

Figure 3-10 shows the Docking tab. These options determine how the various windows in the VBE behave. When a window is *docked*, it is fixed in place along one of the edges of the VBE program window. This makes it much easier to identify and locate a particular window. If you turn off all docking, you have a big, confusing mess of windows. Generally, the default settings work fine.

You'll find that sometimes the VBE seems to have a mind of its own when you're trying to dock a window. If docking doesn't seem to work correctly, just stick with it, and you'll get the hang of things.

**Figure 3-10:**  
The Docking  
tab of the  
Options dia-  
log box.



## **Chapter 4**

---

# **Introducing the Excel Object Model**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Introducing the concept of objects
  - ▶ Finding out about the Excel object hierarchy
  - ▶ Understanding object collections
  - ▶ Referring to specific objects in your VBA code
  - ▶ Accessing or changing an object's properties
  - ▶ Performing actions with an object's methods
- 

**E**veryone is familiar with the word *object*. Well, folks, forget the definition you think you know. In the world of programming, the word *object* has a different meaning. You often see it used as part of the expression *object-oriented programming*, or *OOP* for short. OOP is based on the idea that software deals with distinct objects that have attributes (or properties) and can be manipulated. These objects are not material things. Rather, they exist in the form of bits and bytes.

In this chapter, I introduce you to the Excel object model, which is a hierarchy of objects contained in Excel. By the time you finish this chapter, you'll have a reasonably good understanding of what OOP is all about — and why you need to understand this concept to become a VBA programmer. After all, Excel programming really boils down to manipulating the objects that make up Excel. It's as simple as that.



The material in this chapter may be a bit overwhelming. But please take my advice and plow through it, even if you don't fully grasp it at first. The important concepts presented here will make a lot more sense as you progress through the book.

## *Excel Is an Object?*

You've used Excel for quite a while, but you probably never thought of it as an object. The more you work with VBA, the more you view Excel in those terms. You'll understand that Excel is an object and that it contains other objects. Those objects, in turn, contain still more objects. In other words, VBA programming involves working with an object hierarchy.

At the top of this hierarchy is the Application object — in this case, Excel itself (the mother of all objects).

## *Climbing the Object Hierarchy*

The Application object contains other objects. Following is a list of some of the more useful objects contained in the Excel Application:

- ✓ Addin
- ✓ Window
- ✓ Workbook
- ✓ WorksheetFunction

Each object contained in the Application object can contain other objects. For example, the following is a list of objects that can be contained in a Workbook object:

- ✓ Chart (which is a chart sheet)
- ✓ Name
- ✓ VBProject
- ✓ Window
- ✓ Worksheet

In turn, each of these objects can contain still other objects. Consider a Worksheet object, which is contained in a Workbook object, which is contained in the Application object. Some of the objects that can be contained in a Worksheet object are

- ✓ Comment
- ✓ Hyperlink
- ✓ Name

- ✓ PageSetup
- ✓ PivotTable
- ✓ Range

Put another way, if you want to do something with a range on a particular worksheet, you may find it helpful to visualize that range in the following manner:

Range → contained in Worksheet → contained in Workbook → contained in Excel

Is this beginning to make sense?



When you start digging around, you'll find that Excel has more objects than you can shake a stick at. Even old-timers like me can get overwhelmed. The good news is that you'll never have to actually deal with most of these objects. When you're working on a problem, you can just focus on a few relevant objects — which you can often discover by recording a macro.

## Wrapping Your Mind around Collections

Collections are another key concept in VBA programming. A *collection* is a group of objects of the same type. And to add to the confusion, a collection is itself an object.

Here are a few examples of commonly used collections:

- ✓ **Workbooks:** A collection of all currently open Workbook objects
- ✓ **Worksheets:** A collection of all Worksheet objects contained in a particular Workbook object
- ✓ **Charts:** A collection of all Chart objects (chart sheets) contained in a particular Workbook object
- ✓ **Sheets:** A collection of all sheets (regardless of their type) contained in a particular Workbook object

You may notice that collection names are all plural, which makes sense (at least I think so).

"What are collections for?" you may rightfully ask. Well, for example, they are very useful when you want to do stuff with not just one worksheet, but with a couple of them or all of them. As you'll see, your VBA code can loop through all members of a collection and do something to each one.

## Referring to Objects

I presented the information in the previous sections to prepare you for the next concept: referring to objects in your VBA code. Referring to an object is important because you must identify the object that you want to work with. After all, VBA can't read your mind — yet. I believe the mind-reading object will be introduced in Excel 2016.

You can work with an entire collection of objects in one fell swoop. More often, however, you need to work with a specific object in a collection (such as a particular worksheet in a workbook). To reference a single object from a collection, you put the object's name or index number in parentheses after the name of the collection, like this:

```
Worksheets ("Sheet1")
```

Notice that the sheet's name is in quotation marks. If you omit the quotation marks, Excel won't be able to identify the object (Excel will assume that it's a variable name).

If Sheet1 is the first (or only) worksheet in the collection, you can also use the following reference:

```
Worksheets (1)
```



In this case, the number is *not* in quotation marks. Bottom line? If you refer to an object by using its name, use quotation marks. If you refer to an object by using its index number, use a plain number without quotation marks.

What about chart sheets? A chart sheet contains a single chart. It has a sheet tab, but it's not a worksheet. Well, as it turns out, the object model has a collection called Charts. This collection contains all of the chart sheet objects in a workbook.

And just to keep things logical, there's another collection called Sheets. The Sheets collection contains all sheets (worksheets and chart sheets) in a workbook. The Sheets collection is handy if you want to work with all sheets in a workbook and don't care if they are worksheets or chart sheets.

So, a single worksheet named Sheet1 is a member of two collections: the Worksheets collection and the Sheets collection. You can refer to it in either of two ways:

```
Worksheets ("Sheet1")
```

```
Sheets ("Sheet1")
```

## Navigating through the hierarchy

If you want to work with the Application object, it's easy: You start by typing **Application**.

Every other object in Excel's object model is under the Application object. You get to these objects by moving down the hierarchy and connecting each object on your way with the dot (.) operator. To get to the Workbook object named Book1.xlsx, start with the Application object and navigate down to the Workbooks collection object.

```
Application.Workbooks("Book1.xlsx")
```

To navigate farther to a specific worksheet, add a dot operator and access the Worksheets collection object.

```
Application.Workbooks("Book1.xlsx").Worksheets(1)
```

Not far enough yet? If you really want to get the value from cell A1 on the first Worksheet of the Workbook named Book1.xlsx, you need to navigate one more level to the Range object.

```
Application.Workbooks("Book1.xlsx").Worksheets(1).Range("A1").Value
```

When you refer to a Range object in this way, it's called a *fully qualified reference*. You've told Excel exactly which range you want, on which worksheet and in which workbook, and have left nothing to the imagination. Imagination is good in people, but not so good in computer programs.

By the way, workbook names also have a dot to separate the filename from the extension (for example, Book1.xlsx). That's just a coincidence. The dot in a filename has nothing at all to do with the dot operator I referred to a few paragraphs ago.

## Simplifying object references

If you were required to fully qualify every object reference you make, your code would get quite long, and it might be more difficult to read. Fortunately, Excel provides you with some shortcuts that can improve the readability (and save you some typing). For starters, the Application object is always assumed. There are only a few cases when it makes sense to type it. Omitting the Application object reference shortens the example from the previous section to

```
Workbooks("Book1.xlsx").Worksheets(1).Range("A1").Value
```

That's a pretty good improvement. But wait, there's more. If you're sure that Book1.xlsx is the active workbook, you can omit that reference, too. Now you're down to

```
Worksheets(1).Range("A1").Value
```

Now you're getting somewhere. Have you guessed the next shortcut? That's right, if you know the first worksheet is the currently active worksheet, then Excel will assume that reference and allow you to just type



```
Range("A1").Value
```

Contrary to what some people may think, Excel does not have a Cell object. A *cell* is simply a Range object that consists of just one element.

The shortcuts described here are great, but they can also be dangerous. What if you only *think* Book1.xlsx is the active workbook? You could get an error, or worse, you could get the wrong value and not even realize it's wrong. For that reason, it's often best to fully qualify your object references.

In Chapter 14, I discuss the With-End With structure, which helps you fully qualify your references but also helps to make the code more readable and cuts down on the typing. The best of both worlds!

## Diving into Object Properties and Methods

Although knowing how to refer to objects is important, you can't do anything useful by simply referring to an object (as in the examples in the preceding sections). To accomplish anything meaningful, you must do one of two things:

- ✓ Read or modify an object's *properties*.
- ✓ Specify a *method* of action to be used with an object.

With literally thousands of properties and methods available, you can easily be overwhelmed. I've been working with this stuff for years, and I'm *still* overwhelmed. But as I've said before and I say again: You'll never need to use most of the available properties and methods.



## Another slant on McObjects, McProperties, and McMethods

Here's an analogy that may help you understand the relationships among objects, properties, and methods in VBA. In this analogy, I compare Excel with a fast-food restaurant chain.

The basic unit of Excel is a Workbook object. In a fast-food chain, the basic unit is an individual restaurant. With Excel, you can add a workbook and close a workbook, and all the open workbooks are known as Workbooks (a collection of Workbook objects). Similarly, the management of a fast-food chain can add a restaurant and close a restaurant, and all the restaurants in the chain can be viewed as the Restaurants collection (a collection of Restaurant objects).

An Excel workbook is an object, but it also contains other objects such as worksheets, chart sheets, VBA modules, and so on. Furthermore, each object in a workbook can contain its own objects. For example, a Worksheet object can contain Range objects, PivotTable objects, Shape objects, and so on.

Continuing with the analogy, a fast-food restaurant (like a workbook) contains objects such as the Kitchen, DiningArea, and Tables (a collection). Furthermore, management can add or remove objects from the Restaurant object. For example, management may add more tables to the Tables collection. Each of these objects can contain other objects. For example, the Kitchen object has a Stove object, VentilationFan object, Chef object, Sink object, and so on.

So far, so good. This analogy seems to work. Let me see if I can take it further.

Excel's objects have properties. For example, a Range object has properties such as Value and Name, and a Shape object has properties such as Width, Height, and so on. Not surprisingly, objects in a fast-food restaurant also have properties. The Stove object, for example, has properties such as Temperature and NumberofBurners. The VentilationFan has its own set of properties (TurnedOn, RPM, and so on).

Besides properties, Excel's objects also have methods, which perform an operation on an object. For example, the ClearContents method erases the contents of a Range object. An object in a fast-food restaurant also has methods. You can easily envision a ChangeThermostat method for a Stove object or a SwitchOn method for a VentilationFan object.

In Excel, methods sometimes change an object's properties. The ClearContents method for a Range changes the Range's Value property. Similarly, the ChangeThermostat method on a Stove object affects its Temperature property. With VBA, you can write procedures to manipulate Excel's objects. In a fast-food restaurant, the management can give orders to manipulate the objects in the restaurants. ("Turn the stove on and switch the ventilation fan to high.")

The next time you visit your favorite fast-food joint, just say, "Use the Fry method on a Burger object with the Onion property set to False."

## Object properties

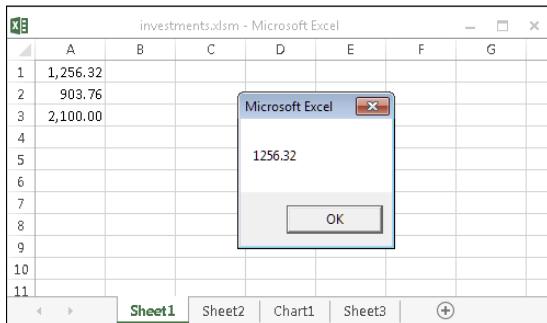
Every object has properties. You can think of *properties* as attributes that describe the object. An object's properties determine how it looks, how it behaves, and even whether it is visible. Using VBA, you can do two things with an object's properties:

- Examine the current setting for a property.
- Change the property's setting.

For example, a single-cell Range object has a property called Value. The Value property stores the value contained in the cell. You can write VBA code to display the Value property, or you may write VBA code to set the Value property to a specific value. The following macro uses the VBA built-in MsgBox function to bring up a box that displays the value in cell A1 on Sheet1 of the active workbook. See Figure 4-1.

```
Sub ShowValue()
    Contents = Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1").Value
    MsgBox Contents
End Sub
```

**Figure 4-1:**  
This message box displays a Range object's Value property.



By the way, MsgBox is a very useful function. You can use it to display results while Excel executes your VBA code. I tell you more about this function in Chapter 15, so be patient (or just go ahead and read all about it).

The code in the preceding example displays the current setting of a cell's Value property. What if you want to change the setting for that property? The following macro changes the value in cell A1 by changing the cell's Value property:

```
Sub ChangeValue()
    Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1").Value = 994.92
End Sub
```

After Excel executes this procedure, cell A1 on Sheet1 of the active workbook contains the value 994.92. If the active workbook does not have a sheet named Sheet1, executing that macro will display an error message. VBA just follows instructions, and it can't work with a sheet that doesn't exist.

Each object has its own set of properties, although some properties are common to many objects. For example, many (but not all) objects have a *Visible* property. Most objects also have a *Name* property.

Some object properties are read-only properties, which means that you can see the property's value, but you can't change it.



As I mention earlier in this chapter, a collection is also an object. This means that a collection also has properties. For example, you can determine how many workbooks are open by accessing the *Count* property of the *Workbooks* collection. The following VBA procedure displays a message box that tells you how many workbooks are open:

```
Sub CountBooks()
    MsgBox Workbooks.Count
End Sub
```

## Object methods

In addition to properties, objects have methods. A *method* is an action you perform with an object. A method can change an object's properties or make the object do something.

This simple example uses the *ClearContents* method on a *Range* object to erase the contents of 12 cells on the active sheet:

```
Sub ClearRange()
    Range("A1:A12").ClearContents
End Sub
```

Some methods take one or more arguments. An *argument* is a value that further specifies the action to perform. You place the arguments for a method after the method, separated by a space. Multiple arguments are separated by a comma.

The following example activates Sheet1 (in the active workbook) and then copies the contents of cell A1 to cell B1 by using the *Range* object's *Copy* method. In this example, the *Copy* method has one argument — the destination range for the copy operation:

```
Sub CopyOne()
    Worksheets("Sheet1").Activate
    Range("A1").Copy Range("B1")
End Sub
```

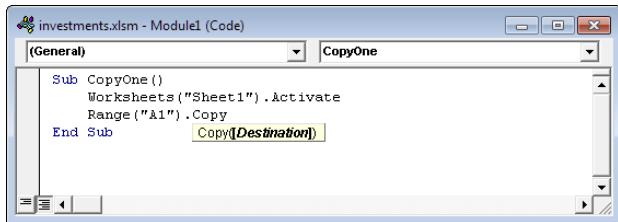
Notice that I omit the worksheet reference when I refer to the Range objects. I can do this safely because I used a statement to activate Sheet1 (using the Activate method).

Another way to specify an argument for a method is to use the official name of the argument followed by a colon and an equal sign. Using named arguments is optional, but doing so can often make your code easier to understand. The second statement in the CopyOne procedure could be written like this:

```
Range("A1").Copy Destination:=Range("B1")
```

In Figure 4-2, notice the little prompt as the statement is being typed. That prompt shows the official name of the argument.

**Figure 4-2:**  
The VBE  
displays a  
list of argu-  
ments while  
you type.



Because a collection is also an object, collections have methods. The following macro uses the Add method for the Workbooks collection:

```
Sub AddAWorkbook()
    Workbooks.Add
End Sub
```

As you may expect, this statement creates a new workbook. In other words, it adds a new workbook to the Workbooks collection. After you execute this macro, a fresh workbook will be the active workbook.

## Object events

In this section, I briefly touch on one more topic that you need to know about: events. Objects respond to various *events* that occur. For example, when you're working in Excel and you activate a different workbook, a Workbook Activate event occurs. You could, for example, have a VBA macro that is designed to execute whenever an Activate event occurs for a particular Workbook object.

Excel supports many events, but not all objects can respond to all events. And some objects don't respond to any events. The only events you can use are those made available by the programmers of Microsoft Excel. The concept of an event becomes clear in Chapter 11 and also in Part IV.

## Finding Out More

Consider yourself initiated into the wonderful world of objects, properties, methods, and events. You find out more about these concepts in the chapters that follow. If you just can't get enough, you may also be interested in three other excellent tools:

- ✓ VBA's Help system
- ✓ The Object Browser
- ✓ Auto List Members

## Using VBA's Help system

The VBA Help system describes every object, property, and method available to you. This is an excellent resource for finding out about VBA, and it is more comprehensive than any book on the market. But it's also very boring to read.



If you're using Excel 2013, you must be connected to the Internet to use the VBA Help system. Previous versions don't have this requirement.

If you're working in a VBA module and want information about a particular object, method, or property, move the cursor to the word you're interested in and press F1. In a few seconds, you see the appropriate help topic displayed in your web browser, complete with cross-references and perhaps even an example or two.

Figure 4-3 shows part of a screen from the VBA Help system — in this case, for a Worksheet object.

- ✓ Click Methods to get a listing of its methods.
- ✓ Click Properties to get a complete list of this object's properties.
- ✓ Click Events to get a listing of the events it responds to.

You can use the Contents pane on the left to explore various topics related to the Excel object model — a perfect way to spend a rainy afternoon.

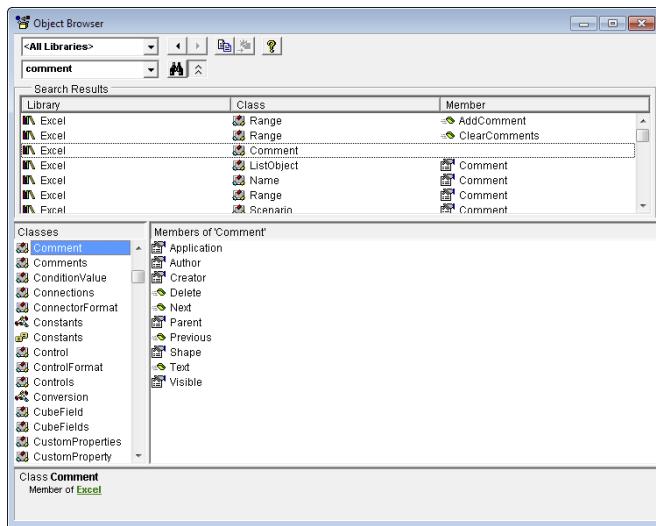
**Figure 4-3:**  
An example  
from VBA's  
Help  
system.



## Using the Object Browser

The VBE includes another tool known as the Object Browser. As the name implies, this tool lets you browse through the objects available to you. To access the Object Browser, press F2 when the VBE is active (or choose View→Object Browser). You see a window like the one shown in Figure 4-4.

**Figure 4-4:**  
Browsing  
for objects  
with the  
Object  
Browser.



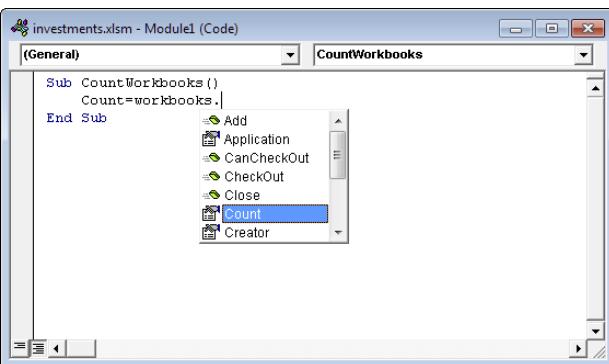
The drop-down list at the top contains a list of all currently available object libraries. Figure 4-4 shows All Libraries. If you want to browse through Excel's objects, select Excel from the drop-down list.

The second drop-down list is where you enter a search string. For example, if you want to look at all Excel objects that deal with comments, type **comment** into the second field and click the Search button. (It has a pair of binoculars on it.) The Search Results window displays everything in the object library that contains the text *comment*. If you see something that looks like it may be of interest, select it and press F1 for more information online.

## Automatically listing properties and methods

In Chapter 3, I noted a handy feature called Auto List Members. This feature provides a list of properties and methods as you type. Figure 4-5 shows an example for the Workbooks collection.

**Figure 4-5:**  
The Auto List Members feature helps you identify properties and methods for an object.



After I typed the dot after *workbooks*, the VBE volunteered to help by displaying a list of properties and methods for that collection. After I typed the *c* the list was narrowed to items that began with that letter. Highlight the item you need, press Tab, and voilà! You've eliminated some typing — and also ensured that the property or method was spelled correctly.



## Chapter 5

# VBA Sub and Function Procedures

### In This Chapter

- ▶ Understanding the difference between Sub procedures and Function procedures
- ▶ Executing Sub procedures (many ways)
- ▶ Executing Function procedures (two ways)

**S**everal times in preceding chapters, I mention *Sub procedures* and allude to the fact that *Function procedures* also play a role in VBA. In this chapter, the secrets are revealed, and I clear up any confusion about these concepts.

## Subs versus Functions

The VBA code that you write in the Visual Basic Editor is known as a *procedure*. The two most common types of procedures are Sub and Function.

- ✓ A Sub procedure is a group of VBA statements that performs an action (or actions) with Excel.
- ✓ A Function procedure is a group of VBA statements that performs a calculation and returns a single value (or an array).

Most of the macros you write in VBA are Sub procedures. You can think of a Sub procedure as being like a command: Execute the Sub procedure and something happens. (Of course, exactly *what* happens depends on the Sub procedure's VBA code.)

A Function is also a procedure, but it's quite different from a Sub. You're already familiar with the concept of a function. Excel includes many worksheet functions that you use every day (well, at least every weekday). Examples include SUM, PMT, and VLOOKUP. You use these worksheet functions in formulas. Each function takes one or more arguments (although a few functions don't use any arguments). The function does some behind-the-scenes calculations using those arguments, and then it returns a single value. The same goes for Function procedures that you develop with VBA.

## Looking at Sub procedures

Every Sub procedure starts with the keyword Sub and ends with an End Sub statement. Here's an example:

```
Sub ShowMessage()
    MsgBox "That's all folks!"
End Sub
```

This example shows a procedure named ShowMessage. A set of parentheses follows the procedure's name. In most cases, these parentheses are empty. However, you may pass arguments to Sub procedures from other procedures. If your Sub uses arguments, list them between the parentheses.



When you record a macro with the Excel macro recorder, the result is always a Sub procedure that takes no arguments.

As you see later in this chapter, Excel provides quite a few ways to execute a VBA Sub procedure.

## Looking at Function procedures

Every Function procedure starts with the keyword Function and ends with an End Function statement. Here's a simple example:

```
Function CubeRoot(number)
    CubeRoot = number ^ (1 / 3)
End Function
```

This function, named CubeRoot, takes one argument (named *number*), which is enclosed in parentheses. Functions can have as many as 255 arguments or none at all. When you execute the function, it returns a single value — the cube root of the argument passed to the function.



VBA allows you to specify what type of information (also known as data type) is returned by a Function procedure. Chapter 7 contains more information on specifying data types.

You can execute a Function procedure in only two ways. You can execute it from another procedure (a Sub or another Function procedure) or use it in a worksheet formula.



No matter how hard you try, you can't use the Excel macro recorder to record a Function procedure. You must manually enter every Function procedure that you create.

## Naming Subs and Functions

Like humans, pets, and hurricanes, every Sub and Function procedure must have a name. Although it is perfectly acceptable to name your dog Hairball Harris, it's usually not a good idea to use such a freewheeling attitude when naming procedures. When naming procedures, you must follow a few rules:

- ✓ You can use letters, numbers, and some punctuation characters, but the first character must be a letter.
- ✓ You can't use any spaces or periods in the name.
- ✓ VBA does not distinguish between uppercase and lowercase letters.
- ✓ You can't embed any of the following characters in a procedure name: #, \$, %, &, @, ^, \*, or !. In other words, your procedure name can't look like comic strip curse words.
- ✓ If you write a Function procedure for use in a formula, avoid using a name that looks like a cell address (for example, A1 or AK47). Actually, Excel allows such function names, but why make things more confusing than they are already?
- ✓ Procedure names can be no longer than 255 characters. (Of course, you would never make a procedure name this long.)

Ideally, a procedure's name describes the routine's purpose. A good practice is to create a name by combining a verb and a noun — for example, ProcessData, PrintReport, Sort\_Array, or CheckFilename.

Some programmers prefer using sentence-like names that provide a complete description of the procedure. Some examples include WriteReportToTextFile and Get\_Print\_Options\_and\_Print\_Report. The use of such lengthy names has pros and cons. On the one hand, such names are descriptive and usually unambiguous. On the other hand, they take longer to type. Everyone develops a naming style, but if your macro isn't just a quick and dirty temporary macro, it's a good idea to be descriptive and to avoid meaningless names such as Dolt, Update, Fix, and Macro1.

## Executing Sub procedures

Although you may not know much about developing Sub procedures at this point, I'm going to jump ahead a bit and discuss how to execute these procedures. This is important because a Sub procedure is worthless unless you know how to execute it.

By the way, *executing* a Sub procedure means the same thing as *running* or *calling* a Sub procedure. You can use whatever terminology you like.

How do I run you? Let me count the ways. You can execute a VBA Sub in many ways — that's one reason you can do so many useful things with Sub procedures. Here's an exhaustive list of the ways (well, at least all the ways I could think of) to execute a Sub procedure:

- ✓ With the Run→Run Sub/UserForm command (in the VBE). Excel executes the Sub procedure in which the cursor is located. This menu command has two alternatives: the F5 key and the Run Sub/UserForm button on the Standard toolbar in the VBE. These methods don't work if the procedure requires one or more arguments.
- ✓ From Excel's Macro dialog box. You open this box by choosing Developer→Coder→Macros or by choosing View→Macros→Macros. Or bypass the Ribbon and just press the Alt+F8 shortcut key. When the Macro dialog box appears, select the Sub procedure you want and click Run. This dialog box lists only the procedures that don't require an argument.
- ✓ Using the Ctrl+key (or Ctrl+Shift+key) shortcut assigned to the Sub procedure (assuming you assigned one).
- ✓ Clicking a button or a shape on a worksheet. The button or shape must have a Sub procedure assigned to it — which is very easy to do.
- ✓ From another Sub procedure that you write.
- ✓ From a button that you've added to the Quick Access toolbar. (See Chapter 19.)
- ✓ From a custom item you've added to the Ribbon. (See Chapter 19.)
- ✓ When an event occurs. As I explain in Chapter 11, these events include opening the workbook, closing the workbook, saving the workbook, making a change to a cell, activating a sheet, and other things.
- ✓ From the Immediate window in the VBE. Just type the name of the Sub procedure and press Enter.

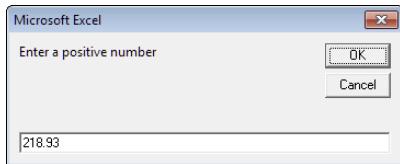
I demonstrate some of these techniques in the following sections. Before I can do that, you need to enter a Sub procedure into a VBA module.

- 1. Start with a new workbook.**
- 2. Press Alt+F11 to activate the VBE.**
- 3. Select the workbook in the Project window.**
- 4. Choose Insert→Module to insert a new module.**
- 5. Enter the following into the module:**

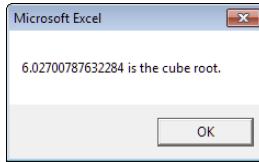
```
Sub ShowCubeRoot()
    Num = InputBox("Enter a positive number")
    MsgBox Num ^ (1/3) & " is the cube root."
End Sub
```

This procedure asks the user for a number and then displays that number's cube root in a message box. Figures 5-1 and 5-2 show what happens when you execute this procedure.

**Figure 5-1:**  
Using the  
built-in VBA  
InputBox  
function to  
get a num-  
ber.



**Figure 5-2:**  
Displaying  
the cube  
root of a  
number via  
the MsgBox  
function.



By the way, ShowCubeRoot is not an example of a *good* macro. It doesn't check for errors, so it fails easily. To see what I mean, try clicking the Cancel button in the input box or entering a negative number.

## *Executing the Sub procedure directly*

The quickest way to execute this procedure is by doing so directly from the VBA module in which you defined it. Follow these steps:

1. Activate the VBE and select the VBA module that contains the procedure.
2. Move the cursor anywhere in the procedure's code.
3. Press F5 (or choose Run→Run Sub/UserForm).
4. Respond to the input box and click OK.

The procedure displays the cube root of the number you entered.



You can't use the Run⇒Run Sub/UserForm command to execute a Sub procedure that uses arguments, because you have no way to pass the arguments to the procedure. If the procedure contains one or more arguments, the only way to execute it is to call it from another procedure — which must supply the argument(s).

## *Executing the procedure from the Macro dialog box*

Most of the time, you execute Sub procedures from Excel, not from the VBE. The following steps describe how to execute a macro by using Excel's Macro dialog box:

1. **Activate Excel.**

Alt+F11 is the express route.

2. **Choose Developer⇒Code⇒Macros (or press Alt+F8).**

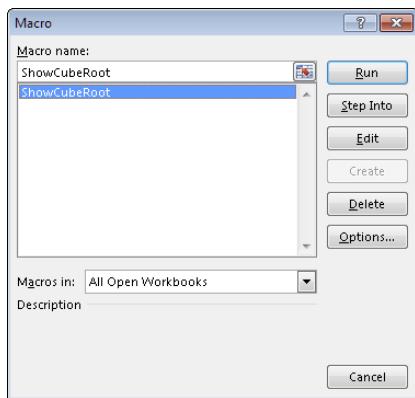
Excel displays the dialog box shown in Figure 5-3.

3. **Select the macro.**

4. **Click Run (or double-click the macro's name in the list box).**



The Macro dialog box doesn't display Sub procedures that use arguments. That's because there is no way for you to specify the arguments.



**Figure 5-3:**  
The Macro dialog box lists all available Sub procedures.

## *Executing a macro by using a shortcut key*

Another way to execute a macro is to press its shortcut key. But before you can use this method, you must assign a shortcut key to the macro.

You have the opportunity to assign a shortcut key in the Record Macro dialog box when you begin recording a macro. If you create the procedure without using the macro recorder, you can assign a shortcut key (or change an existing shortcut key) by using the following procedure:

1. Choose **Developer**→**Code**→**Macros**.
2. Select the **Sub procedure name** from the list box.

In this example, the procedure is named ShowCubeRoot.

3. Click the **Options** button.

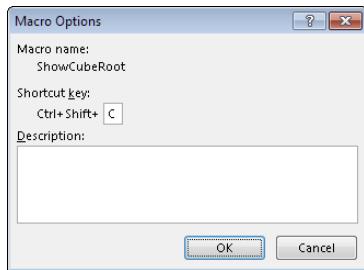
Excel displays the dialog box shown in Figure 5-4.

4. Click the **Shortcut Key** option and enter a letter in the box labeled **Ctrl**.

The letter you enter corresponds to the key combination you want to use for executing the macro. For example, if you enter the lowercase letter *c*, you can then execute the macro by pressing **Ctrl+C**. If you enter an uppercase letter, you need to add the Shift key to the key combination. For example, if you enter *C*, you can execute the macro by pressing **Ctrl+Shift+C**.

5. Click **OK** or **Cancel** to close the **Macro Options** dialog box.

**Figure 5-4:**  
The Macro Options dialog box lets you set options for your macros.



After you've assigned a shortcut key, you can press that key combination to execute the macro. A shortcut key doesn't work if it's assigned to a macro that uses an argument.



The shortcut keys you assign to macros override Excel's built-in shortcut keys. For example, if you assign **Ctrl+C** to a macro, you can't use this shortcut key to copy data in your workbook. This is usually not a big deal because Excel almost always provides other ways to execute commands.

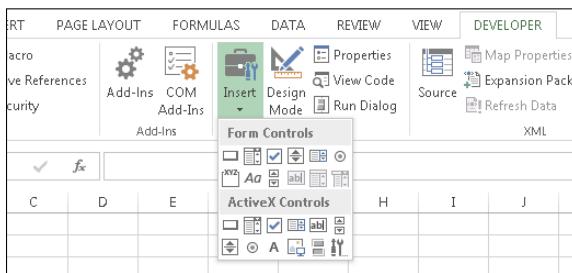
## *Executing the procedure from a button or shape*

Sometimes you might like the idea of assigning the macro to a button (or any other shape) on a worksheet. To assign the macro to a button, follow these steps:

1. **Activate a worksheet.**
2. **Add a button from the Form Controls group.**

To display the Form Controls group, choose Developer ➤ Controls ➤ Insert (see Figure 5-5).

**Figure 5-5:**  
The Ribbon,  
showing  
the controls  
available  
when you  
click Insert  
on the  
Developer  
tab.



3. **Click the Button tool in the Form Controls group.**

It's the first button in the first row of controls.

4. **Drag in the worksheet to create the button.**

After you add the button to your worksheet, Excel reads your mind and displays the Assign Macro dialog box shown in Figure 5-6.

5. **Select the macro you want to assign to the button.**

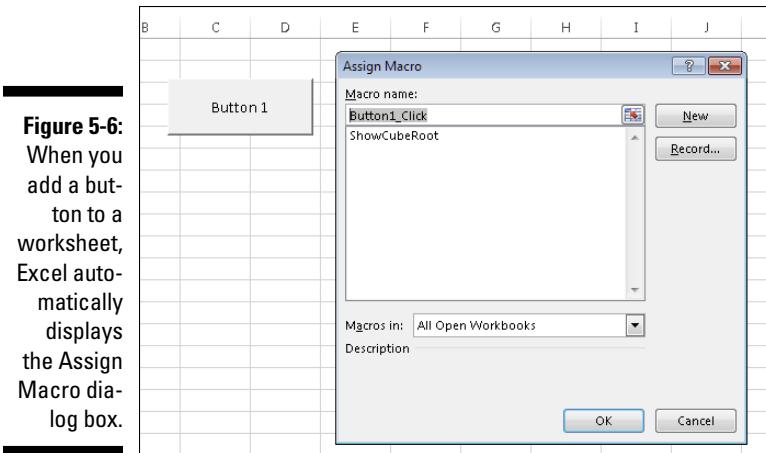
6. **Click OK.**

After you've made the assignment, clicking the button will execute the macro — just like magic.

Note that the Assign Macro dialog box also gives you an opportunity to record a macro (by clicking the Record button). Or click the New button, and Excel will insert an empty Sub procedure with the name you specify. Most of the time, though, you'll assign an *existing* macro to a button.

When you add a button, note that the drop-down box shows two sets of controls: Form Controls and ActiveX Controls. These two groups of controls look similar, but they are actually very different. In practice, the Form Controls are easier to use.





**Figure 5-6:** When you add a button to a worksheet, Excel automatically displays the Assign Macro dialog box.

You can also assign a macro to any other shape or object. For example, assume you'd like to execute a macro when the user clicks a Rectangle object.

1. **Add the Rectangle to the worksheet.**

Insert a rectangle by using the Insert⇒Illustrations⇒Shapes command.

2. **Right-click the rectangle.**

3. **Choose Assign Macro from its shortcut menu.**

4. **Select the macro from the Assign Macro dialog box.**

5. **Click OK.**

After performing these steps, clicking the rectangle will execute the assigned macro.

## *Executing the procedure from another procedure*

You can also execute a procedure from another procedure. Follow these steps if you want to give this a try:

1. **Activate the VBA module that holds the ShowCubeRoot routine.**

2. **Enter this new procedure (either above or below ShowCubeRoot code — it makes no difference):**

```
Sub NewSub()
    Call ShowCubeRoot
End Sub
```

### 3. Execute the NewSub macro.

The easiest way to do this is to move the cursor anywhere within the NewSub code and press F5. Notice that this NewSub procedure simply executes the ShowCubeRoot procedure.

By the way, the keyword Call is optional. The statement can consist of only the Sub procedure's name. I find, however, that using the Call keyword makes it perfectly clear that a procedure is being called.

## *Executing Function procedures*

Functions, unlike Sub procedures, can be executed in only two ways:

- ✓ By calling the function from another Sub procedure or Function procedure
- ✓ By using the function in a worksheet formula

Try this simple function. Enter it into a VBA module:

```
Function CubeRoot(number)
    CubeRoot = number ^ (1/3)
End Function
```

This function is pretty wimpy — it merely calculates the cube root of the number passed to it as its argument. It does, however, provide a starting point for understanding functions. It also illustrates an important concept about functions: how to return the value. (You do remember that a function returns a value, right?)

Notice that the single line of code that makes up this Function procedure performs a calculation. The result of the math (number to the power of  $\frac{1}{3}$ ) is assigned to the variable CubeRoot. Not coincidentally, CubeRoot is also the name of the function. To tell the function what value to return, you assign that value to the name of the function.

## *Calling the function from a Sub procedure*

Because you can't execute a function directly, you must call it from another procedure. Enter the following simple procedure in the same VBA module that contains the CubeRoot function:

```
Sub CallerSub()
    Ans = CubeRoot(125)
    MsgBox Ans
End Sub
```

When you execute the CallerSub procedure (using any of the methods described earlier in this chapter), Excel displays a message box that contains the value of the Ans variable, which is 5.

Here's what's going on: The CubeRoot function is executed, and it receives an argument of 125. The calculation is performed by the function's code (using the value passed as an argument), and the function's returned value is assigned to the Ans variable. The MsgBox function then displays the value of the Ans variable.

Try changing the argument that's passed to the CubeRoot function and run the CallerSub macro again. It works just like it should — assuming that you give the function a valid argument (a positive number).

By the way, the CallerSub procedure could be simplified a bit. The Ans variable is not really required, unless your code will use that variable later on. You could use this single statement to obtain the same result:

```
MsgBox CubeRoot(125)
```

## *Calling a function from a worksheet formula*

Now it's time to call this VBA Function procedure from a worksheet formula. Activate a worksheet in the same workbook that holds the CubeRoot function definition. Then enter the following formula into any cell:

```
=CubeRoot(1728)
```

The cell displays 12, which is indeed the cube root of 1,728.

As you might expect, you can use a cell reference as the argument for the CubeRoot function. For example, if cell A1 contains a value, you can enter **=CubeRoot(A1)**. In this case, the function returns the number obtained by calculating the cube root of the value in A1.

You can use this function any number of times in the worksheet. As with Excel's built-in functions, your custom functions also appear in the Insert Function dialog box. Click the Insert Function toolbar button and choose the User Defined category. As shown in Figure 5-7, the Insert Function dialog box lists your very own function.

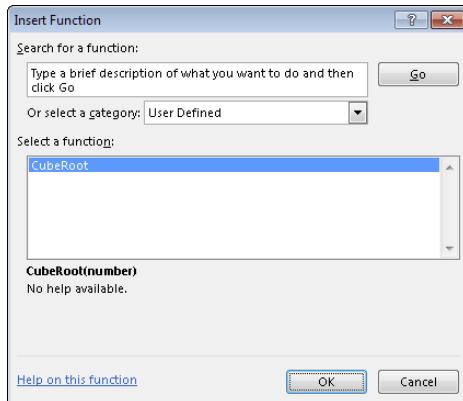


If you want the Insert Function dialog box to display a description of the function, follow these steps:

### 1. Choose Developer→Code→Macros.

Excel displays the Macro dialog box, but CubeRoot doesn't appear in the list. (CubeRoot is a Function procedure, and this list shows only Sub procedures.) Don't fret.

**Figure 5-7:**  
The  
CubeRoot  
function  
appears in  
the User  
Defined  
category of  
the Insert  
Function  
dialog box.



2. Type the word **CubeRoot** in the Macro Name box.
3. Click the Options button.
4. Enter a description of the function in the Description box.
5. Click OK to close the Macro Options dialog box.
6. Close the Macro dialog box by clicking the Cancel button.

This descriptive text now appears in the Insert Function dialog box.

Figure 5-8 shows the CubeRoot function being used in worksheet formulas.

**Figure 5-8:**  
Using the  
CubeRoot  
function in  
formulas.

By now, things may be starting to come together for you. (I wish I'd had this book when *I* was starting out.) You've found out lots about Sub and Function procedures. You start creating macros in Chapter 6, which discusses the ins and outs of developing macros by using the Excel macro recorder. And Chapter 20 reveals even more about Function procedures.

## **Chapter 6**

---

# **Using the Excel Macro Recorder**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Recording your actions by using the Excel built-in macro recorder
  - ▶ Understanding the types of macros you can record
  - ▶ Setting the appropriate options for macro recording
- 

**Y**

You can use two methods to create an Excel macro:

- ✓ Record it by using the Excel macro recorder.
- ✓ Write it manually.

This chapter deals specifically with the ins and outs of using the Excel macro recorder. Recording a macro isn't always the best approach, and some macros simply can't be recorded, no matter how hard you try. You'll see, however, that the Excel macro recorder is very useful. Even if your recorded macro isn't quite what you want, the macro recorder can almost always lead you in the right direction.

## ***Is It Live, or Is It VBA?***

In previous editions of this book, I compared recording a macro to using a tape recorder. However, it occurred to me that tape recorders are rapidly going the way of the dinosaurs. So I modernized this section, and it now compares macro recording to making a digital video. This analogy, like the previous one, goes only so far. Table 6-1 compares macro recording with making a video.

**Table 6-1** Video Recording versus Macro Recording

	<i>Video Recorder</i>	<i>Excel Macro Recorder</i>
What equipment is required?	A video camera.	A computer and a copy of Excel.
What is recorded?	Video and audio.	Actions taken in Excel.
Where is the recording stored?	On a memory card.	In a VBA module.
How do you play it back?	Locate the file and press Play.	Locate the macro in the Macros dialog box and click Run (or use other methods).
Can you edit the recording?	Yes, if you have the proper video-editing software.	Yes, if you know what you're doing.
Can you copy the recording?	Yes, just like copying any other file.	Yes (no additional equipment required).
Is the recording accurate?	Depends on the situation and the equipment quality.	Depends on how you set things up when you record the macro.
What if you make a mistake?	Rerecord the video (or edit it, if possible).	Rerecord the macro (or edit it, if possible).
Can you view the recording?	Yes, by opening the file with appropriate software.	Yes, by opening a module in the VBE.
Can you share it with the world?	Yes, YouTube is a good option.	Yes, post it at your website or blog.
Can you make money with the recording?	Yes, if it's really good (editing usually required).	Possibly, but you need to do a lot of editing first.

## Recording Basics

You take the following basic steps when recording a macro. I describe these steps in more detail later in this chapter.

1. Determine what you want the macro to do.
2. Get things set up properly.

This step determines how well your macro works.

3. Determine whether you want cell references in your macro to be relative or absolute.
4. Click the Record Macro button in the left side of the status bar (or choose Developer→Code→Record Macro).  
Excel displays its Record Macro dialog box.
5. Enter a name, shortcut key, macro location, and description.  
Each of these items — with the exception of the name — is optional.
6. Click OK in the Record Macro dialog box.  
Excel automatically inserts a VBA module. From this point, Excel converts your actions into VBA code. It also displays a square Stop Recording button on your status bar.
7. Perform the actions you want recorded by using the mouse or the keyboard.
8. After you're finished, click the Stop Recording button on the status bar (or choose Developer→Code→Stop Recording).  
Excel stops recording your actions.
9. Test the macro to make sure it works correctly.
10. As an option, you might want to clean up the code by removing extraneous statements.

The macro recorder is best suited for simple, straightforward macros. For example, you might want a macro that applies formatting to a selected range of cells or that sets up row and column headings for a new worksheet.



The macro recorder is for Sub procedures only. You can't use the macro recorder to create Function procedures.

You may also find the macro recorder helpful for developing more complex macros. Often, I record some actions and then copy the recorded code into another, more complex macro. In most cases, you need to edit the recorded code and add some new VBA statements.

The macro recorder *cannot* generate code for any of the following tasks, which I describe later in the book:

- ✓ Performing any type of repetitive looping
- ✓ Performing any type of conditional actions (using an If-Then statement)
- ✓ Assigning values to variables
- ✓ Specifying data types
- ✓ Displaying pop-up messages
- ✓ Displaying custom dialog boxes



The macro recorder's limited capability certainly doesn't diminish its importance. I make the following point throughout the book: *Recording your actions is perhaps the best way to master VBA*. When in doubt, try recording. Although the result may not be exactly what you want, viewing the recorded code may steer you in the right direction.

## Preparing to Record



Before you take the big step and turn on the macro recorder, spend a minute or two thinking about what you're going to do. You record a macro so that Excel can automatically repeat the actions you record, so you'll want those actions to be accurate.

Ultimately, the success of a recorded macro depends on five factors:

- ✓ How the workbook is set up while you record the macro
- ✓ What is selected when you start recording
- ✓ Whether you use absolute or relative recording mode
- ✓ The accuracy of your recorded actions
- ✓ The context in which you play back the recorded macro

The importance of these factors becomes crystal clear when I walk you through an example.

## Relative or Absolute?

When recording your actions, Excel normally records absolute references to cells. (This is the default recording mode.) But quite often, this is the *wrong* recording mode. If you use absolute recording mode, Excel records actual cell references. If you use relative recording, Excel records *relative* references to cells. Keep reading to see the difference.

### Recording in absolute mode

Follow these steps to record a simple macro in absolute mode. This macro simply enters three month names into a worksheet:

1. Make sure that the Developer→Code→Use Relative References button is *not* highlighted and then choose Developer→Code→Record Macro.
2. Type Absolute as the name for this macro.

- 3. Click OK to begin recording.**
- 4. Activate cell B1 and type Jan in that cell.**
- 5. Move to cell C1 and type Feb.**
- 6. Move to cell D1 and type Mar.**
- 7. Click cell B1 to activate it again.**
- 8. Stop the macro recorder.**
- 9. Press Alt+F11 to activate the VBE.**
- 10. Examine the Module1 module.**

Excel generates the following code:

```
Sub Absolute()
'
' Absolute Macro
'
    Range("B1").Select
    ActiveCell.FormulaR1C1 = "Jan"
    Range("C1").Select
    ActiveCell.FormulaR1C1 = "Feb"
    Range("D1").Select
    ActiveCell.FormulaR1C1 = "Mar"
    Range("B1").Select
End Sub
```

When executed, this macro selects cell B1 and inserts the three month names in the range B1:D1. Then the macro reactivates cell B1.

These same actions occur regardless of which cell is active when you execute the macro. A macro recorded by using absolute references always produces the same results when it is executed. In this case, the macro always enters the names of the first three months into the range B1:D1.

## Recording in relative mode

In some cases, you want your recorded macro to work with cell locations in a *relative* manner. You may want the macro to start entering the month names in the active cell. In such a case, you need to use relative recording.

You can change the manner in which Excel records your actions by clicking the Use Relative References button in the Code group in the Developer tab. This button is a toggle button. When the button appears highlighted in a different color, the recording mode is relative. When the button appears normally, you are recording in absolute mode.

You can change the recording method at any time, even in the middle of recording.



To see how relative mode recording works, erase the cells in B1:D1 and then perform the following steps:

- 1. Activate cell B1.**
  - 2. Choose Developer→Code→Record Macro.**
  - 3. Name this macro** Relative.
  - 4. Click OK to begin recording.**
  - 5. Click the Use Relative References button to change the recording mode to relative.**
- When you click this button, it changes to a different color than the rest of the ribbon.
- 6. Type Jan in cell B1.**
  - 7. Move to cell C1 and type Feb.**
  - 8. Move to cell D1 and type Mar.**
  - 9. Select cell B1.**
  - 10. Stop the macro recorder.**

Notice that this procedure differs slightly from the previous example. In this example, you activate the beginning cell *before* you start recording. This is an important step when you record macros that use the active cell as a base.

This macro always starts entering text in the active cell. Try it. Move the cell pointer to any cell and then execute the Relative macro. The month names are always entered beginning at the active cell.

With the recording mode set to relative, the code that Excel generates is quite different from the code generated in absolute mode:

```
Sub Relative()
'
' Relative Macro
'
    ActiveCell.FormulaR1C1 = "Jan"
    ActiveCell.Offset(0, 1).Range("A1").Select
    ActiveCell.FormulaR1C1 = "Feb"
    ActiveCell.Offset(0, 1).Range("A1").Select
    ActiveCell.FormulaR1C1 = "Mar"
    ActiveCell.Offset(0, -2).Range("A1").Select
End Sub
```

To test this macro, activate any cell except B1. The month names are entered in three cells, beginning with the cell that you activated.



Notice that the code generated by the macro recorder refers to cell A1. This may seem strange because you never used cell A1 during the recording of the macro. This is simply a byproduct of the way the macro recorder works. (I discuss this in more detail in Chapter 8 where I talk about the Offset method.)

## What Gets Recorded?

When you turn on the macro recorder, Excel converts your mouse and keyboard actions into valid VBA code. I could probably write several pages describing how Excel does this, but the best way to understand the process is by watching the macro recorder in action. (Figure 6-1 shows how my screen looked while I had the macro recorder turned on.)

Follow these steps:

- 1. Start with a blank workbook.**
- 2. Make sure that the Excel window is not maximized.**
- 3. Press Alt+F11 to activate the VBE (and make sure that *this* program window is not maximized).**
- 4. Resize and arrange the Excel window and the VBE window so that both are visible.**

For best results, position the Excel window above the VBE window and minimize any other applications that are running.

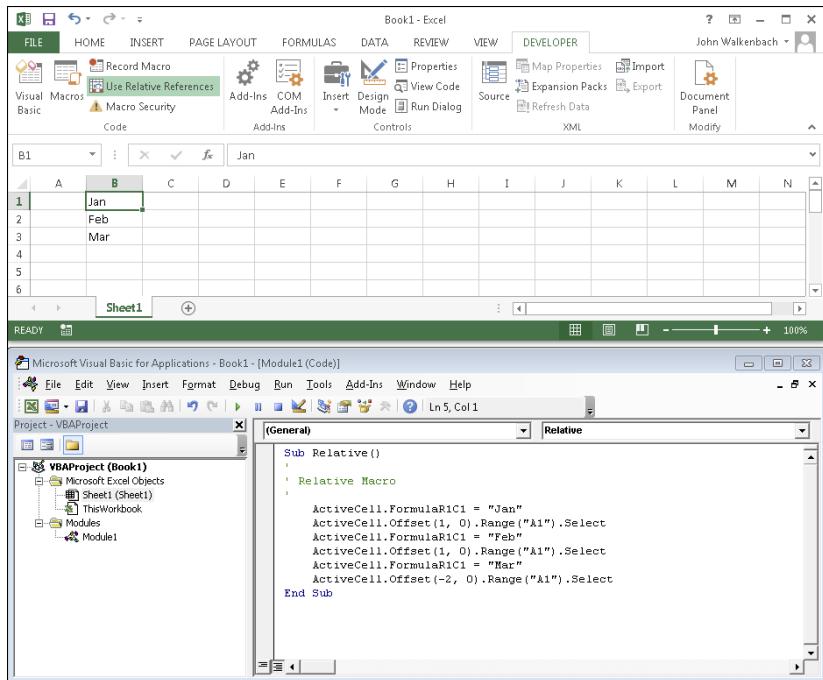
- 5. Activate Excel and choose Developer→Code→Record Macro.**
- 6. Click OK to start the macro recorder.**

Excel inserts a new module (named Module1) and starts recording in that module.

- 7. Activate the VBE program window.**
- 8. In the Project Explorer window, double-click Module1 to display that module in the Code window.**

Jump back to Excel and play around for a while. Choose various Excel commands and watch the code being generated in the VBE window. Select cells, enter data, format cells, use the Ribbon commands, create a chart, change column widths, manipulate graphics objects, and so on — go crazy! I guarantee that you'll be enlightened as you watch Excel spit out the VBA code before your very eyes.

**Figure 6-1:**  
A convenient window arrangement for watching the macro recorder do its thing.

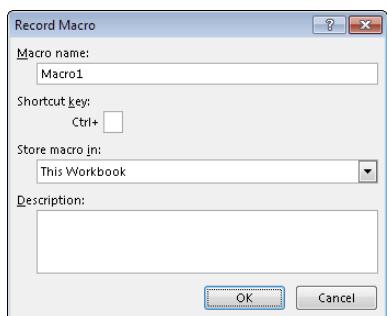


If you happen to have a system with dual monitors, you might find it helpful to keep Excel on one monitor and the VBE window on the other one. That's what I normally do.

## Recording Options

When recording your actions to create VBA code, you have several options. Recall that the Developer→Code→Record Macro command displays the Record Macro dialog box before recording begins, as shown in Figure 6-2.

**Figure 6-2:**  
The Record Macro dialog box provides several options.



The Record Macro dialog box, shown in Figure 6-2, lets you specify a few aspects of your macro. In the following sections, I describe these options.

## *Macro name*

You can enter a name for the Sub procedure that you are recording. By default, Excel uses the names Macro1, Macro2, and so on for each macro you record. I usually just accept the default name. If the macro works correctly and I want to save it, I give it a more descriptive name later by editing the recorded code in the VBE. You, however, may prefer to name the macro upfront — the choice is yours.

## *Shortcut key*

The Shortcut key option lets you execute the macro by pressing a shortcut key combination. For example, if you enter **w** (lowercase), you can execute the macro by pressing Ctrl+W. If you enter **W** (uppercase), the macro comes alive when you press Ctrl+Shift+W.



You can add or change a shortcut key at any time, so there's no real reason to set this option when recording a macro. For instructions on assigning a shortcut key to an existing macro, see Chapter 5.

## *Store Macro In*

The Store Macro In option tells Excel where to store the macro that it is recording. By default, Excel puts the recorded macro in a module in the active workbook. If you prefer, you can record it in a new workbook (Excel opens a blank workbook) or in your Personal Macro Workbook.

Your Personal Macro Workbook is a hidden workbook that opens automatically when Excel starts. This is a good place to store macros that you'll use with multiple workbooks. The Personal Macro Workbook is named PERSONAL.XLSB. This file doesn't exist until you specify it as the location for a recorded macro. If you've made any changes to this file, Excel prompts you to save it when you exit.

## *Description*

If you'd like to add some descriptive comments to your macro, use the Description box. You can put anything you like here or nothing at all. As far as I'm concerned, the Description option is a waste of time because it's just as easy to add comments to the recorded macro in the VBE.

## Is This Thing Efficient?

You might think that recording a macro would generate some award-winning VBA code — better than you could ever write manually. Think again. In many cases, the recorder spits out lots of extraneous garbage, and it often generates code that's less than efficient.

Don't get me wrong. I'm a staunch supporter of the macro recorder. It's a great tool for helping you master VBA. Other than simple macros, however, I've never used a recorded macro without fixing it up a bit (usually *quite* a bit).

To demonstrate just how inefficient the macro recorder's code can be, try this:

- 1. Turn on the macro recorder.**
- 2. Choose the Page Layout⇒Page Setup⇒Orientation⇒Landscape command.**
- 3. Turn off the macro recorder.**

To take a look at the macro, activate the Module1 sheet. This single — and very simple — command generates the following code:

```
Sub Macro1()
    Application.PrintCommunication = False
    With ActiveSheet.PageSetup
        .PrintTitleRows = ""
        .PrintTitleColumns = ""
    End With
    Application.PrintCommunication = True
    ActiveSheet.PageSetup.PrintArea = ""
    Application.PrintCommunication = False
    With ActiveSheet.PageSetup
        .LeftHeader = ""
        .CenterHeader = ""
        .RightHeader = ""
        .LeftFooter = ""
        .CenterFooter = ""
        .RightFooter = ""
        .LeftMargin = Application.InchesToPoints(0.7)
        .RightMargin = Application.InchesToPoints(0.7)
        .TopMargin = Application.InchesToPoints(0.75)
        .BottomMargin = Application.InchesToPoints(0.75)
        .HeaderMargin = Application.InchesToPoints(0.3)
        .FooterMargin = Application.InchesToPoints(0.3)
        .PrintHeadings = False
    End With
End Sub
```

```
.PrintGridlines = False
.PrintComments = xlPrintNoComments
.PrintQuality = 600
.CenterHorizontally = False
.CenterVertically = False
.Orientation = xlLandscape
.Draft = False
.PaperSize = xlPaperLetter
.FirstPageNumber = xlAutomatic
.Order = xlDownThenOver
.BlackAndWhite = False
.Zoom = 100
.PrintErrors = xlPrintErrorsDisplayed
.OddAndEvenPagesHeaderFooter = False
.DifferentFirstPageHeaderFooter = False
.ScaleWithDocHeaderFooter = True
.AlignMarginsHeaderFooter = True
.EvenPage.LeftHeader.Text = ""
.EvenPage.CenterHeader.Text = ""
.EvenPage.RightHeader.Text = ""
.EvenPage.LeftFooter.Text = ""
.EvenPage.CenterFooter.Text = ""
.EvenPage.RightFooter.Text = ""
.FirstPage.LeftHeader.Text = ""
.FirstPage.CenterHeader.Text = ""
.FirstPage.RightHeader.Text = ""
.FirstPage.LeftFooter.Text = ""
.FirstPage.CenterFooter.Text = ""
.FirstPage.RightFooter.Text = ""
End With
Application.PrintCommunication = True
End Sub
```

You may be surprised by the amount of code generated by this single command. (I was the first time I tried something like this.) Although you changed only one print setting, Excel generated code that sets many other print-related properties.

This is a good example of macro-recording overkill. If you want a macro that just switches the page setup to landscape mode, you can simplify this macro considerably by deleting the extraneous code. This makes the macro a bit faster and a lot easier to read. Here's how the macro looks after I deleted the irrelevant lines:

```
Sub Macro1()
    With ActiveSheet.PageSetup
        .Orientation = xlLandscape
    End With
End Sub
```

I deleted all the code except the line that sets the Orientation property. Actually, you can simplify this macro even more because you don't really need the With-End With construct (I explain more about this construct in Chapter 14):

```
Sub Macro1()
    ActiveSheet.PageSetup.Orientation = xlLandscape
End Sub
```

In this case, the macro changes the Orientation property of the PageSetup object on the active sheet. All other properties are unchanged. By the way, xlLandscape is a built-in constant that makes your code easier to read. This constant has a value of 2, so the following statement works exactly the same (but isn't as easy to read):

```
ActiveSheet.PageSetup.Orientation = 2
```

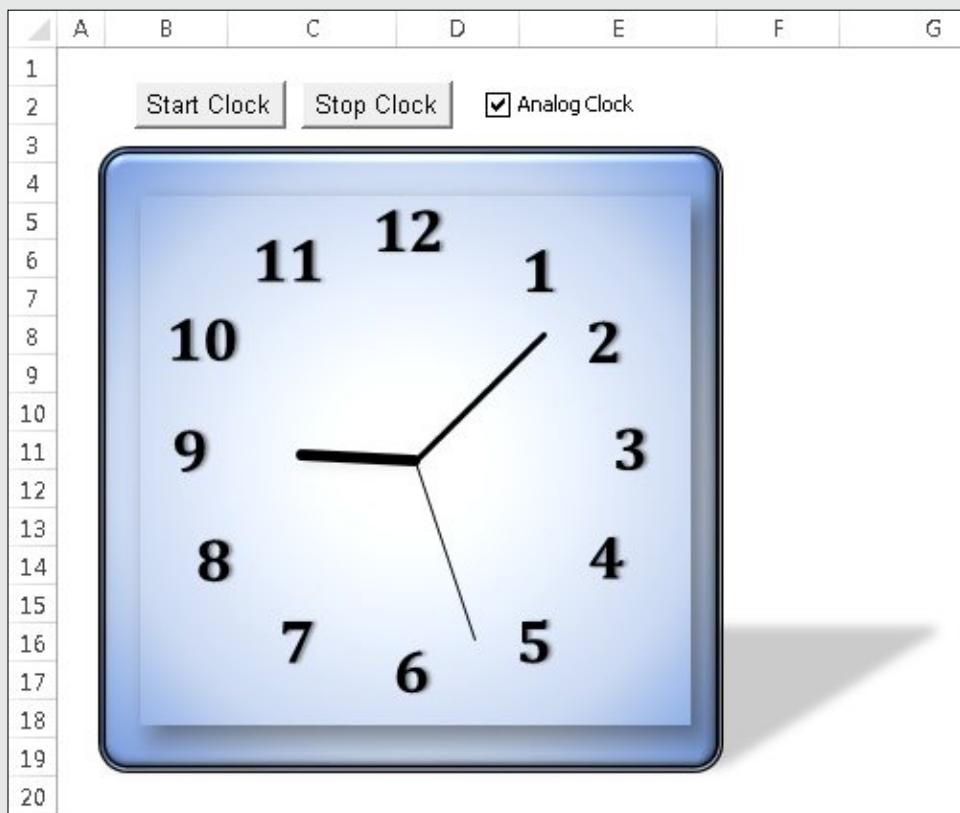
Stay tuned. I discuss built-in constants in Chapter 7.

Rather than record this macro, you can enter it directly into a VBA module. To do so, you have to know which objects, properties, and methods to use. Although the recorded macro isn't all that great, by recording it, you realize that the PageSetup object is contained in a Worksheet object, and the PageSetup object has an Orientation property. Armed with this knowledge and a quick trip to the Help system (and probably some experimentation), you can write the macro manually.

This chapter nearly sums it up when it comes to using the macro recorder. The only thing missing is experience. Eventually, you discover which recorded statements you can safely delete. Better yet, you discover how to modify a recorded macro to make it more useful.

# Part III

# Programming Concepts



Check out the video instruction for applying Excel functions at [www.dummies.com/extras/excelvbaprogramming](http://www.dummies.com/extras/excelvbaprogramming).

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ Discover the essential elements of Excel programming: variables, constants, data types, operators, arrays, and so on
- ✓ Get acquainted with Range objects — you'll be glad you did
- ✓ Find out why VBA functions (and also Excel worksheet functions) are important
- ✓ Discover the essence of programming: decision-making and looping
- ✓ See how to run code automatically when certain things occur
- ✓ Find out about the different types of errors and why error handling is important
- ✓ Know what to do when good code does bad things: Get initiated into the bug extermination club
- ✓ See lots and lots of examples — some are mainly informative, and many are actually useful
- ✓ Check out the video instruction for applying Excel functions at [www.dummies.com/extras/excelvba-programming](http://www.dummies.com/extras/excelvba-programming).

## Chapter 7

# Essential VBA Language Elements

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Knowing when, why, and how to use comments in your code
- ▶ Using variables and constants
- ▶ Telling VBA what type of data you’re using
- ▶ Knowing why you may need to use labels in your procedures

**B**ecause VBA is a real, live programming language, it uses many elements common to all programming languages. In this chapter, I introduce you to several of these elements: comments, variables, constants, data types, arrays, and a few other goodies. If you’ve programmed with other languages, some of this material will be familiar. If you’re a programming newbie, it’s time to roll up your sleeves and get busy.

## *Using Comments in Your VBA Code*

A *comment* is the simplest type of VBA statement. Because VBA ignores these statements, they can consist of anything you want. You can insert a comment to remind yourself why you did something or to clarify some particularly elegant code you wrote.



Use comments liberally and extensively to describe what the code does (which isn’t always obvious by reading the code itself). Often, code that makes perfect sense today mystifies you tomorrow. Been there. Done that.

You begin a comment with an apostrophe ('). VBA ignores any text that follows an apostrophe in a line of code. You can use a complete line for your comment or insert your comment at the end of a line of code. The following example shows a VBA procedure with four comments:

```

Sub FormatCells()
    ' Exit if a range is not selected
    If TypeName(Selection) <> "Range" Then
        MsgBox "Select a range."
        Exit Sub
    End If
    ' Format the cells
    With Selection
        .HorizontalAlignment = xlRight
        .WrapText = False ' no wrap
        .MergeCells = False ' no merged cells
    End With
End Sub

```



The “apostrophe indicates a comment” rule has one exception: VBA doesn’t interpret an apostrophe inside a set of quotation marks as a comment indicator. For example, the following statement doesn’t contain a comment, even though it has an apostrophe:

```
Msg = "Can't continue"
```

When you’re writing code, you may want to test a procedure by *excluding* a particular statement or group of statements. You *could* delete the statements and then retype them later. But that’s a waste of time. A better solution is to simply turn those statements into comments by inserting apostrophes. VBA ignores statements beginning with apostrophes when executing a routine. To reactivate those “commented” statements, just remove the apostrophes.



Here’s a quick way to convert a block of statements to comments. In the VBE, choose View→Toolbars→Edit to display the Edit toolbar. To convert a block of statements to comments, select the statements and click the Comment Block button. To remove the apostrophes, select the statements and click the Uncomment Block button.



Everyone develops his or her own style of commenting. To be useful, however, comments should convey information that’s not immediately obvious from reading the code.

The following tips can help you make effective use of comments:

- ✓ Identify yourself as the author. This can be useful when you get promoted and the person who takes over your job has some questions.
- ✓ Briefly describe the purpose of each Sub or Function procedure you write.
- ✓ Use comments to keep track of changes you make to a procedure.

- ✓ Use a comment to indicate that you're using a function or a construct in an unusual or nonstandard manner.
- ✓ Use comments to describe the variables you use, especially if you don't use meaningful variable names.
- ✓ Use a comment to describe any workarounds you develop to overcome bugs in Excel.
- ✓ Write comments as you develop code, instead of saving the task for a final step.
- ✓ Depending on your work environment, consider adding a joke or two as a comment. The person who takes over your job when you get promoted might appreciate the humor.

## Using Variables, Constants, and Data Types

VBA's main purpose is to manipulate data. VBA stores the data in your computer's memory, and the data may or may not end up on disk. Some data, such as worksheet ranges, resides in objects. Other data is stored in variables that you create.

### Understanding variables

A *variable* is simply a named storage location in your computer's memory that's used by a program. You have lots of flexibility in naming your variables, so make the variable names as descriptive as possible. You assign a value to a variable by using the equal sign operator. (More about this later in the "Using Assignment Statements" section.)

The variable names in these examples appear on both the left and right sides of the equal signs. Note that the last example uses two variables.

```
x = 1
InterestRate = 0.075
LoanPayoffAmount = 243089
DataEntered = False
x = x + 1
UserName = "Bob Johnson"
Date_Started = #3/14/2013#
MyNum = YourNum * 1.25
```

VBA enforces a few rules regarding variable names:

- ✓ You can use letters, numbers, and some punctuation characters, but the first character must be a letter.
- ✓ VBA does not distinguish between uppercase and lowercase letters.
- ✓ You cannot use any spaces, periods, or mathematical operators in a variable name.
- ✓ You cannot use the following characters in a variable name: #, \$, %, &, or !.
- ✓ Variable names can be no longer than 255 characters. But nobody even gets close to that limit.

To make variable names more readable, programmers often use mixed case (for example, InterestRate) or the underscore character (interest\_rate).

VBA has many reserved words that you can't use for variable names or procedure names. These include words such as Sub, Dim, With, End, Next, and For. If you attempt to use one of these words as a variable, you may get a compile error (which means your code won't run). So, if an assignment statement produces an error message, double-check and make sure that the variable name isn't a reserved word.

VBA does allow you to create variables with names that match names in Excel's object model, such as Workbook and Range. But, obviously, using names like that just increases the possibility of getting confused. Here's a perfectly valid (but very confusing) macro that declares Range as a variable name and works with a cell named Range, on a worksheet named Range.

```
Sub RangeConfusion()
    Dim Range As Double
    Range = Sheets("Range") .Range("Range")
    MsgBox Range
End Sub
```

So resist the urge to use a variable named Workbook or Range and use something like MyWorkbook or MyRange instead.

## What are VBA's data types?

When I talk about *data type*, I'm referring to the manner in which a program stores data in memory — for example, as integers, real numbers, or strings. Although VBA can take care of these details automatically, it does so at a

cost. (There's no free lunch.) Letting VBA handle your data typing results in slower execution and inefficient memory use. For small applications, this usually doesn't present much of a problem. But for large or complex applications, which may be slow or need to conserve every last byte of memory, you need to be on familiar terms with data types.

VBA automatically handles all the data details, which makes life easier for programmers. Not all programming languages provide this luxury. For example, some languages are *strictly typed*, which means the programmer must explicitly define the data type for every variable used.

VBA does not require that you declare the variables that you use, but it's definitely a good practice. You'll see why later in this chapter.

VBA has a variety of built-in data types. Table 7-1 lists the most common types of data that VBA can handle.

**Table 7-1**      **VBA's Built-In Data Types**

<b>Data Type</b>	<b>Bytes Used</b>	<b>Range of Values</b>
Byte	1	0 to 255
Boolean	2	True or False
Integer	2	-32,768 to 32,767
Long	4	-2,147,483,648 to 2,147,483,647
Single	4	-3.40 to -1.40E-45 for negative values; 1.40E-45 to 3.40 for positive values
Double	8	-1.79E308 to -4.94E-324 for negative values; 4.94E-324 to 1.79 for positive values
Currency	8	-922,337,203,685,477 to 922,337,203,685,477
Date	8	1/1/0100 to 12/31/9999
Object	4	Any object reference
String	1 per character	Varies
Variant	Varies	Varies

In general, choose the data type that uses the smallest number of bytes but can still handle all the data you want to store in the variable.



An exception to the “smallest number of bytes” rule is Long. Most VBA programmers use Long instead of Integer because doing so offers a slight performance increase. But for small procedures, you would never notice any difference between Integer and Long data types.

## *Declaring and scoping variables*

If you read the previous sections, you now know a bit about variables and data types. In this section, you discover how to declare a variable as a certain data type.

If you don’t declare the data type for a variable you use in a VBA routine, VBA uses the default data type: Variant. Data stored as a variant acts like a chameleon; it changes type depending on what you do with it. For example, if a variable is a Variant data type and contains a text string that looks like a number (such as “143”), you can use this variable for string manipulations as well as numeric calculations. VBA automatically handles the conversion. Letting VBA handle data types may seem like an easy way out — but remember that you sacrifice speed and memory.

Before you use variables in a procedure, it’s an excellent practice to *declare* your variables — that is, tell VBA each variable’s data type. Declaring your variables makes your macro run faster and use memory more efficiently. The default data type, Variant, causes VBA to repeatedly perform time-consuming checks and reserve more memory than necessary. If VBA knows a variable’s data type, it doesn’t have to investigate and can reserve just enough memory to store the data.

To force yourself to declare all the variables you use, include these two words as the first statement in your VBA module:

Option Explicit

When this statement is present, you won’t be able to run your code if it contains any undeclared variables.



You need to use Option Explicit only once: at the beginning of your module, prior to the declaration of any procedures in the module. Keep in mind that the Option Explicit statement applies only to the module in which it resides. If you have more than one VBA module in a project, you need an Option Explicit statement for each module.

Suppose that you use an undeclared variable (that is, a Variant) named CurrentRate. At some point in your routine, you insert the following statement:

```
CurentRate = .075
```

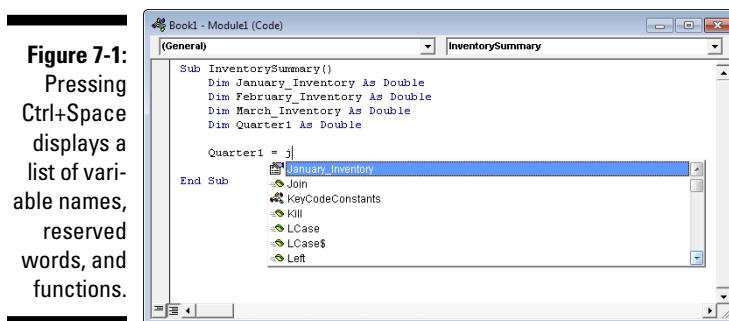
The variable name is misspelled (missing an r) and can be very difficult to spot. If you don't notice it, Excel will interpret it as a *different* variable, and it will probably cause your routine to give incorrect results. If you use Option Explicit at the beginning of your module (forcing you to declare the CurrentRate variable), Excel generates an error if it encounters a misspelled variation of that variable.



To ensure that the Option Explicit statement is inserted automatically whenever you insert a new VBA module, turn on the Require Variable Definition option. You find it in the Editor tab of the Options dialog box (in the VBE, choose Tools⇒Options). I highly recommend doing so.



Declaring your variables also lets you take advantage of a shortcut that can save some typing. Just type the first two or three characters of the variable name and then press Ctrl+Space. The VBE will either complete the entry for you or — if the choice is ambiguous — show you a list of matching words to select from. In fact, this slick trick works with reserved words and functions, too. Figure 7-1 shows an example of how this works.



**Figure 7-1:**  
Pressing  
Ctrl+Space  
displays a  
list of vari-  
able names,  
reserved  
words, and  
functions.

You now know the advantages of declaring variables, but *how* do you do it? The most common way is to use a Dim statement. Here are some examples of variables being declared:

```
Dim YourName As String
Dim January_Inventory As Double
Dim AmountDue As Double
Dim RowNumber As Long
Dim X
```

The first four variables are declared as a specific data type. The last variable, X, is not declared as a specific data type, so it's treated as a Variant (it can be anything).

Besides Dim, VBA has three other keywords that are used to declare variables:

- ✓ Static
- ✓ Public
- ✓ Private

I explain more about the Dim, Static, Public, and Private keywords later on, but first I must cover two other topics that are relevant here: a variable's scope and a variable's life.

Recall that a workbook can have any number of VBA modules. And a VBA module can have any number of Sub and Function procedures. A variable's *scope* determines which modules and procedures can use the variable. Table 7-2 has the details.

**Table 7-2**

**Variable's Scope**

<b>Scope</b>	<b>How the Variable Is Declared</b>
Procedure only	By using a Dim or a Static statement in the procedure that uses the variable
Module only	By using a Dim or a Private statement before the first Sub or Function statement in the module
All procedures in all modules	By using a Public statement before the first Sub or Function statement in a module

Confused? Keep turning the pages, and you'll see some examples that will make this stuff crystal clear.

### ***Procedure-only variables***

The lowest level of scope for a variable is at the procedure level. (A *procedure* is either a Sub or a Function procedure.) Variables declared with this scope can be used only in the procedure in which they are declared. When the procedure ends, the variable no longer exists (it goes to the great big bucket in the sky), and Excel frees up its memory. If you execute the procedure again, the variable comes back to life, but its previous value is lost.

## Humorous declarations

Topics such as variables, data types, declarations, and scope can be pretty boring, so I came up with some semi-humorous declaration statements for your amusement. These are all valid declarations:

```
Dim King As String, Kong
As Long
Dim Mouthful as Byte
Dim Julian As Boolean
Dim Unmarried As Single
Dim Dewey As Decimal
```

```
Dim Trouble As Double
Dim WindingRoad As Long
Dim Blind As Date
Public Nuisance
Private FirstClass
Static Cling, Electricity
Dim BaseballCards As New
Collection
Dim DentalFloss As String
```

You can probably come up with some others.

The most common way to declare a procedure-only variable is with a Dim statement. Dim doesn't refer to the mental capacity of the VBA designers. Rather, it's an old programming term that's short for *dimension*, which simply means you are setting aside memory for a particular variable. You usually place Dim statements immediately after the Sub or Function statement and before the procedure's code.

The following example shows some procedure-only variables declared by using Dim statements:

```
Sub MySub()
    Dim x As Integer
    Dim First As Long
    Dim InterestRate As Single
    Dim TodaysDate As Date
    Dim UserName As String
    Dim MyValue
    ' ... [The procedure's code goes here] ...
End Sub
```

Notice that the last Dim statement in the preceding example doesn't declare a data type for the MyValue variable; it declares only the variable itself. The effect is that the variable MyValue is a Variant.

By the way, you can also declare several variables with a single Dim statement, as in the following example:

```
Dim x As Integer, y As Integer, z As Integer
Dim First As Long, Last As Double
```



Unlike some languages, VBA doesn't allow you to declare a group of variables to be a particular data type by separating the variables with commas. For example, though valid, the following statement does *not* declare all the variables as Integers:

```
Dim i, j, k As Integer
```

In this example, only k is declared to be an Integer; the other variables default to the Variant data type.

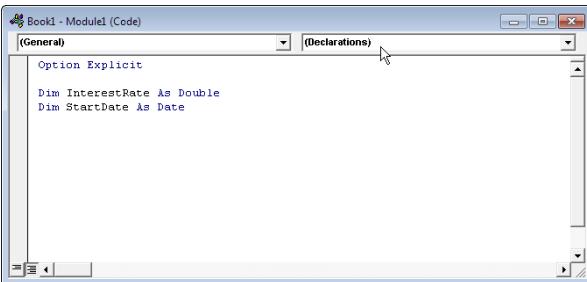
If you declare a variable with procedure-only scope, other procedures in the same module can use the same variable name, but each instance of the variable is unique to its own procedure. In general, variables declared at the procedure level are the most efficient because VBA frees up the memory they use when the procedure ends.

### ***Module-only variables***

Sometimes you want a variable to be available to all procedures in a module. If so, just declare the variable (using Dim or Private) *before* the module's first Sub or Function statement — outside any procedures. This is done in the Declarations section, at the beginning of your module. (This is also where the Option Explicit statement is located.)

Figure 7-2 shows how you know when you're working with the Declarations section. Use the drop-down list on the right and go directly to the Declarations section. Do not pass Go and do not collect \$200.

**Figure 7-2:**  
Each VBA module has a Declarations section, which appears before any Sub or Function procedures.



As an example, suppose that you want to declare the CurrentValue variable so that it's available to all the procedures in your module. All you need to do is use the Dim statement in the Declarations section:

```
Dim CurrentValue As Double
```

With this declaration in place — and in the proper place — the CurrentValue variable can be used from any other procedure within the module, and it retains its value from one procedure to another.

### **Public variables**

If you need to make a variable available to all the procedures in all your VBA modules in a workbook, declare the variable at the module level (in the Declarations section) by using the Public keyword. Here's an example:

```
Public CurrentRate As Long
```

The Public keyword makes the CurrentRate variable available to any procedure in the workbook — even those in other VBA modules. You must insert this statement before the first Sub or Function statement in a module.



If you would like a variable to be available to modules in other workbooks, you must declare the variable as Public and establish a reference to the workbook that contains the variable declaration. Set up a reference by using the Tools⇒References command in VBE. In practice, sharing a variable across workbooks is hardly ever done. In fact, I've never done it once in my entire VBA programming career. But I guess it's nice to know that it can be done, in case it ever comes up as a *Jeopardy!* question.

### **Static variables**

Normally, when a procedure ends, all the procedure's variables are reset. *Static variables* are a special case because they retain their value even when the procedure ends. You declare a static variable at the procedure level. A static variable may be useful if you need to track the number of times you execute a procedure. You can declare a static variable and increment it each time you run the procedure.

As shown in the following example, you declare static variables by using the Static keyword:

```
Sub MySub()
    Static Counter As Integer
    Dim Msg As String
    Counter = Counter + 1
    Msg = "Number of executions: " & Counter
    MsgBox Msg
End Sub
```

The code keeps track of the number of times the procedure was executed and displays the number in a message box. The value of the Counter variable is not reset when the procedure ends, but it is reset when you close and reopen the workbook.



Even though the value of a variable declared as Static is retained after a variable ends, that variable is unavailable to other procedures. In the preceding MySub procedure example, the Counter variable and its value are available only within the MySub procedure. In other words, it's a procedure-level variable.

### ***Life of variables***

Nothing lives forever, including variables. The scope of a variable not only determines where that variable may be used, it also affects under which circumstances the variable is removed from memory.

You can purge all variables from memory by using three methods:

- ✓ Click the Reset toolbar button (the little blue square button on the Standard toolbar in the VBE).
- ✓ Click “End” when a runtime error message dialog box shows up.
- ✓ Include an End statement anywhere in your code. This is not the same as an End Sub or End Function statement.

Otherwise, only procedure-level variables will be removed from memory when the macro code has completed running. Static variables, module level variables, and global (public) variables all retain their values in between runs of your code.



If you use module-level or global-level variables, make sure they have the value you expect them to have. You never know whether one of the situations I just mentioned may have caused your variables to lose their content!

### ***Working with constants***

A variable’s value may (and usually does) change while your procedure is executing. That’s why they call it a *variable*. Sometimes you need to refer to a value or string that never changes. In such a case, you need a *constant* — a named element whose value doesn’t change.

As shown in the following examples, you declare constants by using the Const statement. The declaration statement also gives the constant its value:

```
Const NumQuarters As Integer = 4
Const Rate = .0725, Period = 12
Const ModName As String = "Budget Macros"
Public Const AppName As String = "Budget Application"
```



Using constants in place of hard-coded values or strings is an excellent programming practice. For example, if your procedure needs to refer to a specific value (such as an interest rate) several times, it's better to declare the value as a constant and refer to its name rather than the value. This makes your code more readable and easier to change. And if the interest rate changes, you have to change only one statement rather than several.

Like variables, constants have a scope. Keep these points in mind:

- ✓ To make a constant available within only a single procedure, declare the constant after the procedure's Sub or Function statement.
- ✓ To make a constant available to all procedures in a module, declare the constant in the Declarations section for the module.
- ✓ To make a constant available to all modules in the workbook, use the Public keyword and declare the constant in the Declarations section of any module.

Unlike a variable, the value of a constant does not vary. If you attempt to change the value of a constant in a VBA routine, you get an error. This isn't too surprising because the value of a constant must remain constant. If you need to change the value of a constant while your code is running, what you really need is a variable.

## Pre-made constants

Excel and VBA contain many predefined constants, which you can use without the need to declare them yourself. The macro recorder usually uses constants rather than actual values. In general, you don't need to know the value of these constants to use them. The following simple procedure uses a built-in constant (xlCalculationManual) to change the Calculation property of the Application object. (In other words, this changes the Excel recalculation mode to manual.)

```
Sub CalcManual()
    Application.Calculation = xlCalculationManual
End Sub
```

I discovered the `xlCalculationManual` constant by recording a macro while I changed the calculation mode. I also could have looked in the Help system and found this:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>Description</b>
<code>xlCalculationAutomatic</code>	-4105	Excel controls recalculation.
<code>xlCalculationManual</code>	-4135	Calculation is done when the user requests it.
<code>xlCalculationSemiautomatic</code>	2	Excel controls recalculation but ignores changes in tables.

So the actual value of the built-in `xlCalculationManual` constant is -4135. Obviously, it's easier to use the constant's name than try to remember such an odd value. As you can see, many of the built-in constants are just arbitrary numbers that have special meaning to VBA.



To find the actual value of a built-in constant, use the Immediate window in the VBE and execute a VBA statement such as the following:

```
? xlCalculationAutomatic
```

If the Immediate window isn't visible, press **Ctrl+G**. The question mark is a shortcut for typing **Print**.

## Working with strings

Excel can work with both numbers and text, so it should come as no surprise that VBA has this same power. Text is often referred to as a *string*. You can work with two types of strings in VBA:

- ✓ **Fixed-length strings** are declared with a specified number of characters. The maximum length is 65,536 characters. That's a lot of characters! As a point of reference, this chapter contains about half that many characters.
- ✓ **Variable-length strings** theoretically can hold as many as two billion characters. If you type five characters per second, it would take you about 760 days to bang out two billion characters — assuming you don't take any breaks to eat or sleep.

When declaring a string variable with a `Dim` statement, you can specify the maximum length if you know it (it's a fixed-length string) or let VBA handle it dynamically (it's a variable-length string). The following example declares the

MyString variable as a string with a maximum length of 50 characters. (Use an asterisk to specify the number of characters, up to the 65,526 character limit.) YourString is also declared as a string, but its length is unspecified:

```
Dim MyString As String * 50  
Dim YourString As String
```



When declaring a fixed-length string that exceeds 999, do not use a comma in the number that specifies the string size. In fact, never use commas when entering a numeric value in VBA. VBA doesn't like that.

## *Working with dates*

Another data type you may find useful is Date. You can use a string variable to store dates, but then you can't perform date calculations. Using the Date data type gives your routines greater flexibility. For example, you might need to calculate the number of days between two dates. This would be impossible (or at least extremely challenging) if you used strings to hold your dates.

A variable defined as a Date can hold dates ranging from January 1, 0100, to December 31, 9999. That's a span of nearly 10,000 years and more than enough for even the most aggressive financial forecast. You can also use the Date data type to work with time data (VBA lacks a Time data type).

These examples declare variables and constants as a Date data type:

```
Dim Today As Date  
Dim StartTime As Date  
Const FirstDay As Date = #1/1/2013#  
Const Noon = #12:00:00#
```

In VBA, place dates and times between two hash marks, as shown in the preceding examples.



Date variables display dates according to your system's short date format, and they display times according to your system's time format (either 12- or 24-hour formatting). The Windows Registry stores these settings, and you can modify them via the Regional and Language Options dialog box in the Windows Control Panel. Therefore, the VBA-displayed date or time format may vary, depending on the settings for the system on which the application is running.

When writing VBA code, however, you must use one of the U.S. date formats (such as mm/dd/yyyy). So the following statement assigns a day in October (not November) to the MyDate variable (even if your system is set to use dd/mm/yyyy for dates):

```
MyDate = #10/11/2013#
```

When you display the variable (with the MsgBox function, for example), VBA shows MyDate using your system settings. So if your system uses the dd/mm/yyyy date format, MyDate will be displayed as 11/10/2013.

## Using Assignment Statements

An *assignment statement* is a VBA statement that assigns the result of an expression to a variable or an object. Excel's Help system defines the term expression as

*... a combination of keywords, operators, variables, and constants that yields a string, number, or object. An expression can be used to perform a calculation, manipulate characters, or test data.*

I couldn't have said it better myself, so I won't even try.

Much of your work in VBA involves developing (and debugging) expressions. If you know how to create formulas in Excel, you'll have no trouble creating expressions. With a worksheet formula, Excel displays the result in a cell. A VBA expression, on the other hand, can be assigned to a variable.

## Assignment statement examples

In the assignment statement examples that follow, the expressions are to the right of the equal sign:

```
x = 1
x = x + 1
x = (y * 2) / (z * 2)
HouseCost = 375000
FileOpen = True
Range("TheYear").Value = 2013
```



Expressions can be as complex as you need them to be; use the line continuation character (a space followed by an underscore) to make lengthy expressions easier to read.

Often, expressions use functions: VBA's built-in functions, Excel's worksheet functions, or functions that you develop with VBA. I discuss functions in Chapter 9.

## About that equal sign

As you can see in the preceding example, VBA uses the equal sign as its assignment operator. You're probably accustomed to using an equal sign as a mathematical symbol for equality. Therefore, an assignment statement like the following may cause you to raise your eyebrows:

```
z = z + 1
```

In what crazy universe is *z* equal to itself plus 1? Answer: No known universe. In this case, the assignment statement (when executed) increases the value of *z* by 1. So if *z* is 12, executing the statement makes *z* equal to 13. Just remember that an assignment uses the equal sign as an operator, not a symbol of equality.

## Smooth operators

Operators play a major role in VBA. Besides the equal sign operator (discussed in the previous section), VBA provides several other operators. Table 7-3 lists these operators. These should be familiar to you because they are the same operators used in worksheet formulas (except for the Mod operator).

When writing an Excel formula, modulo arithmetic is done using the MOD function. For example, the following formula returns 2 (the remainder when you divide 12 by 5):

```
=MOD(12,5)
```

In VBA, the Mod operator is used like this (and *z* has a value of 2):

```
z = 12 Mod 5
```

**Table 7-3****VBA's Operators**

<b>Function</b>	<b>Operator Symbol</b>
Addition	+
Multiplication	*
Division	/
Subtraction	-
Exponentiation	^
String concatenation	&
Integer division (the result is always an integer)	\
Modulo arithmetic (returns the remainder of a division operation)	Mod



The term *concatenation* is programmer speak for “join together.” Thus, if you concatenate strings, you are combining strings to make a new and improved string.

As shown in Table 7-4, VBA also provides a full set of logical operators. Of these, Not, And, and Or are most frequently used. I’ve never seen anyone use the other three logical operators.

**Table 7-4****VBA's Logical Operators**

<b>Operator</b>	<b>What It Does</b>
Not	Performs a logical negation on an expression.
And	Performs a logical conjunction on two expressions.
Or	Performs a logical disjunction on two expressions.
XoR	Performs a logical exclusion on two expressions.
Eqv	Performs a logical equivalence on two expressions.
Imp	Performs a logical implication on two expressions.

The precedence order for operators in VBA is exactly the same as in Excel formulas. Exponentiation has the highest precedence. Multiplication and division come next, followed by addition and subtraction. You can use parentheses to change the natural precedence order, making whatever’s sandwiched in parentheses come before any operator. Take a look at this code:

```
x = 3  
y = 2  
z = x + 5 * y
```

When this code is executed, what's the value of z? If you answered 13, you get a gold star that proves you understand the concept of operator precedence. If you answered 16, read this: The multiplication operation ( $5 * y$ ) is performed first, and that result is added to x. If you answered something other than 13 or 16, I have no comment.

By the way, I have more important things to remember than how operator precedence works, so I tend to use parentheses even when they aren't required. For example, in real life I would write that last assignment statement like this:

```
z = x + (5 * y)
```



Don't be shy about using parentheses even if they aren't required — especially if doing so makes your code easier to understand. VBA doesn't care if you use extra parentheses.

## Working with Arrays

Most programming languages support arrays. An *array* is a group of variables that share a common name. You refer to a specific variable in the array by using the array name and an index number in parentheses. For example, you can define an array of 12 string variables to hold the names of the months of the year. If you name the array *MonthNames*, you can refer to the first element of the array as *MonthNames* (1), the second element as *MonthNames* (2), and so on.

### Declaring arrays

Before you can use an array, you *must* declare it. No exceptions. Unlike normal variables, VBA is very strict about this rule. You declare an array with a Dim or Public statement, just as you declare a regular variable. However, you also need to specify the number of elements in the array. You do this by specifying the first index number, the keyword To, and the last index number — all inside parentheses. The following example shows how to declare an array of 100 integers:

```
Dim MyArray(1 To 100) As Integer
```

When you declare an array, you can choose to specify only the upper index. If you omit the lower index, VBA assumes that it's 0. Therefore, both of the following statements declare the same 101-element array:

```
Dim MyArray (0 To 100) As Integer
```

```
Dim MyArray (100) As Integer
```



If you want VBA to assume that 1 (rather than 0) is the lower index for your arrays, include the following statement in the Declarations section of your module:

```
Option Base 1
```

This statement forces VBA to use 1 as the first index number for arrays that declare only the upper index. If this statement is present, the following statements are identical, both declaring a 100-element array:

```
Dim MyArray (1 To 100) As Integer
```

```
Dim MyArray (100) As Integer
```

## Multidimensional arrays

The arrays created in the previous examples are all one-dimensional arrays. Think of one-dimensional arrays as a single line of values. Arrays you create in VBA can have as many as 60 dimensions — although you rarely need more than two or three dimensions in an array. The following example declares an 81-integer array with two dimensions:

```
Dim MyArray (1 To 9, 1 To 9) As Integer
```

You can think of this array as occupying a 9 x 9 matrix — perfect for storing all numbers in a Sudoku puzzle.

To refer to a specific element in this array, you need to specify two index numbers (similar to its “row” and its “column” in the matrix). The following example shows how you can assign a value to an element in this array:

```
MyArray (3, 4) = 125
```

This statement assigns a value to a single element in the array. If you're thinking of the array in terms of a 9 x 9 matrix, this assigns 125 to the element located in the third row and fourth column of the matrix.

Here's how to declare a three-dimensional array, with 1,000 elements:

```
Dim My3DArray (1 To 10, 1 To 10, 1 To 10) As Integer
```

You can think of a three-dimensional array as a cube. Visualizing an array of more than three dimensions is more difficult. Sorry, I haven't yet mastered the fourth dimension and beyond.

## Dynamic arrays

You can also create *dynamic* arrays. A dynamic array doesn't have a preset number of elements. Declare a dynamic array with an empty set of parentheses:

```
Dim MyArray () As Integer
```

Before you can use this array, you must use the ReDim statement to tell VBA how many elements the array has. Usually, the number of elements in the array is determined while your code is running. You can use the ReDim statement any number of times, changing the array's size as often as needed. The following example demonstrates how to change the number of elements in a dynamic array. It assumes that the NumElements variable contains a value, which your code calculated.

```
ReDim MyArray (1 To NumElements)
```



When you redimension an array by using ReDim, you wipe out any values currently stored in the array elements. You can avoid destroying the old values by using the Preserve keyword. The following example shows how you can preserve an array's values when you redimension the array:

```
ReDim Preserve MyArray(1 To NumElements)
```

If MyArray currently has ten elements and you execute the preceding statement with NumElements equaling 12, the first ten elements remain intact, and the array has room for two additional elements (up to the number contained in the variable NumElements). If NumElements equals 7 however, the first seven elements are retained but the remaining three elements meet their demise.

The topic of arrays comes up again in Chapter 10, when I discuss looping.

## Using Labels

In early versions of BASIC, every line of code required a line number. For example, if you had written a BASIC program in the '70s (dressed, of course, in your bell bottoms), it may have looked something like this:

```
010: LET X=5
020: LET Y=3
030: LET Z=X*Y
040: PRINT Z
050: END
```



VBA permits the use of such line numbers, and it even permits text labels. You don't typically use a label for each line, but you may occasionally need to use a label. For example, insert a label if you use a GoTo statement (which I discuss in Chapter 10). A label must begin with the first nonblank character in a line and end with a colon.

The information in this chapter becomes clearer as you read subsequent chapters. If you want to find out more about VBA language elements, I refer you to the VBA Help system. You can find as much detail as you need, or care, to know.

## **Chapter 8**

---

# **Working with Range Objects**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Finding out why Range objects are so important
  - ▶ Understanding the various ways of referring to ranges
  - ▶ Discovering some of the more useful Range object properties
  - ▶ Uncovering some of the more useful Range object methods
- 

**1**

In this chapter, I dig a bit deeper into Excel's dungeons and take a closer look at Range objects. Excel is all about cells, and the Range object is a container for cells. Why do you need to know so much about Range objects? Because much of the programming work you do in Excel focuses on Range objects. You can thank me later.

## ***A Quick Review***

A *Range object* represents a range contained in a Worksheet object. Range objects, like all other objects, have properties (which you can examine and sometimes change) and methods (which perform actions on the object).

A Range object can be as small as a single cell (for example, B4) or as large as every one of the 17,179,869,184 cells in a worksheet (A1:XFD1048576).

When you refer to a Range object, the address is always surrounded by double quotes, like this:

```
Range( "A1 : C5" )
```

If the range consists of one cell, you still need the quotes:

```
Range( "K9" )
```

If the range happens to have a name (created by using the Formulas $\Rightarrow$ Defined Names $\Rightarrow$ Define Name command in Excel), you can use an expression like this:

```
Range("PriceList")
```



Unless you tell Excel otherwise by qualifying the range reference, it assumes that you're referring to a range on the active worksheet. If anything other than a worksheet is active (such as a chart sheet), the range reference fails, and your macro displays an error message and stops running.

As shown in the following example, you can refer to a range outside the active sheet by qualifying the range reference with a worksheet name from the active workbook:

```
Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1:C5")
```

If you need to refer to a range in a different workbook (that is, any workbook other than the active workbook), you can use a statement like this:

```
Workbooks("Budget.xlsx").Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1:C5")
```

A Range object can consist of one or more entire rows or columns. You can refer to an entire row (in this case, row 3) by using syntax like this:

```
Range("3:3")
```

You can refer to an entire column (the fourth column in this example) like this:

```
Range("D:D")
```

In Excel, you select noncontiguous ranges by holding down the Ctrl key while selecting various ranges with your mouse. Figure 8-1 shows a noncontiguous range selection. You shouldn't be surprised that VBA also lets you work with noncontiguous ranges. The following expression refers to a two-area noncontiguous range. Notice that a comma separates the two areas.

```
Range("A1:B8,D9:G16")
```



Be aware that some methods and properties cause havoc with noncontiguous ranges. You may have to process each area separately by using a loop.

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1									
2									
3									
4									
5									
6									
7									
8									
9									
10									
11									
12									
13									
14									
15									
16									
17									
18									
19									

Sheet1

**Figure 8-1:**  
A noncon-  
tiguous  
range  
selection.

## Other Ways to Refer to a Range

The more you work with VBA, the more you realize that it's a fairly well-conceived language and is usually quite logical (despite what you may be thinking right now). Often, VBA provides multiple ways to perform an action. You can choose the most appropriate solution for your problem. This section discusses some of the other ways to refer to a range.



This chapter barely scratches the surface for the Range object's properties and methods. As you work with VBA, you'll probably need to access other properties and methods. The Help system is the best place to find out about them, but it's also a good idea to record your actions and examine the code Excel generates. You're probably getting tired of hearing that advice by now, but it really is good advice.

### *The Cells property*

Rather than use the VBA Range keyword, you can refer to a range via the Cells property.



Notice that I wrote *Cells property*, not *Cells object* or even *Cells collection*. Although Cells may seem like an object (or a collection), it's really not. Rather, Cells is a property that VBA evaluates. VBA then returns an object (more specifically, a Range object). If this seems strange, don't worry. Even Microsoft appears to be confused about this issue. In some earlier versions of Excel, the Cells property was known as the Cells method. Regardless of what it is, just understand that Cells is a handy way to refer to a range.

The Cells property takes two arguments: a row number and a column number. Both of these arguments are numbers, even though we usually refer to columns by using letters. For example, the following expression refers to cell C2 on Sheet2:

```
Worksheets("Sheet2").Cells(2, 3)
```

You can also use the Cells property to refer to a multi-cell range. The following example demonstrates the syntax you use:

```
Range(Cells(1, 1), Cells(10, 8))
```

This expression refers to an 80-cell range that extends from cell A1 (row 1, column 1) to cell H10 (row 10, column 8).

The following statements both produce the same result; they enter a value of 99 into a 10-by-8 range of cells. More specifically, these statements set the Value property of the Range object:

```
Range("A1:H10").Value = 99  
Range(Cells(1, 1), Cells(10, 8)).Value = 99
```



The advantage of using the Cells property to refer to ranges becomes apparent when you use variables rather than actual numbers as the Cells arguments. And things really start to click when you understand looping, which I cover in Chapter 10.

## *The Offset property*

The Offset property provides another handy means for referring to ranges. This property, which operates on a Range object and returns another Range object, lets you refer to a cell that is a particular number of rows and columns away from another cell.

Like the Cells property, the Offset property takes two arguments. The first argument represents the number of rows to offset; the second represents the number of columns to offset.

The following expression refers to a cell one row below cell A1 and two columns to the right of cell A1. In other words, this refers to the cell commonly known as C2:

```
Range("A1").Offset(1, 2)
```

The Offset property can also use negative arguments. A *negative* row offset refers to a row above the range. A negative column offset refers to a column to the left of the range. The following example refers to cell A1:

```
Range("C2").Offset(-1, -2)
```

And, as you may expect, you can use 0 as one or both of the arguments for Offset. The following expression refers to cell A1:

```
Range("A1").Offset(0, 0)
```

Here's a statement that inserts the time of day into the cell to the right of the active cell:

```
ActiveCell.Offset(0, 1) = Time
```

When you record a macro in relative mode, Excel uses the Offset property quite a bit. Refer back to Chapter 6 for an example.



The Offset property is most useful when you use variables rather than actual values for the arguments. In Chapter 10, I present some examples that demonstrate this.

## Some Useful Range Object Properties

A Range object has dozens of properties. You can write VBA programs non-stop for the next 12 months and never use them all. In this section, I briefly describe some of the more commonly used Range properties. For complete details, consult the Help system in the VBE.



Some Range properties are *read-only* properties, which means that your code can look at their values, but it can't change them ("look, but don't touch"). For example, every Range object has an Address property, which holds the range's address. You can access this read-only property, but you can't change it — which makes perfect sense when you think about it.

By the way, the examples that follow are typically statements rather than complete procedures. If you'd like to try any of these (and you should), create a Sub procedure to do so. Also, many of these statements work properly only if a worksheet is the active sheet.

## The Value property

The Value property represents the value contained in a cell. It's a read-write property, so your VBA code can either read or change the value.

The following statement displays a message box that shows the value in cell A1 on Sheet1:

```
MsgBox Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1").Value
```

It stands to reason that you can read the Value property only for a single-cell Range object. For example, the following statement generates an error:

```
MsgBox Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1:C3").Value
```

You can, however, change the Value property for a range of any size. The following statement enters the number 123 into each cell in a range:

```
Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1:C3").Value = 123
```



Value is the default property for a Range object. In other words, if you omit a property for a Range, Excel uses its Value property. The following statements both enter a value of 75 into cell A1 on the active worksheet:

```
Range("A1").Value = 75  
Range("A1") = 75
```



## Assigning the values in a multi-cell range to a variable

I wasn't being fully truthful when I wrote "you can read the Value property only for a single-cell Range object." In fact, you can assign the values in a multi-cell range to a variable, as long as the variable is a variant. That's because a variant can act like an array. Here's an example:

```
Dim x As Variant  
x = Range("A1:C3").Value
```

Then you can treat the x variable as if it were an array. This statement, for example, returns the value in cell B1:

```
MsgBox x(1, 2)
```

## The Text property

The Text property returns a string that represents the text as it's displayed in a cell — the formatted value. The Text property is read-only. For example, suppose that cell A1 contains the value 12.3 and is formatted to display two decimals and a dollar sign (\$12.30). The following statement displays a message box containing \$12.30:

```
MsgBox Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1").Text
```

But the next statement displays a message box containing 12.3:

```
MsgBox Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("A1").Value
```

If the cell contains a formula, the Text property returns the result of the formula. If a cell contains text, then the Text property and the Value property will always return the same thing, because text (unlike a number) can't be formatted to display differently.

## The Count property

The Count property returns the number of cells in a range. It counts all cells, not just the nonblank cells. Count is a read-only property, just as you would expect. The following statement accesses a range's Count property and displays the result (9) in a message box:

```
MsgBox Range("A1:C3").Count
```

## The Column and Row properties

The Column property returns the column number of a single-cell range. Its sidekick, the Row property, returns the row number of a single-cell range. Both are read-only properties. For example, the following statement displays 6 because cell F3 is in the sixth column:

```
MsgBox Sheets("Sheet1").Range("F3").Column
```

The next expression displays 3 because cell F3 is in the third row:

```
MsgBox Sheets("Sheet1").Range("F3").Row
```



If the Range object consists of more than one cell, the Column property returns the column number of the first column in the range, and the Row property returns the row number of the first row in the range.



Don't confuse the Column and Row properties with the Columns and Rows properties (discussed earlier in this chapter). The Column and Row properties return a single value. The Columns and Rows properties, on the other hand, return a Range object. What a difference an "s" makes.

## *The Address property*

Address, a read-only property, displays the cell address for a Range object as an absolute reference (a dollar sign before the column letter and before the row number). The following statement displays the message box shown in Figure 8-2:

```
MsgBox Range(Cells(1, 1), Cells(5, 5)).Address
```

**Figure 8-2:**  
This message box displays the Address property of a 5-by-5 range.



## *The HasFormula property*

The HasFormula property (which is read-only) returns True if the single-cell range contains a formula. It returns False if the cell does not have a formula. If the range consists of more than one cell, VBA returns True only if all cells in the range contain a formula, or False if all cells in the range don't have a formula. The property returns Null if there is a mixture of formulas and non-formulas in the range. Null is kind of a no-man's land: The answer is neither True nor False; any cell in the range may or may not have a formula.



You need to be careful when you work with properties that can return Null. More specifically, the only data type that can deal with Null is Variant.

For example, assume that cell A1 contains a value and cell A2 contains a formula. The following statements generate an error because the range doesn't consist of all formulas or all nonformulas:

```
Dim FormulaTest As Boolean
FormulaTest = Range("A1:A2").HasFormula
```

The Boolean data type can handle only True or False. Null causes Excel to complain and display an error message. To fix this type of situation, the best thing to do is make sure that the FormulaTest variable is declared as a Variant rather than as a Boolean. The following example uses VBA's handy TypeName function (along with an If-Then-Else construct) to determine the data type of the FormulaTest variable. If the range has a mixture of formulas and nonformulas, the message box displays *Mixed!* Otherwise it displays either *True* or *False*.

```
Sub CheckForFormulas()
    Dim FormulaTest As Variant
    FormulaTest = Range("A1:A2").HasFormula
    If TypeName(FormulaTest) = "Null" Then
        MsgBox "Mixed!"
    Else
        MsgBox FormulaTest
    End If
End Sub
```

See Chapter 10 for more about using the If-Then-Else construct.

## *The Font property*

As I note earlier in this chapter (see “The Cells property”), a property can return an object. The Font property of a Range object is another example of that concept at work. The Font property returns a Font object.

A Font object, as you may expect, has many accessible properties. To change some aspect of a range’s font, you must first access the range’s Font object and then manipulate the properties of that object. This may be confusing, but maybe this example will help.

The following statement uses the Font property of the Range object to return a Font object. Then the Bold property of the Font object is set to True. In plain English, this statement makes the cell display in boldface:

```
Range("A1").Font.Bold = True
```

Truth is, you don’t really need to know that you’re working with a special Font object that’s contained in a Range object. As long as you use the proper syntax, it will work just fine. Often, recording your actions while you record a macro will tell you everything you need to know about the proper syntax.

See Chapter 6 for more information about recording macros.

## A quick and dirty color primer

Prior to Excel 2007, Microsoft tried to convince us that 56 colors were good enough for a spreadsheet. But things have changed, and we can use more than 16 million colors in a workbook. 16,777,216 colors to be exact.

Many objects have a `Color` property, and that property accepts color values that range from 0 to 16777215. Nobody can remember that many color values, so (fortunately) there's an easier way to specify colors: use VBA's `RGB` function. This function takes advantage of the fact that any of these 16 million colors can be represented by various levels of red, green, and blue. The three arguments in the `RGB` function correspond to the color's red, green, and blue components, and each of these arguments can range from 0 to 255.

Note that  $256 \times 256 \times 256 = 16,777,216$  — which happens to be the number of colors. Don't you just love it when the math works out?

Following are a few examples that use the `RGB` function to change a cell's background color:

```
Range("A1").Interior.Color = RGB(0, 0, 0) 'black  
Range("A1").Interior.Color = RGB(255, 0, 0) ' pure red  
Range("A1").Interior.Color = RGB(0, 0, 255) ' pure blue  
Range("A1").Interior.Color = RGB(200, 89, 18) ' orangy-brown  
Range("A1").Interior.Color = RGB(128, 128, 128) ' middle gray
```

What's the exact value of `RGB(128, 128, 128)`? This statement will tell you that it's 8421504:

```
MsgBox RGB(128, 128, 128)
```

If you need to use standard colors, you may prefer to use one of the built-in color constants: `vbBlack`, `vbRed`, `vbGreen`, `vbYellow`, `vbBlue`, `vbMagenta`, `vbCyan`, or `vbWhite`. For example, the following statement makes cell A1 yellow:

```
Range("A1").Interior.Color = vbYellow
```

Excel 2007 also introduced *theme colors*. These are the colors that appear when you use color control such as the Fill Color control in the Font group of the Home tab. Try recording a macro while you change colors, and you'll get something like this:

```
Range("A1").Interior.ThemeColor = xlThemeColorAccent4  
Range("A1").Interior.TintAndShade = 0.399975585192419
```

Yep, two more color-related properties to deal with. Here we have a theme color (the basic color, specified as a built-in constant), plus a "tint and shade" value that represents how dark or light the color is. `TintAndShade` values range from -1.0 to +1.0. Positive values of the `TintAndShade` property make the color lighter, and negative values make the color darker. When you set a color using the `ThemeColor` property, the color will change if you apply a different document theme (using the `Page Layout`⇒`Themes`⇒`Themes` command).

## The Interior property

Here's yet another example of a property that returns an object. A Range object's Interior property returns an Interior object (strange name, but that's what it's called). This type of object referencing works the same way as the Font property (which I describe in the preceding section).

For example, the following statement changes the Color property of the Interior object contained in the Range object:

```
Range("A1").Interior.Color = 8421504
```

In other words, this statement changes the cell's background to middle gray. What's that? You didn't know that 8421504 is middle gray? For some insights into Excel's wonderful world of color, see the nearby sidebar "A quick and dirty color primer."

## The Formula property

The Formula property represents the formula in a cell. This is a read-write property, so you can access it to either view the formula in a cell or insert a formula into a cell. For example, the following statement enters a SUM formula into cell A13:

```
Range("A13").Formula = "=SUM(A1:A12)"
```

Notice that the formula is a text string and is enclosed in quotation marks.

If the formula itself contains quotation marks, things get a bit tricky. For example, let's say you want to insert this formula by using VBA:

```
=SUM(A1:A12) & " Stores"
```

This formula displays a value, followed by the word *Stores*. To make this formula acceptable, you need to replace every quotation mark in the formula with two quotation marks. Otherwise, VBA will get confused and claim that there's a syntax error (because there is!). So here's a statement that will enter a formula that contains quotes:

```
Range("A13").Formula = "=SUM(A1:A12) & "" Stores"""
```

By the way, you can access a cell's Formula property even if the cell doesn't have a formula. If a cell has no formula, the Formula property returns the same as its Value property.

If you need to know whether a cell has a formula, use the HasFormula property (discussed earlier in this chapter).



Be aware that VBA “speaks” U.S. English. This means that in order to put a formula in a cell, you must use the U.S. syntax. If you use a non-English version of Excel, read up on the `FormulaLocal` property.

## *The NumberFormat property*

The `NumberFormat` property represents the number format (expressed as a text string) of the `Range` object. This is a read-write property, so your VBA code can either examine the number format or change it. The following statement changes the number format of column A to a percent with two decimal places:

```
Columns("A:A").NumberFormat = "0.00%"
```

Follow these steps to see a list of other number formats. Better yet, turn on the macro recorder while you do this:

1. Activate a worksheet.
2. Access the Format Cells dialog box by pressing **Ctrl+1**.
3. Click the Number tab.
4. Select the Custom category to view and apply some additional number format strings.

## *Some Useful Range Object Methods*

As you know, a VBA method performs an action. A `Range` object has dozens of methods but, again, you won’t need most of these. In this section, I point out some of the more commonly used `Range` object methods.

### *The Select method*

Use the `Select` method to select a range of cells. The following statement selects a range on the active worksheet:

```
Range("A1:C12").Select
```



Before selecting a range, it’s often a good idea to use one additional statement to ensure that the correct worksheet is active. For example, if `Sheet1` contains the range you want to select, use the following statements to select the range:

```
Sheets("Sheet1").Activate
Range("A1:C12").Select
```

Contrary to what you may expect, the following statement generates an error if Sheet1 is not already the active sheet. In other words, you must use two statements rather than just one: one to activate the sheet and another to select the range.

```
Sheets ("Sheet1") .Range ("A1:C12") .Select
```



If you use the GoTo method of the Application object to select a range, you can forget about selecting the correct worksheet first. This statement activates Sheet1 and then selects the range:

```
Application.Goto Sheets ("Sheet1") .Range ("A1:C12")
```

The GoTo method is the VBA equivalent of pressing F5 in Excel, which displays the GoTo dialog box.

## *The Copy and Paste methods*

You can perform copy and paste operations in VBA by using the Copy and Paste methods. Note that two different objects come into play. The Copy method is applicable to the Range object, but the Paste method applies to the Worksheet object. It actually makes sense: You copy a range and paste it to a worksheet.

This short macro (courtesy of the macro recorder) copies range A1:A12 and pastes it to the same worksheet, beginning at cell C1:

```
Sub CopyRange()
    Range ("A1:A12") .Select
    Selection.Copy
    Range ("C1") .Select
    ActiveSheet.Paste
End Sub
```



Notice that in the preceding example, the ActiveSheet object is used with the Paste method. This is a special version of the Worksheet object that refers to the currently active worksheet. Also notice that the macro selects the range before copying it. However, you don't have to select a range before doing something with it. In fact, the following procedure accomplishes the same task as the preceding example by using a single statement:

```
Sub CopyRange2()
    Range ("A1:A12") .Copy Range ("C1")
End Sub
```

This procedure takes advantage of the fact that the Copy method can use an argument that corresponds to the destination range for the copy operation. That's something that you can find out by checking with the Help system.

## The Clear method

The Clear method deletes the contents of a range, plus all the cell formatting. For example, if you want to zap everything in column D, the following statement does the trick:

```
Columns ("D:D").Clear
```

You should be aware of two related methods. The ClearContents method deletes the contents of the range but leaves the formatting intact. The ClearFormats method deletes the formatting in the range but not the cell contents.

## The Delete method

Clearing a range differs from deleting a range. When you *delete* a range, Excel shifts the remaining cells around to fill up the range you deleted.

The following example uses the Delete method to delete row 6:

```
Rows ("6:6").Delete
```

When you delete a range that's not a complete row or column, Excel needs to know how to shift the cells. (To see how this works, experiment with the Excel Home→Cells→Delete command.)

The following statement deletes a range and then fills the resulting gap by shifting the other cells to the left:

```
Range ("C6:C10").Delete xlToLeft
```

The Delete method uses an argument that indicates how Excel should shift the remaining cells. In this case, I use a built-in constant (xlToLeft) for the argument. I could also use xlUp, another named constant.

## **Chapter 9**

---

# **Using VBA and Worksheet Functions**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Using functions to make your VBA expressions more powerful
  - ▶ Using the VBA built-in functions
  - ▶ Using Excel worksheet functions in your VBA code
  - ▶ Writing custom functions
- 

**I**n previous chapters, I allude to the fact that you can use functions in your VBA expressions. There are three flavors of functions: those built into VBA (vanilla), those built into Excel (strawberry), and other functions written in VBA (chocolate). I provide a full and tasty explanation in this chapter. Functions can make your VBA code perform some powerful feats, with little or no programming effort required. If you like that idea, this chapter's for you.

## ***What Is a Function?***

Except for a few people who think Excel is a word processor, all Excel users incorporate worksheet functions in their formulas. The most common worksheet function is the SUM function, and you have hundreds of others at your disposal.

A *function* essentially performs a calculation and returns a single value. The SUM function, of course, returns the sum of a range of values. The same holds true for functions used in your VBA expressions: Each function does its thing and returns a single value.

The functions you use in VBA can come from three sources:

- ✓ Built-in functions provided by VBA
- ✓ Worksheet functions provided by Excel
- ✓ Custom functions that you (or someone else) write, using VBA

The rest of this chapter clarifies the differences and (I hope) convinces you of the value of using functions in your VBA code.

## Using Built-In VBA Functions

VBA provides numerous built-in functions. Some of these functions take arguments, and some do not.

### *VBA function examples*

In this section, I present a few examples of using VBA functions in code. In many of these examples, I use the MsgBox function to display a value in a message box. Yes, MsgBox is a VBA function — a rather unusual one, but a function nonetheless. This useful function displays a message in a pop-up dialog box and also returns a value. For more details about the MsgBox function, see Chapter 15.



A workbook that contains all the examples is available at this book's website.

#### ***Displaying the system date or time***

The first example uses VBA's Date function to display the current system date in a message box:

```
Sub ShowDate()
    MsgBox "Today is: " & Date
End Sub
```

Notice that the Date function doesn't use an argument. Unlike worksheet functions, a VBA function with no argument doesn't require an empty set of parentheses. In fact, if you type an empty set of parentheses, the VBE will promptly remove them.

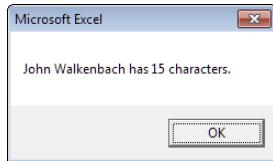
To get the system time, use the Time function. And if you want it all, use the Now function to return both the date and the time.

### Finding a string length

The following procedure uses the VBA Len function, which returns the length of a text string. The Len function takes one argument: the string. When you execute this procedure, the message box displays your name, and the number of characters in your name (see Figure 9-1).

```
Sub GetLength()
    Dim MyName As String
    Dim StringLength As Integer
    MyName = Application.UserName
    StringLength = Len(MyName)
    MsgBox MyName & " has " & StringLength & " characters."
End Sub
```

**Figure 9-1:**  
Calculating  
the length of  
your name.



Excel also has a LEN function, which you can use in your worksheet formulas. The Excel version and the VBA function work the same.

### Displaying the name of a month

The following procedure uses the MonthName function, which returns the name of a month. MonthName uses one argument, an integer between 1 and 12.

```
Sub ShowMonthName()
    Dim ThisMonth As Long
    ThisMonth = Month(Date)
    MsgBox MonthName(ThisMonth)
End Sub
```

This procedure uses the Month function to get the current month (as a value), and this value is assigned to the ThisMonth variable. The MonthName function then converts the value to text. So if you run this procedure in April, the message box displays the text April.

Actually, the ThisMonth variable isn't required. You can get the same effect with this expression that uses three VBA functions:

```
MonthName(Month(Date))
```

Here, the current date is passed as an argument to the Month function, which returns a value that is passed as an argument to the MonthName function.

### **Determining a file size**

The following Sub procedure displays the size, in bytes, of the Excel executable file. It finds this value by using the FileLen function.

```
Sub GetFileSize()
    Dim TheFile As String
    TheFile = "C:\Program Files (x86)\Microsoft Office\Office15\EXCEL.EXE"
    MsgBox FileLen(TheFile)
End Sub
```

Notice that this routine *hard codes* the filename (that is, it explicitly states the path). This isn't a good idea. The file might not be on the C drive, or the Excel folder may have a different name. The following statement shows a better approach:

```
TheFile = Application.Path & "\EXCEL.EXE"
```

Path is a property of the Application object. It simply returns the name of the folder in which the application (that is, Excel) is installed (without a trailing backslash).

### **Identifying the type of a selected object**

The following procedure uses the TypeName function, which returns the type of the selection on the worksheet (as a string):

```
Sub ShowSelectionType()
    Dim SelType As String
    SelType = TypeName(Selection)
    MsgBox SelType
End Sub
```

The selection could be a Range, a Picture, a Rectangle, a ChartArea, or any other type of object that can be selected.



The TypeName function is very versatile. You can also use this function to determine the data type of a variable.

## **VBA functions that do more than return a value**

A few VBA functions go above and beyond the call of duty. Rather than simply return a value, these functions have some useful side effects. Table 9-1 lists them.

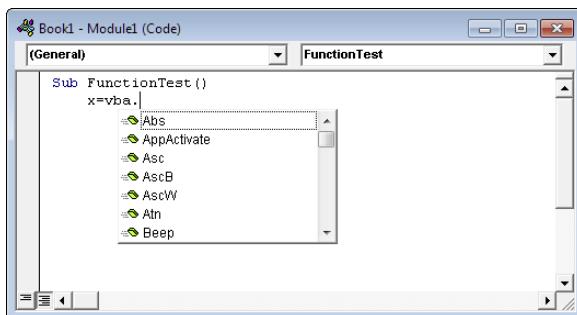
**Table 9-1****VBA Functions with Useful Side Benefits**

<b>Function</b>	<b>What It Does</b>
MsgBox	Displays a handy dialog box containing a message and buttons. The function returns a code that identifies which button the user clicks. See Chapter 15 for details.
InputBox	Displays a simple dialog box that asks the user for some input. The function returns whatever the user enters into the dialog box. I discuss this in Chapter 15.
Shell	Executes another program. The function returns the <i>task ID</i> (a unique identifier) of the other program (or an error if the function can't start the other program).

***Discovering VBA functions***

How do you find out which functions VBA provides? Good question. The best source is the Excel Visual Basic Help system. Another way is to type VBA, followed by a period. You get a list of items, as shown in Figure 9-2. Those with a green icon are functions. If this feature isn't working, choose the VBE's Tools⇒Options command, click the Editor tab, and place a checkmark next to Auto List Members.

**Figure 9-2:**  
A way to  
display a  
list of VBA  
functions.



I compiled a partial list of functions, which I share with you in Table 9-2. I omitted some of the more specialized or obscure functions.



For complete details on a particular function, type the function name into a VBA module, move the cursor anywhere in the text, and press F1.

**Table 9-2****VBA's Most Useful Built-In Functions**

<b>Function</b>	<b>What It Does</b>
Abs	Returns a number's absolute value.
Array	Returns a variant containing an array.
Choose	Returns a value from a list of items.
Chr	Converts an ANSI value to a string.
CurDir	Returns the current path.
Date	Returns the current system date.
DateAdd	Returns a date to which a specified time interval has been added — for example, one month from a particular date.
DateDiff	Returns an integer showing the number of specified time intervals between two dates — for example, the number of months between now and your birthday.
DatePart	Returns an integer containing the specified part of a given date — for example, a date's day of the year.
DateSerial	Converts a date to a serial number.
DateValue	Converts a string to a date.
Day	Returns the day of the month from a date value.
Dir	Returns the name of a file or directory that matches a pattern.
Err	Returns the error number of an error condition.
Error	Returns the error message that corresponds to an error number.
Exp	Returns the base of the natural logarithm (e) raised to a power.
FileLen	Returns the number of bytes in a file.
Fix	Returns a number's integer portion.
Format	Displays an expression in a particular format.
GetSetting	Returns a value from the Windows registry.
Hour	Returns the hours portion of a time.
InputBox	Displays a box to prompt a user for input.
InStr	Returns the position of a string within another string.
InStrRev	Returns the position of a string within another, from the end of a string.
Int	Returns the integer portion of a number.
IsArray	Returns True if a variable is an array.
IsDate	Returns True if an expression is a date.
IsEmpty	Returns True if a variable has not been initialized.

<b>Function</b>	<b>What It Does</b>
IsError	Returns True if an expression is an error value.
IsMissing	Returns True if an optional argument was not passed to a procedure.
IsNull	Returns True if an expression contains no valid data.
IsNumeric	Returns True if an expression can be evaluated as a number.
LBound	Returns the smallest subscript for a dimension of an array.
LCase	Returns a string converted to lowercase.
Left	Returns a specified number of characters from the left of a string.
Len	Returns the number of characters in a string.
Mid	Returns a specified number of characters from a string.
Minute	Returns the minutes portion of a time value.
Month	Returns the month from a date value.
MsgBox	Displays a message box and (optionally) returns a value.
Now	Returns the current system date and time.
Replace	Replaces a substring in a string with another substring.
RGB	Returns a numeric RGB value representing a color.
Right	Returns a specified number of characters from the right of a string.
Rnd	Returns a random number between 0 and 1.
Second	Returns the seconds portion of a time value.
Shell	Runs an executable program.
Space	Returns a string with a specified number of spaces.
Split	Splits a string into parts, using a delimiting character.
Sqr	Returns a number's square root.
String	Returns a repeating character or string.
Time	Returns the current system time.
Timer	Returns the number of seconds since midnight.
TimeSerial	Returns the time for a specified hour, minute, and second.
TimeValue	Converts a string to a time serial number.
Trim	Returns a string without leading or trailing spaces.
TypeName	Returns a string that describes a variable's data type.
UBound	Returns the largest available subscript for an array's dimension.
UCase	Converts a string to uppercase.
Val	Returns the numbers contained in a string.
Weekday	Returns a number representing a day of the week.
Year	Returns the year from a date value.

## Using Worksheet Functions in VBA

Although VBA offers a decent assortment of built-in functions, you might not always find exactly what you need. Fortunately, you can also use most of Excel's worksheet functions in your VBA procedures. The only worksheet functions that you cannot use are those that have an equivalent VBA function.

VBA makes Excel's worksheet functions available through the `WorksheetFunction` object, which is contained in the `Application` object. Here's an example of how you can use Excel's SUM function in a VBA statement:

```
Total = Application.WorksheetFunction.Sum(Range("A1:A12"))
```



You can omit the `Application` part or the `WorksheetFunction` part of the expression. In either case, VBA will figure out what you're doing. In other words, these three expressions all work exactly the same:

```
Total = Application.WorksheetFunction.Sum(Range("A1:A12"))
```

```
Total = WorksheetFunction.Sum(Range("A1:A12"))
```

```
Total = Application.Sum(Range("A1:A12"))
```

My personal preference is to use the `WorksheetFunction` part just to make it perfectly clear that the code is using an Excel function.

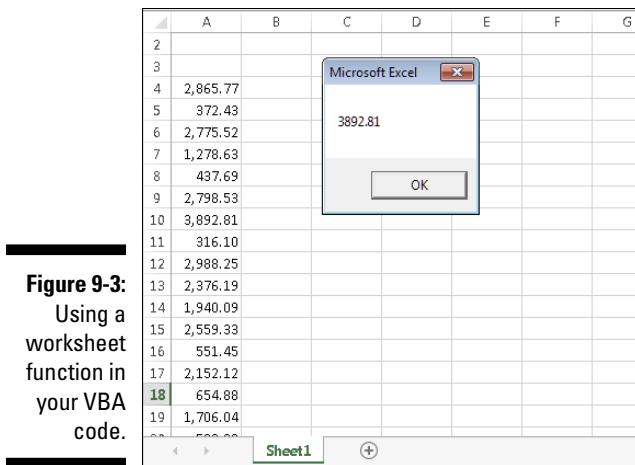
## Worksheet function examples

In this section, I demonstrate how to use worksheet functions in your VBA expressions.

### Finding the maximum value in a range

Here's an example that shows how to use Excel's MAX worksheet function in a VBA procedure. This procedure displays the maximum value in column A on the active worksheet (see Figure 9-3):

```
Sub ShowMax()
    Dim TheMax As Double
    TheMax = WorksheetFunction.MAX(Range("A:A"))
    MsgBox TheMax
End Sub
```



**Figure 9-3:**  
Using a  
worksheet  
function in  
your VBA  
code.

You can use the MIN function to get the smallest value in a range. And, as you might expect, you can use other worksheet functions in a similar manner. For example, you can use the LARGE function to determine the *k*th-largest value in a range. The following expression demonstrates this:

```
SecondHighest = WorksheetFunction.LARGE(Range("A:A"), 2)
```

Notice that the LARGE function uses two arguments; the second argument represents the *k*-th part — 2 in this case (the second-largest value).

### ***Calculating a mortgage payment***

The next example uses the PMT worksheet function to calculate a mortgage payment. I use three variables to store the data that's passed to the Pmt function as arguments. A message box displays the calculated payment.

```
Sub PmtCalc()
    Dim IntRate As Double
    Dim LoanAmt As Double
    Dim Periods As Integer
    IntRate = 0.0825 / 12
    Periods = 30 * 12
    LoanAmt = 150000
    MsgBox WorksheetFunction.PMT(IntRate, Periods, -LoanAmt)
End Sub
```

As the following statement shows, you can also insert the values directly as the function arguments:

```
MsgBox WorksheetFunction.PMT(0.0825 /12, 360, -150000)
```

However, using variables to store the parameters makes the code easier to read and modify, if necessary.

## *Using a lookup function*

The following example uses VBA's InputBox and MsgBox functions, plus Excel's VLOOKUP function. It prompts for a part number and then gets the price from a lookup table. In Figure 9-4, range A1:B13 is named PriceList.

```
Sub GetPrice()
    Dim PartNum As Variant
    Dim Price As Double
    PartNum = InputBox("Enter the Part Number")
    Sheets("Prices").Activate
    Price = WorksheetFunction.VLOOKUP(PartNum, Range("PriceList"), 2, False)
    MsgBox PartNum & " costs " & Price
End Sub
```



You can download this workbook from the book's website.

**Figure 9-4:**  
The range,  
named  
PriceList,  
contains  
prices for  
parts.

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1 Part	Price						
2 A-132	39.95						
3 A-183	12.95						
4 B-942	16.49						
5 C-832	3.99						
6 C-999	17.59						
7 D-873	19.99						
8 F-143	39.95						
9 G-771	49.95						
10 K-973	129.95						
11 M-732	89.95						
12 P-101	3.95						
13 R-932	13.95						
14							
15							
16							

The procedure starts this way:

1. VBA's InputBox function asks the user for a part number.
  2. This statement assigns the part number the user enters for the PartNum variable.

3. The next statement activates the Prices worksheet, just in case it's not already the active sheet.
4. The code uses the VLOOKUP function to find the part number in the table.

Notice that the arguments you use in this statement are the same as those you would use with the function in a worksheet formula. This statement assigns the result of the function to the Price variable.

5. The code displays the price for the part via the MsgBox function.

This procedure doesn't have any error handling, and it fails miserably if you enter a nonexistent part number. (Try it.) If this were an actual application that's used in an actual business, you would want to add some statements that deal with errors more gracefully. I discuss error handling in Chapter 12.

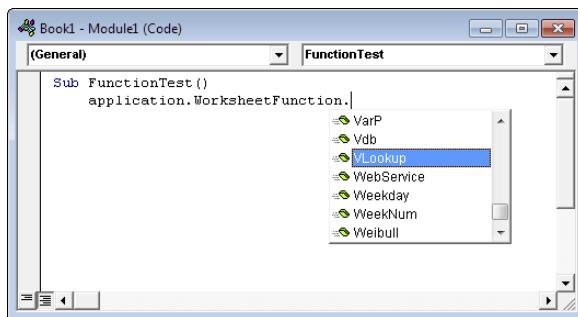
## *Entering worksheet functions*

You can't use the Excel Paste Function dialog box to insert a worksheet function into a VBA module. Instead, enter such functions the old-fashioned way: by hand. However, you *can* use the Paste Function dialog box to identify the function you want to use and find out about its arguments.



You can also take advantage of the VBE's Auto List Members option, which displays a drop-down list of all worksheet functions. Just type **Application.WorksheetFunction.**, followed by a period. Then you'll see a list of the function you can use, as shown in Figure 9-5. If this feature isn't working, choose the VBE's Tools⇒Options command, click the Editor tab, and place a checkmark next to Auto List Members.

**Figure 9-5:**  
Getting  
a list of  
worksheet  
functions  
that you can  
use in your  
VBA code.



## More about using worksheet functions

Newcomers to VBA often confuse VBA's built-in functions and Excel's workbook functions. A good rule to remember is that VBA doesn't try to reinvent the wheel. For the most part, VBA doesn't duplicate Excel worksheet functions.

For most worksheet functions that are unavailable as methods of the WorksheetFunction object, you can use an equivalent VBA built-in operator or function. For example, the MOD worksheet function is not available in the WorksheetFunction object because VBA has an equivalent, its built-in Mod operator.



Bottom line? If you need to use a function, first determine whether VBA has something that meets your needs. If not, check out the worksheet functions. If all else fails, you may be able to write a custom function by using VBA.

## Using Custom Functions

I've covered VBA functions and Excel worksheet functions. The third category of functions you can use in your VBA procedures is custom functions. A *custom function* (also known as a User Defined Function, or UDF) is one you develop yourself by using (what else?) VBA. To use a custom function, you must define it in the workbook in which you use it — or else define the functions in an add-in (see Chapter 21).

Here's an example of defining a simple Function procedure and then using it in a VBA Sub procedure:

```
Function MultiplyTwo(num1, num2) As Double
    MultiplyTwo = num1 * num2
End Function

Sub ShowResult()
    Dim n1 As Double, n2 As Double
    Dim Result As Double
    n1 = 123
    n2 = 544
    Result = MultiplyTwo(n1, n2)
    MsgBox Result
End Sub
```

The custom function MultiplyTwo has two arguments. The ShowResult Sub procedure uses this Function procedure by passing two arguments to it (in parentheses). The ShowResult procedure then displays a message box showing the value returned by the MultiplyTwo function.

I probably don't have to tell you that the MultiplyTwo function is fairly useless. It's much more efficient to perform the multiplication in the ShowResult Sub procedure. I include it simply to give you an idea of how a Sub procedure can make use of a custom function.

You can also use custom functions in your worksheet formulas. For example, if MultiplyTwo is defined in your workbook, you can write a formula such as this one:

```
=MultiplyTwo(A1,A2)
```

This formula returns the product of the values in cells A1 and A2.

Creating custom worksheet functions is an important (and very useful) topic. So important (and useful) that I devote an entire chapter to it. See Chapter 20 for some examples that are actually useful.



## **Chapter 10**

---

# **Controlling Program Flow and Making Decisions**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Discovering methods for controlling the flow of your VBA routines
  - ▶ Finding out about the dreaded GoTo statement
  - ▶ Using If-Then and Select Case structures
  - ▶ Performing looping in your procedures
- 

**S**ome VBA procedures start at the code's beginning and progress line by line to the end, never deviating from this top-to-bottom program flow. Macros that you record always work like this. In many cases, however, you need to control the flow of your code by skipping over some statements, executing some statements multiple times, and testing conditions to determine what the procedure does next. Hang on to your hat and enjoy the ride, because you're about to discover the essence of programming.

## ***Going with the Flow, Dude***

Some programming newbies can't understand how a dumb computer can make intelligent decisions. The secret is in several programming constructs that most programming languages support. Table 10-1 provides a quick summary of these constructs. (I explain all of these later in this chapter.)

**Table 10-1 Programming Constructs for Making Decisions**

<b>Construct</b>	<b>How It Works</b>
GoTo statement	Jumps to a particular statement.
If-Then structure	Does something if something else is true.
Select Case	Does any of several things, depending on something's value.
For-Next loop	Executes a series of statements a specified number of times.
Do-While loop	Does something as long as something else remains true.
Do-Until loop	Does something until something else becomes true.

## The GoTo Statement

A GoTo statement offers the most straightforward means for changing a program's flow. The GoTo statement simply transfers program execution to a new statement, which is preceded by a label.

Your VBA routines can contain as many labels as you like. A *label* is just a text string followed by a colon.

The following procedure shows how a GoTo statement works:

```
Sub CheckUser()
    UserName = InputBox("Enter Your Name: ")
    If UserName <> "Steve Ballmer" Then GoTo WrongName
    MsgBox ("Welcome Steve...")
    ' ... [More code here] ...
    Exit Sub
WrongName:
    MsgBox "Sorry. Only Steve Ballmer can run this."
End Sub
```

The procedure uses the InputBox function to get the user's name. Then a decision is made: If the user enters a name other than Steve Ballmer, the program flow jumps to the WrongName label, displays an apologetic message, and the procedure ends. On the other hand, if Mr. Ballmer runs this macro and uses his real name, the procedure displays a welcome message and then executes some additional code (not shown in the example).

Notice that the Exit Sub statement ends the procedure before the second MsgBox function has a chance to work. Without that Exit Sub statement, both MsgBox statements would be executed.



## What is structured programming? Does it matter?

If you hang around with programmers, sooner or later you hear the term *structured programming*. This term has been around for decades, and programmers generally agree that structured programs are superior to unstructured programs. So, what is structured programming? And can you do that using VBA?

The basic premise of structured programming is that a routine or code segment should have only one entry point and one exit point. In other words, a block of code should be a stand-alone unit. A program cannot jump into the middle of this unit, nor can it exit at any point except the single exit point. When you write structured code, your program progresses in an orderly

manner and is easy to follow — unlike a program that jumps around in a haphazard fashion. This pretty much rules out using the GoTo statement.

In general, a structured program is easier to read and understand. More important, it's also easier to modify when the need arises.

VBA is indeed a structured language. It offers standard structured constructs such as If-Then-Else, For-Next loops, Do-Until loops, Do-While loops, and Select Case structures. Furthermore, it fully supports module code constructions. If you're new to programming, you should try to develop good structure-programming habits early on. End of lecture.

This simple routine works, but VBA provides several better (and more structured) alternatives than GoTo. In general, you should use GoTo only when you have no other way to perform an action. In real life, the only time you must use a GoTo statement is for trapping errors. (I cover this in Chapter 12.)

By the way, I present the CheckUser procedure to demonstrate the GoTo statement. It is not intended to demonstrate an effective security technique!



Many hard-core programming types have a deep-seated hatred for GoTo statements because using them tends to result in difficult-to-read (and difficult-to-maintain) "spaghetti code." Therefore, you should never admit that you use GoTo statements when talking with other programmers.

## Decisions, Decisions

As in many other aspects of life, effective decision-making is the key to success in writing Excel macros. If this book has the effect I intend, you'll soon share my philosophy that a successful Excel application boils down to making decisions and acting upon them.

In this section, I discuss two programming structures that can empower your VBA procedures with some impressive decision-making capabilities: If-Then and Select Case.

## The If-Then structure

Okay, I'll come right out and say it: If-Then is VBA's most important control structure. You'll probably use this command on a daily basis (at least I do).

Use the If-Then structure when you want to execute one or more statements conditionally. The optional Else clause, if included, lets you execute one or more statements if the condition you're testing is *not* true. Here's the simple CheckUser procedure I presented earlier, recoded to use the If-Then-Else structure:

```
Sub CheckUser2()
    UserName = InputBox("Enter Your Name: ")
    If UserName = "Steve Ballmer" Then
        MsgBox ("Welcome Steve...")
        ' ...[More code here] ...
    Else
        MsgBox "Sorry. Only Steve Ballmer can run this."
    End If
End Sub
```

You would probably agree that this version is much easier to follow.



A workbook that contains this section's examples can be downloaded from this book's website.

### If-Then examples

The following routine demonstrates the If-Then structure without the optional Else clause:

```
Sub GreetMe()
    If Time < 0.5 Then MsgBox "Good Morning"
End Sub
```

The GreetMe procedure uses VBA's Time function to get the system time. If the current time is less than .5 (in other words, before noon), the routine displays a friendly greeting. If Time is greater than or equal to .5, the routine ends and nothing happens.

To display a different greeting if Time is greater than or equal to .5, you can add another If-Then statement after the first one:

```
Sub GreetMe2()
    If Time < 0.5 Then MsgBox "Good Morning"
    If Time >= 0.5 Then MsgBox "Good Afternoon"
End Sub
```

Notice that I used `>=` (greater than or equal to) for the second If-Then statement. This ensures that the entire day is covered. Had I used `>` (greater than), then no message would appear if this procedure were executed at precisely 12:00 noon. That's pretty unlikely, but with an important program like this, we don't want to take any chances.

### An If-Then-Else example

Another approach to the preceding problem uses the Else clause. Here's the same routine recoded to use the If-Then-Else structure:

```
Sub GreetMe3()
    If Time < 0.5 Then MsgBox "Good Morning" Else _
        MsgBox "Good Afternoon"
End Sub
```

Notice that I use the line continuation character (underscore) in the preceding example. The If-Then-Else statement is actually a single statement. VBA provides a slightly different way of coding If-Then-Else constructs that use an End If statement. Therefore, the GreetMe procedure can be rewritten as

```
Sub GreetMe4()
    If Time < 0.5 Then
        MsgBox "Good Morning"
    Else
        MsgBox "Good Afternoon"
    End If
End Sub
```

In fact, you can insert any number of statements under the If part, and any number of statements under the Else part. I prefer to use this syntax because it's easier to read and makes the statements shorter.

What if you need to expand the GreetMe routine to handle three conditions: morning, afternoon, and evening? You have two options: Use three If-Then statements or use a *nested* If-Then-Else structure. *Nesting* means placing an If-Then-Else structure within another If-Then-Else structure. The first approach, using three If-Then statements, is simplest:

```
Sub GreetMe5()
    Dim Msg As String
    If Time < 0.5 Then Msg = "Morning"
    If Time >= 0.5 And Time < 0.75 Then Msg = "Afternoon"
    If Time >= 0.75 Then Msg = "Evening"
    MsgBox "Good " & Msg
End Sub
```

I added a new twist by using a variable. The `Msg` variable gets a different text value, depending on the time of day. The `MsgBox` statement displays the greeting: Good Morning, Good Afternoon, or Good Evening.

The following routine performs the same action but uses an If-Then-End If structure:

```
Sub GreetMe6()
    Dim Msg As String
    If Time < 0.5 Then
        Msg = "Morning"
    End If
    If Time >= 0.5 And Time < 0.75 Then
        Msg = "Afternoon"
    End If
    If Time >= 0.75 Then
        Msg = "Evening"
    End If
    MsgBox "Good " & Msg
End Sub
```

### ***Using ElseIf***

In the previous examples, every statement in the routine is executed — even in the morning. A slightly more efficient structure would exit the routine as soon as a condition is found to be true. In the morning, for example, the procedure should display the Good Morning message and then exit — without evaluating the other superfluous conditions.

With a tiny routine like this, you don't have to worry about execution speed. But for larger applications in which speed is critical, you should know about another syntax for the If-Then structure.

Here's how you can rewrite the `GreetMe` routine by using this syntax:

```
Sub GreetMe7()
    Dim Msg As String
    If Time < 0.5 Then
        Msg = "Morning"
    ElseIf Time >= 0.5 And Time < 0.75 Then
        Msg = "Afternoon"
    Else
        Msg = "Evening"
    End If
    MsgBox "Good " & Msg
End Sub
```

When a condition is true, VBA executes the conditional statements, and the If structure ends. In other words, VBA doesn't waste time evaluating the extraneous conditions, which makes this procedure a bit more efficient than the previous examples. The trade-off (there are always trade-offs) is that the code is more difficult to understand. (Of course, you already knew that.)

### Another If-Then example

Here's another example that uses the simple form of the If-Then structure. This procedure prompts the user for a quantity and then displays the appropriate discount, based on the quantity the user enters:

```
Sub ShowDiscount()
    Dim Quantity As Integer
    Dim Discount As Double
    Quantity = InputBox("Enter Quantity:")
    If Quantity > 0 Then Discount = 0.1
    If Quantity >= 25 Then Discount = 0.15
    If Quantity >= 50 Then Discount = 0.2
    If Quantity >= 75 Then Discount = 0.25
    MsgBox "Discount: " & Discount
End Sub
```

Notice that each If-Then statement in this routine is executed, and the value for Discount can change as the statements are executed. However, the routine ultimately displays the correct value for Discount because I put the If-Then statements in order of ascending Discount values.

The following procedure performs the same tasks by using the alternative ElseIf syntax. In this case, the routine ends immediately after executing the statements for a true condition.

```
Sub ShowDiscount2()
    Dim Quantity As Integer
    Dim Discount As Double
    Quantity = InputBox("Enter Quantity: ")
    If Quantity > 0 And Quantity < 25 Then
        Discount = 0.1
    ElseIf Quantity >= 25 And Quantity < 50 Then
        Discount = 0.15
    ElseIf Quantity >= 50 And Quantity < 75 Then
        Discount = 0.2
    ElseIf Quantity >= 75 Then
        Discount = 0.25
    End If
    MsgBox "Discount: " & Discount
End Sub
```

Personally, I find these multiple If-Then structures rather cumbersome. I generally use the If-Then structure for only simple binary decisions. When a decision involves three or more choices, the Select Case structure offers a simpler, more efficient approach.



## The Select Case structure

The Select Case structure is useful for decisions involving three or more options (although it also works with two options, providing an alternative to the If-Then-Else structure).

The examples in this section are available at this book's website.

### A Select Case example

The following example shows how to use the Select Case structure. This also shows another way to code the examples presented in the previous section:

```
Sub ShowDiscount3()
    Dim Quantity As Integer
    Dim Discount As Double
    Quantity = InputBox("Enter Quantity: ")
    Select Case Quantity
        Case 0 To 24
            Discount = 0.1
        Case 25 To 49
            Discount = 0.15
        Case 50 To 74
            Discount = 0.2
        Case Is >= 75
            Discount = 0.25
    End Select
    MsgBox "Discount: " & Discount
End Sub
```

In this example, the Quantity variable is being evaluated. The routine checks for four different cases (0–24, 25–49, 50–74, and 75 or greater).

Any number of statements can follow each Case statement, and they all are executed if the case is true. If you use only one statement, as in this example, you can put the statement on the same line as the Case keyword, preceded by a colon — the VBA statement separator character. In my opinion, this makes the code more compact and a bit clearer. Here's how the routine looks, using this format:

```
Sub ShowDiscount4 ()
    Dim Quantity As Integer
    Dim Discount As Double
    Quantity = InputBox("Enter Quantity: ")
    Select Case Quantity
        Case 0 To 24: Discount = 0.1
        Case 25 To 49: Discount = 0.15
        Case 50 To 74: Discount = 0.2
        Case Is >= 75: Discount = 0.25
    End Select
    MsgBox "Discount: " & Discount
End Sub
```

When VBA executes a Select Case structure, the structure is exited as soon as VBA finds a true case and executes the statements for that case.

### *A nested Select Case example*

As demonstrated in the following example, you can nest Select Case structures. This routine examines the active cell and displays a message describing the cell's contents. Notice that the procedure has three Select Case structures, and each has its own End Select statement.

```
Sub CheckCell()
    Dim Msg As String
    Select Case IsEmpty(ActiveCell)
        Case True
            Msg = "is blank."
        Case Else
            Select Case ActiveCell.HasFormula
                Case True
                    Msg = "has a formula"
                Case Else
                    Select Case IsNumeric(ActiveCell)
                        Case True
                            Msg = "has a number"
                        Case Else
                            Msg = "has text"
                    End Select
                End Select
            End Select
            MsgBox "Cell " & ActiveCell.Address & " " & Msg
    End Sub
```

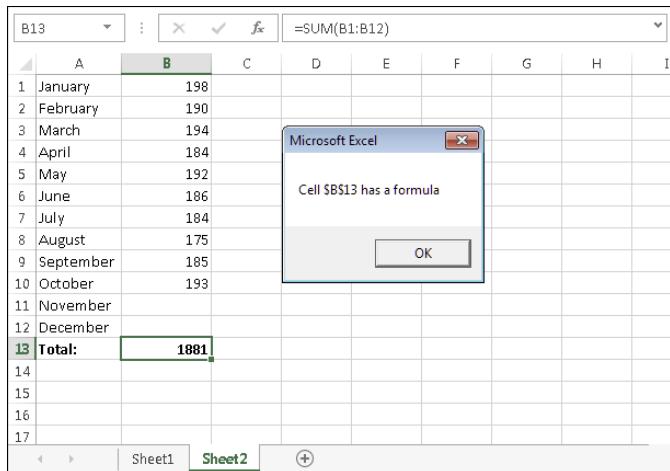
The logic goes something like this:

- 1. Find out whether the cell is empty.**
- 2. If it's not empty, see whether it contains a formula.**
- 3. If there's no formula, find out whether it contains a numeric value or text.**

When the routine ends, the `Msg` variable contains a string that describes the cell's contents. As shown in Figure 10-1, the `MsgBox` function displays that message.

You can nest Select Case structures as deeply as you need to, but make sure that each Select Case statement has a corresponding End Select statement.

**Figure 10-1:**  
A message  
displayed  
by the  
CheckCell  
procedure.



A screenshot of Microsoft Excel. The active cell is B13, which contains the formula =SUM(B1:B12). The formula bar also shows =SUM(B1:B12). The table below shows monthly data from January to December. Cell B13 contains the value 1881. A message box titled "Microsoft Excel" is displayed, stating "Cell \$B\$13 has a formula".

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1 January	198							
2 February	190							
3 March	194							
4 April	184							
5 May	192							
6 June	186							
7 July	184							
8 August	175							
9 September	185							
10 October	193							
11 November								
12 December								
13 Total:	1881							
14								
15								
16								
17								



If you're still not convinced that indenting code is worth the effort, the previous listing serves as a good example. The indentations really help to make the nesting levels clear (at least I think so). If you don't believe me, take a look at the same procedure without any indentation:

```
Sub CheckCell()
Dim Msg As String
Select Case IsEmpty(ActiveCell)
Case True
Msg = "is blank."
Case Else
Select Case ActiveCell.HasFormula
Case True
Msg = "has a formula"
Case Else
Select Case IsNumeric(ActiveCell)
Case True
Msg = "has a number"
Case Else
Msg = "has text"
End Select
End Select
End Select
MsgBox "Cell " & ActiveCell.Address & " " & Msg
End Sub
```

Fairly incomprehensible, eh?

## Knocking Your Code for a Loop

The term *looping* refers to repeating a block of VBA statements numerous times. Why use loops? I can think of a few reasons. Your code can . . .

- ✓ Loop through a range of cells, working with each cell individually.
- ✓ Loop through all open workbooks (the Workbooks collection) and do something with each one.
- ✓ Loop through all worksheets in a workbook (the Worksheets collection) and do something with each one.
- ✓ Loop through all the elements in an array.
- ✓ Loop through all characters in a cell.
- ✓ Loop through all charts on a worksheet (the ChartObjects collection) and do something with each chart.
- ✓ Loop through other things that I haven't thought of.

VBA supports several types of loops, and the examples that follow demonstrate a few ways that you can use them.



### For-Next loops

The examples in this section are all available at this book's website.

The simplest type of loop is a For-Next loop. The looping is controlled by a counter variable, which starts at one value and stops at another value. The statements between the For statement and the Next statement are the statements that get repeated in the loop. To see how this works, keep reading.

#### A For-Next example

The following example uses a For-Next loop to sum the first 1,000 positive integers. The Total variable starts out as zero. Then the looping occurs. The variable Cnt is the loop counter. It starts out as 1 and is incremented by 1 each time through the loop. The loop ends when Cnt is 1,000.

This example has only one statement inside of the loop. This statement adds the value of Cnt to the Total variable. When the loop finishes, a MsgBox displays the summed integers.

```
Sub AddNumbers()
    Dim Total As Double
    Dim Cnt As Integer
    Total = 0
    For Cnt = 1 To 1000
        Total = Total + Cnt
    Next Cnt
    MsgBox Total
End Sub
```



Because the loop counter is a normal variable, you can write code to change its value within the block of code between the For and the Next statements. This, however, is a *very bad* practice. Changing the counter within the loop can have unpredictable results. Take special precautions to ensure that your code does not change the value of the loop counter.

### **For-Next examples with a Step**

You can use a Step value to skip some counter values in a For-Next loop. Here's the previous example, rewritten to sum only the odd integers between 1 and 1,000:

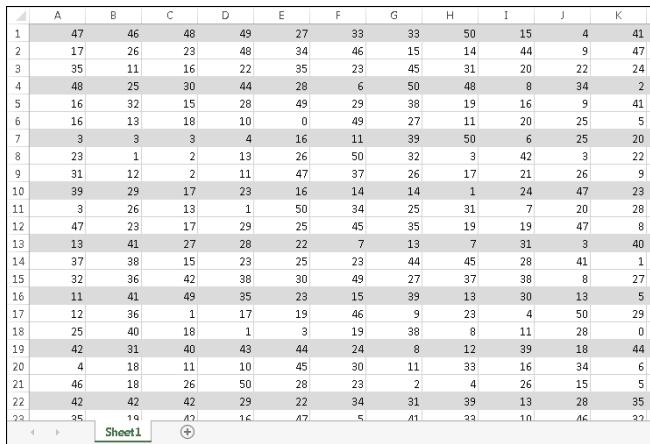
```
Sub AddOddNumbers()
    Dim Total As Double
    Dim Cnt As Integer
    Total = 0
    For Cnt = 1 To 1000 Step 2
        Total = Total + Cnt
    Next Cnt
    MsgBox Total
End Sub
```

This time, Cnt starts out as 1 and then takes on values of 3, 5, 7, and so on. The Step value determines how the counter is incremented. Notice that the upper loop value (1000) is not actually used because the highest value of Cnt will be 999.

Here's another example that uses a Step value of 3. This procedure works with the active sheet, and applies light gray shading to every third row, from row 1 to row 100.

```
Sub ShadeEveryThirdRow()
    Dim i As Long
    For i = 1 To 100 Step 3
        Rows(i).Interior.Color = RGB(200, 200, 200)
    Next i
End Sub
```

Figure 10-2 shows the result of running this macro.



	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	47	46	48	49	27	33	33	50	15	4	41
2	17	26	23	48	34	46	15	14	44	9	47
3	35	11	16	22	35	23	45	31	20	22	24
4	48	25	30	44	28	6	50	48	8	34	2
5	16	32	15	28	49	29	38	19	16	9	41
6	16	13	18	10	0	49	27	11	20	25	5
7	3	3	3	4	16	11	39	50	6	25	20
8	23	1	2	13	26	50	32	3	42	3	22
9	31	12	2	11	47	37	26	17	21	26	9
10	39	29	17	23	16	14	14	1	24	47	23
11	3	26	13	1	50	34	25	31	7	20	28
12	47	23	17	29	25	45	35	19	19	47	8
13	13	41	27	28	22	7	13	7	31	3	40
14	37	38	15	23	25	23	44	45	28	41	1
15	32	36	42	38	30	49	27	37	38	8	27
16	11	41	49	35	23	15	39	13	30	13	5
17	12	36	1	17	19	46	9	23	4	50	29
18	25	40	18	1	3	19	38	8	11	28	0
19	42	31	40	43	44	24	8	12	39	18	44
20	4	18	11	10	45	30	11	33	16	34	6
21	46	18	26	50	28	23	2	4	26	15	5
22	42	42	42	29	22	34	31	39	13	28	35
23	26	14	47	16	47	5	41	32	10	46	22

**Figure 10-2:**  
Using a loop  
to apply  
background  
shading to  
rows.

### *A For-Next example with an Exit For statement*

A For-Next loop can also include one or more Exit For statements within the loop. When VBA encounters this statement, the loop terminates immediately.

The following example, available on the book’s website, demonstrates the Exit For statement. This routine is a Function procedure, intended to be used in a worksheet formula. The function accepts one argument (a variable named Str) and returns the characters to the left of the first numeric digit. For example, if the argument is “KBR98Z,” the function returns “KBR.”

```
Function TextPart(Str)
    TextPart = ""
    For i = 1 To Len(Str)
        If IsNumeric(Mid(Str, i, 1)) Then
            Exit For
        Else
            TextPart = TextPart & Mid(Str, i, 1)
        End If
    Next i
End Function
```

The For-Next loop starts with 1 and ends with the number that represents the number of characters in the string. The code uses VBA’s Mid function to extract a single character within the loop. If a numeric character is found, the Exit For statement is executed, and the loop ends prematurely. If the character is not numeric, it is appended to the returned value (which is the same as the function’s name). The only time the loop will examine every character is if the string passed as the argument contains no numeric characters.

## How fast are loops?

You might be curious about how fast VBA can run through If-Then loops. Do some systems run code significantly faster than others? A few years ago, I posted the following VBA procedure at my website and asked others to post their result.

```
Sub TimeTest()
    '100 million random numbers, tests, and math operations
    Dim x As Long
    Dim StartTime As Single
    Dim i As Long
    x = 0
    StartTime = Timer
    For i = 1 To 100000000
        If Rnd <= 0.5 Then x = x + 1 Else x = x - 1
    Next i
    MsgBox Timer - StartTime & " seconds"
End Sub
```

The code loops 100 million times and performs some operations inside the loop: It generates a random number, does an If-Then comparison, and performs a mathematical operation. When the loop is finished, the elapsed time is displayed in a message box. My system ran through this loop in 8.03 seconds. About 150 others posted their results, and times ranged from about 2 seconds up to about 30 seconds. In other words, some computers are about 15 times faster than others. That's good to know.

You can download a workbook that contains this code from this book's website.

But the real question is, *how long would it take me to do this task manually?* I wrote 0 on a piece of paper, and I flipped a coin. If it came up heads, I added one to my tally. If it came up tails, I subtracted 1. I did this ten times, and it took me 42 seconds. So, one time through my “loop” took 4.2 seconds. Using this information, I calculated that it would take me 13.3 years to perform this task 100 million times — but only if I work nonstop. The conclusion: My computer is about 52.3 million times faster than I am.

	A	B	C	D
1	<b>Computer's Time:</b>			
2	Time to execute 100 million loops:	8.03	seconds	
3	Time to execute 1 loop:	8.03E-08	seconds	
4				
5	<b>Your Estimated Time:</b>			
6	Time to do one loop manually:	4.2	seconds	
7	Time to do 100 million loops manually:	420,000,000	seconds	
8		7,000,000	minutes	
9		116,667	hours	
10		4,861	days	
11		13.3	years	
12				
13	<b>Conclusion:</b>			
14	Your computer is about	52,303,861	times faster than you	
15				
16				

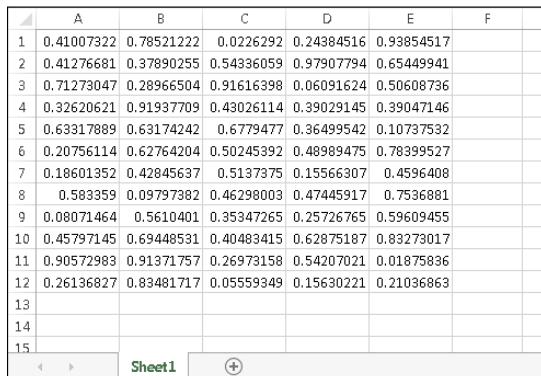
Now you might shout, “Hey, but you said something about always using a single point of exit!” Well, you’re right, and obviously you’re getting the hang of this structured programming business. But in some cases, ignoring that rule is a wise decision. In this example, it will greatly speed up your code because there’s no reason to continue the loop after the first numeric digit is found.

### *A nested For-Next example*

So far, all this chapter’s examples use relatively simple loops. However, you can have any number of statements in the loop and nest For-Next loops inside other For-Next loops.

The following example uses a nested For-Next loop to insert random numbers into a 12-row-x-5-column range of cells, as shown in Figure 10-3. Notice that the routine executes the *inner loop* (the loop with the Row counter) once for each iteration of the *outer loop* (the loop with the Col counter). In other words, the routine executes the Cells(Row, Col) = Rnd statement 60 times.

```
Sub FillRange()
    Dim Col As Long
    Dim Row As Long
    For Col = 1 To 5
        For Row = 1 To 12
            Cells(Row, Col) = Rnd
        Next Row
    Next Col
End Sub
```



The screenshot shows a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet with a grid of 12 rows and 5 columns. The columns are labeled A through F at the top. The first few rows of data are as follows:

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	0.41007322	0.79521222	0.0226292	0.24384516	0.93854517	
2	0.41276681	0.37890255	0.54336059	0.97907794	0.65444941	
3	0.71273047	0.28966504	0.91616398	0.06091624	0.50608736	
4	0.32620621	0.91937709	0.43026114	0.39029145	0.39047146	
5	0.63317889	0.63174242	0.6779477	0.36499542	0.10737532	
6	0.20756114	0.62764204	0.50245392	0.48989475	0.78399527	
7	0.18601352	0.42845637	0.5137375	0.15566307	0.4596408	
8	0.583359	0.09797382	0.46298003	0.474445917	0.7536881	
9	0.08071464	0.5610401	0.35347265	0.25726765	0.59609455	
10	0.45797145	0.69448531	0.40483415	0.62875187	0.83273017	
11	0.90572983	0.91371757	0.26973158	0.54207021	0.01875836	
12	0.26136827	0.83481717	0.05559349	0.15630221	0.21036863	
13						
14						
15						

At the bottom of the screen, the status bar shows "Sheet1" and a small icon.

**Figure 10-3:**  
These cells  
were filled  
by using a  
nested For-  
Next loop.

The next example uses nested For-Next loops to initialize a three-dimensional array with the value 100. This routine executes the statement in the middle of all the loops (the assignment statement) 1,000 times ( $10 * 10 * 10$ ), each time with a different combination of values for i, j, and k:

```
Sub NestedLoops()
    Dim MyArray(10, 10, 10)
    Dim i As Integer
    Dim j As Integer
    Dim k As Integer
    For i = 1 To 10
        For j = 1 To 10
            For k = 1 To 10
                MyArray(i, j, k) = 100
            Next k
        Next j
    Next i
    ' Other statements go here
End Sub
```

Refer to Chapter 7 for information about arrays.

Here's a final example that uses nested For-Next loops, with a Step value. This procedure creates a checkerboard (or chessboard, if you prefer) by changing the background color of alternating cells. See Figure 10-4.

**Figure 10-4:**  
Using loops  
to create  
a checker-  
board  
pattern.

A screenshot of a Microsoft Excel spreadsheet showing a 10x10 grid of cells. The columns are labeled A through J at the top, and the rows are labeled 1 through 11 on the left. The cells alternate between red and white, creating a clear checkerboard pattern. The first cell (A1) is red, followed by white (B1), red (C1), white (D1), red (E1), white (F1), red (G1), white (H1), and red (I1). The pattern continues through row 10 and ends at cell (J11).

The Row counter loops from 1 to 8. An If-Then construct determines which nested For-Next structure to use. For odd-numbered rows, the Col counter begins with 2. For even-numbered rows, the Col counter begins with 1. Both loops use a Step value of 2, so alternate cells are affected.

```
Sub MakeCheckerboard()
    Dim Row As Integer, Col As Integer
    For Row = 1 To 8
        If WorksheetFunction.IsOdd(Row) Then
            For Col = 2 To 8 Step 2
                Cells(Row, Col).Interior.Color = 255
            Next Col
        Else
            For Col = 1 To 8 Step 2
                Cells(Row, Col).Interior.Color = 255
            Next Col
        End If
    Next Row
End Sub
```

## *Do-While loop*

VBA supports another type of looping structure known as a Do-While loop. Unlike a For-Next loop, a Do-While loop continues until a specified condition is met.

The following example uses a Do-While loop. This routine uses the active cell as a starting point and then travels down the column, multiplying each cell's value by 2. The loop continues until the routine encounters an empty cell.

```
Sub DoWhileDemo()
    Do While ActiveCell.Value <> Empty
        ActiveCell.Value = ActiveCell.Value * 2
        ActiveCell.Offset(1, 0).Select
    Loop
End Sub
```

## *Do-Until loop*

The Do-Until loop structure is similar to the Do-While structure. The two structures differ in their handling of the tested condition. A program continues to execute a Do-While loop *while* the condition remains true. In a Do-Until loop, the program executes the loop *until* the condition is true.

The following example is the same one presented for the Do-While loop but recoded to use a Do-Until loop:

```
Sub DoUntilDemo()
    Do Until IsEmpty(ActiveCell.Value)
        ActiveCell.Value = ActiveCell.Value * 2
        ActiveCell.Offset(1, 0).Select
    Loop
End Sub
```

## Using For Each-Next Loops With Collections

VBA supports yet another type of looping — looping through each object in a collection of objects. Recall that a collection consists of a number of objects of the same type. For example, Excel has a collection of all open workbooks (the Workbooks collection), and each workbook has a collection of worksheets (the Worksheets collection).



The examples in this section are all available at this book's website.

When you need to loop through each object in a collection, use the For Each-Next structure. The following example loops through each worksheet in the active workbook and deletes the worksheet if it's empty:

```
Sub DeleteEmptySheets()
    Dim WkSht As Worksheet
    Application.DisplayAlerts = False
    For Each WkSht In ActiveWorkbook.Worksheets
        If WorksheetFunction.CountA(WkSht.Cells) = 0 Then
            WkSht.Delete
        End If
    Next WkSht
    Application.DisplayAlerts = True
End Sub
```

In this example, the variable WkSht is an object variable that represents each worksheet in the workbook. Nothing is special about the variable name WkSht — you can use any variable name that you like.

The code loops through each worksheet and determines an empty sheet by counting the nonblank cells. If that count is zero, the sheet is empty, and it's deleted. Notice that I turn off the DisplayAlerts setting while the loop is doing its thing. Without that statement, Excel pops up a warning every time a sheet is about to be deleted.

Here's another For Each-Next example. This procedure uses a loop to hide all worksheets in the active workbook, except the active sheet.

```
Sub HideSheets()
    Dim Sht As Worksheet
    For Each Sht In ActiveWorkbook.Worksheets
        If Sht.Name <> ActiveSheet.Name Then
            Sht.Visible = xlSheetHidden
        End If
    Next Sht
End Sub
```

The HideSheets procedure checks the sheet name. If it's not the same as the active sheet's name, then the sheet is hidden. Notice that the Visible property isn't Boolean. This property can actually take on any of *three* values, and Excel provides three built-in constants. If you're curious about the third possibility, check the Help system.

What gets hidden must eventually get unhidden, so here's a macro that unhides all worksheets in the active workbook:

```
Sub UnhideSheets()
    Dim Sht As Worksheet
    For Each Sht In ActiveWorkbook.Worksheets
        Sht.Visible = xlSheetVisible
    Next Sht
End Sub
```

Not surprisingly, you can create nested For Each-Next loops. The CountBold procedure loops through every cell in the used range on each worksheet in every open workbook and displays a count of the number of cells that are formatted as bold:

```
Sub CountBold()
    Dim WBook As Workbook
    Dim WSheet As Worksheet
    Dim Cell As Range
    Dim cnt As Long
    For Each WBook In Workbooks
        For Each WSheet In WBook.Worksheets
            For Each Cell In WSheet.UsedRange
                If Cell.Font.Bold = True Then cnt = cnt + 1
            Next Cell
        Next WSheet
    Next WBook
    MsgBox cnt & " bold cells found"
End Sub
```



## Chapter 11

# Automatic Procedures and Events

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Knowing the event types that can trigger an execution
- ▶ Finding out where to place your event-handler VBA code
- ▶ Executing a macro when a workbook is opened or closed
- ▶ Executing a macro when a workbook or worksheet is activated

**J**

You have a number of ways to execute a VBA Sub procedure. One way is to arrange for the Sub to be executed automatically. In this chapter, I cover the ins and outs of this potentially useful feature, explaining how to set things up so that a macro is executed automatically when a particular event occurs. (No, this chapter is not about capital punishment.)

## *Preparing for the Big Event*

What types of events am I talking about here? Good question. An *event* is basically something that happens in Excel. Following are a few examples of the types of events that Excel can recognize:

- ✓ A workbook is opened or closed.
- ✓ A window is activated or deactivated.
- ✓ A worksheet is activated or deactivated.
- ✓ Data is entered into a cell or the cell is edited.
- ✓ A workbook is saved.
- ✓ An object, such as a button, is clicked.
- ✓ A particular key or key combination is pressed.
- ✓ A particular time of day occurs.
- ✓ An error occurs.

Most Excel programmers never need to worry about most of the events in this list. You should, however, at least know that these events exist because

they may come in handy someday. In this chapter, I discuss the most commonly used events. To simplify things, I talk about two types of events: workbook events and worksheet events.

Table 11-1 lists some of the more useful workbook-related events. If, for some reason, you need to see the complete list of workbook-related events, you'll find it in the Help system.

**Table 11-1****Workbook Events**

<b>Event</b>	<b><i>When It's Triggered</i></b>
Activate	The workbook is activated.
BeforeClose	The workbook is closed.
BeforePrint	The workbook is printed.
BeforeSave	The workbook is saved.
Deactivate	The workbook is deactivated.
NewSheet	A new sheet is added to the workbook.
Open	The workbook is opened.
SheetActivate	A sheet in the workbook is activated.
SheetBeforeDoubleClick	A cell in the workbook is double-clicked.
SheetBeforeRightClick	A cell in the workbook is right-clicked.
SheetChange	A change is made to a cell in the workbook.
SheetDeactivate	A sheet in the workbook is deactivated.
SheetSelectionChange	The selection is changed.
WindowActivate	The workbook window is activated.
WindowDeactivate	The workbook window is deactivated.

Table 11-2 lists some useful worksheet-related events.

**Table 11-2****Worksheet Events**

<b>Event</b>	<b><i>When It's Triggered</i></b>
Activate	The worksheet is activated.
BeforeDoubleClick	A cell in the worksheet is double-clicked.
BeforeRightClick	A cell in the worksheet is right-clicked.
Change	A change is made to a cell in the worksheet.
Deactivate	The worksheet is deactivated.
SelectionChange	The selection is changed.

## Are events useful?

At this point, you may be wondering how these events can be useful. Here's a quick example.

Suppose you have a workbook in which you enter values in column A. Your boss, a very compulsive person, tells you that he needs to know exactly when each number was entered. Entering data is an event: a WorksheetChange event. You can write a macro that responds to this event. That macro kicks in whenever the worksheet is changed. If the change was made in column A, the macro puts the date and time in column B, next to the data point that was entered.

In case you're curious, here's what such a macro would look like. Probably a lot simpler than you thought it would be, eh?

```
Private Sub Worksheet_Change(ByVal Target As Range)
    If Target.Column = 1 Then
        Target.Offset(0, 1) = Now
    End If
End Sub
```

By the way, macros that respond to events are very picky about where they are stored. For example, this Worksheet\_Change macro *must* be in the Code module for that worksheet. Put it somewhere else, and it won't work. More about this later (see "Where Does the VBA Code Go?").



Just because your workbook contains procedures that respond to events doesn't guarantee that those procedures will actually run. As you know, it's possible to open a workbook with macros disabled. In such a case, all macros (even procedures that respond to events) are turned off. Keep this fact in mind when you create workbooks that rely on event-handler procedures.

## Programming event-handler procedures

A VBA procedure that executes in response to an event is called an *event-handler procedure*. These are always Sub procedures (as opposed to Function procedures). Writing these event-handlers is relatively straightforward after you understand how the process works.

Creating event-handler procedures boils down to a few steps:

- 1. Identify the event you want to trigger the procedure.**
- 2. Press Alt+F11 to activate the Visual Basic Editor.**
- 3. In the VBE Project Window, double-click the appropriate object listed under Microsoft Excel Objects.**

For workbook-related events, the object is ThisWorkbook. For a worksheet-related event, the object is a Worksheet object (such as Sheet1).

**4. In the Code window for the object, write the event-handler procedure that is executed when the event occurs.**

This procedure will have a special name that identifies it as an event-handler procedure.

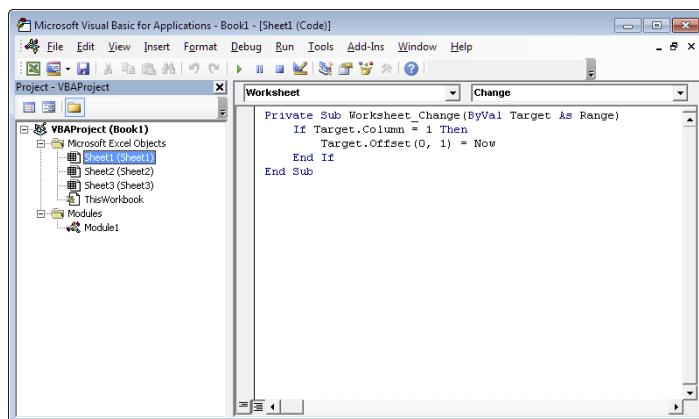
These steps become clearer as you progress through the chapter. Trust me.

## Where Does the VBA Code Go?

It's very important to understand where your event-handler procedures go. They must reside in the Code window of an Object module. They do not go in a standard VBA module. If you put your event-handler procedure in the wrong place, it simply won't work. And you won't see any error messages either.

Figure 11-1 shows the VBE window with one project displayed in the Project window. (Refer to Chapter 3 for some background on the VBE.) Notice that the VBA project for Book1 is fully expanded and consists of several objects:

- ✓ One object for each worksheet in the workbook (in this case, three Sheet objects)
- ✓ An object labeled ThisWorkbook
- ✓ A VBA module that I inserted manually by using the Insert→Module command



**Figure 11-1:**  
The Project window displays items for a single project.

Double-clicking any of these objects displays the code associated with the item, if any.

The event-handler procedures that you write go into the Code window for the ThisWorkbook item (for workbook-related events) or one of the Sheet objects (for worksheet-related events).

In Figure 11-1, the Code window for the Sheet1 object is displayed, and it happens to have a single event-handler procedure defined. Notice the two drop-down controls at the top of the Code module? Keep reading to find out why those are useful.

## *Writing an Event-Handler Procedure*

The VBE helps you out when you're ready to write an event-handler procedure; it displays a list of all events for the selected object.

At the top of each Code window, you find two drop-down lists:

- ❑ The Object drop-down list (the one on the left)
- ❑ The Procedure drop-down list (the one on the right)

By default, the Object drop-down list in the Code window displays General.

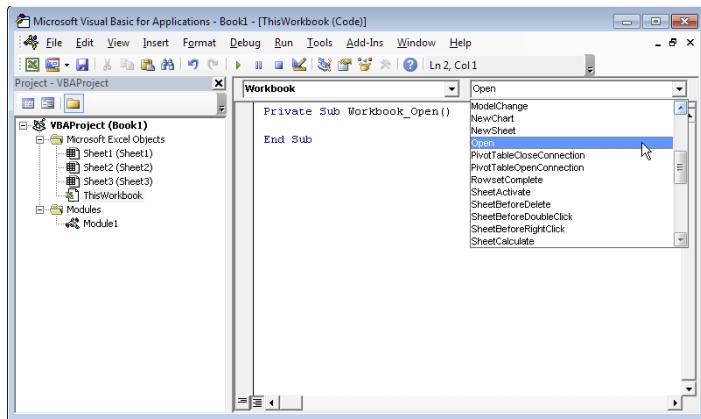
If you're writing an event-handler for the ThisWorkbook object, you need to click ThisWorkbook in the Project window and then choose Workbook from the Object drop-down (it's the only other choice).

If you're writing an event-handler for a Sheet object, you need to click the specific Sheet in the Project window and then choose Worksheet from the Object drop-down (again, the only other choice).

After you've made your choice from the Object drop-down list, then you can choose the event from the Procedure drop-down list. Figure 11-2 shows some of the choices for a workbook-related event.

When you select an event from the list, VBE automatically starts creating an event-handler procedure for you. This is a very useful feature, because it tells you exactly what the proper arguments are.

Here's a little quirk. When you first select Workbook from the Object list, VBE always assumes that you want to create an event-handler procedure for the Open event and creates it for you. If you're actually creating a Workbook\_Open procedure, that's fine. But if you're creating a different event-procedure, you need to delete the empty Workbook\_Open Sub that was created.



**Figure 11-2:**  
Choosing  
an event  
in the Code  
window for  
the This-  
Workbook  
object.

VBE's help goes only so far, however. It writes the Sub statement and the End Sub statement. Writing the VBA code that goes between these two statements is your job.



You don't really have to use those two drop-downs, but it makes your job easier because the name of the event-handler procedure is critically important. If you don't get the name exactly right, it won't work. Plus, some event-handler procedures use one or more arguments in the Sub statement. There's no way you can remember what those arguments are. For example, if you select SheetActivate from the event list for a Workbook object, VBE writes the following Sub statement:

```
Private Sub Workbook_SheetActivate(ByVal Sh As Object)
```

In this case, Sh is the argument passed to the procedure and is a variable that represents the sheet in the activated workbook. Examples in this chapter clarify this point.

## Introductory Examples

In this section, I provide a few examples so that you can get the hang of this event-handling business.

### The Open event for a workbook

One of the most commonly used events is the Workbook Open event. Assume that you have a workbook that you use every day. The Workbook\_Open procedure in this example is executed every time the workbook is opened.

The procedure checks the day of the week; if it's Friday, the code displays a reminder message for you.

To create the procedure that is executed whenever the Workbook Open event occurs, follow these steps:

**1. Open the workbook.**

Any workbook will do.

**2. Press Alt+F11 to activate the VBE.**

**3. Locate the workbook in the Project window.**

**4. Double-click the project name to display its items, if necessary.**

**5. Double-click the ThisWorkbook item.**

The VBE displays an empty Code window for the ThisWorkbook object.

**6. In the Code window, select Workbook from the Object (left) drop-down list.**

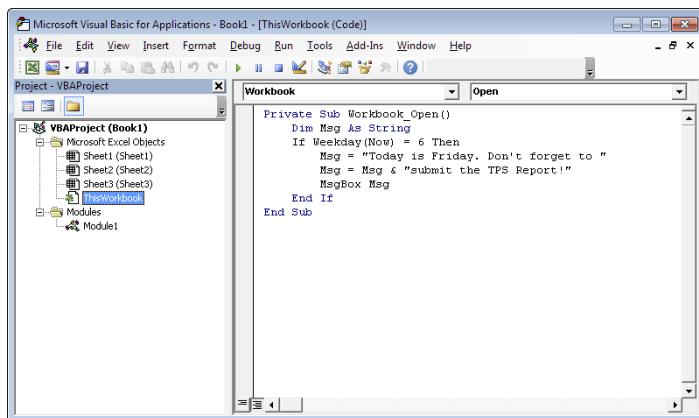
The VBE enters the beginning and ending statements for a Workbook\_Open procedure.

**7. Enter the following statements, so the complete event-procedure looks like this:**

```
Private Sub Workbook_Open()
    Dim Msg As String
    If Weekday(Now) = 6 Then
        Msg = "Today is Friday. Don't forget to "
        Msg = Msg & "submit the TPS Report!"
        MsgBox Msg
    End If
End Sub
```

The Code window should look like Figure 11-3.

**Figure 11-3:**  
This event-handler procedure is executed when the workbook is opened.



Workbook\_Open is executed automatically whenever the workbook is opened. It uses VBA's WeekDay function to determine the day of the week. If it's Friday (day 6), a message box reminds the user to submit a report. If it's not Friday, nothing happens.

If today isn't Friday, you might have a hard time testing this procedure. You can just change the 6 to correspond to today's actual day number.

And, of course, you can modify this procedure any way you like. For example, the following version displays a message every time the workbook is opened. This gets annoying after a while, trust me.

```
Private Sub Workbook_Open()
    Msg = "This is Frank's cool workbook!"
    MsgBox Msg
End Sub
```

A Workbook\_Open procedure can do almost anything. These event-handlers are often used for the following:

- ✓ Displaying welcome messages (such as in Frank's cool workbook)
- ✓ Opening other workbooks
- ✓ Activating a particular worksheet in the workbook
- ✓ Setting up custom shortcut menus

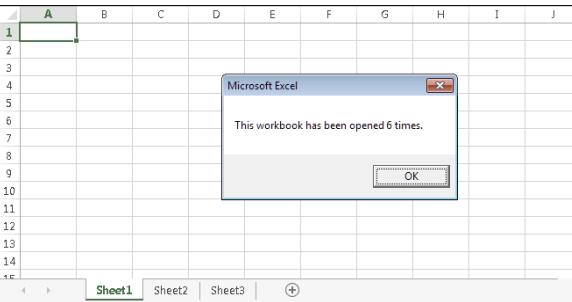
Here's a final example of a Workbook\_Open procedure that uses the GetSetting and SaveSetting functions to keep track of how many times the workbook has been opened. The SaveSetting function writes a value to the Windows registry, and the GetSetting function retrieves that value (see the Help system for details).

The following example retrieves the count from the registry, increments it, and then saves it back to the registry. It also tells the user the value of Cnt that corresponds to the number of times the workbook has been opened. See Figure 11-4.

```
Private Sub Workbook_Open()
    Dim Cnt As Long
    Cnt = GetSetting("MyApp", "Settings", "Open", 0)
    Cnt = Cnt + 1
    SaveSetting "MyApp", "Settings", "Open", Cnt
    MsgBox "This workbook has been opened " & Cnt & " times."
End Sub
```

**Figure 11-4:**

Using a Workbook\_Open event-handler to keep track of how many times a workbook has been opened.



## The BeforeClose event for a workbook

Here's an example of the Workbook\_BeforeClose event-handler procedure, which is executed automatically immediately before the workbook is closed. This procedure is located in the Code window for a ThisWorkbook object:

```
Private Sub Workbook_BeforeClose(Cancel As Boolean)
    Dim Msg As String
    Dim Ans As Integer
    Dim FName As String
    Msg = "Would you like to make a backup of this file?"
    Ans = MsgBox(Msg, vbYesNo)
    If Ans = vbYes Then
        FName = "F:\BACKUP\" & ThisWorkbook.Name
        ThisWorkbook.SaveCopyAs FName
    End If
End Sub
```

This routine uses a message box to ask the user whether he would like to make a backup copy of the workbook. If the answer is yes, the code uses the SaveCopyAs method to save a backup copy of the file on drive F. If you adapt this procedure for your own use, you will need to change the drive and path.

Excel programmers often use a Workbook\_BeforeClose procedure to clean up after themselves. For example, if you use a Workbook\_Open procedure to change some settings when you open a workbook (hiding the status bar, for example), it's only appropriate that you return the settings to their original state when you close the workbook. You can perform this electronic housekeeping with a Workbook\_BeforeClose procedure.



There is an unfortunate caveat with the Workbook\_BeforeClose event. If you close Excel and any open file has been changed since the last save, Excel will show its usual "Do you want to save your changes" message box. Clicking the Cancel button cancels the entire closing process. But the Workbook\_BeforeClose event will have been executed anyway.

## The BeforeSave event for a workbook

The BeforeSave event, as its name implies, is triggered before a workbook is saved. This event occurs when you use either the File $\Rightarrow$ Save or File $\Rightarrow$ Save As command.

The following procedure, which is placed in the Code window for a ThisWorkbook object, demonstrates the BeforeSave event. The routine updates the value in a cell (cell A1 on Sheet1) every time the workbook is saved. In other words, cell A1 serves as a counter to keep track of the number of times the file was saved.

```
Private Sub Workbook_BeforeSave(ByVal SaveAsUI _  
    As Boolean, Cancel As Boolean)  
    Dim Counter As Range  
    Set Counter = Sheets("Sheet1").Range("A1")  
    Counter.Value = Counter.Value + 1  
End Sub
```

Notice that the Workbook\_BeforeSave procedure has two arguments, SaveAsUI and Cancel. To demonstrate how these arguments work, examine the following macro, which is executed before the workbook is saved. This procedure attempts to prevent the user from saving the workbook with a different name. If the user chooses the File $\Rightarrow$ Save As command, then the SaveAsUI argument is True.

When the code executes, it checks the SaveAsUI value. If this variable is True, the procedure displays a message and sets Cancel to True, which cancels the Save operation.

```
Private Sub Workbook_BeforeSave(ByVal SaveAsUI _  
    As Boolean, Cancel As Boolean)  
    If SaveAsUI Then  
        MsgBox "You cannot save a copy of this workbook!"  
        Cancel = True  
    End If  
End Sub
```

Keep in mind that this procedure won't really prevent anyone from saving a copy with a different name. If someone really wants to do it, they can just open the workbook with macros disabled. When macros are disabled, event-handler procedures are also disabled, which makes sense because they are, after all, macros.

## Examples of Activation Events

Another category of events consists of activating and deactivating objects — specifically, sheets and workbooks.

### Activate and deactivate events in a sheet

Excel can detect when a particular sheet is activated or deactivated and execute a macro when either of these events occurs. These event-handler procedures go in the Code window for the Sheet object.



You can quickly access a sheet's code window by right-clicking the sheet's tab and selecting View Code.

The following example shows a simple procedure that is executed whenever a particular sheet is activated. This code simply pops up a message box that displays the name of the active sheet:

```
Private Sub Worksheet_Activate()
    MsgBox "You just activated " & ActiveSheet.Name
End Sub
```

Here's another example that activates cell A1 whenever the sheet is activated:

```
Private Sub Worksheet_Activate()
    Range("A1").Activate
End Sub
```

Although the code in these two procedures is about as simple as it gets, event-handler procedures can be as complex as you like.

The following procedure (which is stored in the Code window for the Sheet1 object) uses the Deactivate event to prevent a user from activating any other sheet in the workbook. If Sheet1 is deactivated (that is, another sheet is activated), the user gets a message and Sheet1 is activated.

```
Private Sub Worksheet_Deactivate()
    MsgBox "You must stay on Sheet1"
    Sheets("Sheet1").Activate
End Sub
```

By the way, I don't recommend using procedures, such as this one, that attempt to take over Excel. These so-called "dictator" applications can be very frustrating and confusing for the user. And, of course, they can be defeated easily by disabling macros. Rather, I recommend training the user how to use your application correctly.

## Activate and deactivate events in a workbook

The previous examples use events associated with a specific worksheet. The ThisWorkbook object also handles events that deal with sheet activation and deactivation. The following procedure, which is stored in the Code window for the ThisWorkbook object, is executed when *any* sheet in the workbook is activated. The code displays a message with the name of the activated sheet.

```
Private Sub Workbook_SheetActivate(ByVal Sh As Object)
    MsgBox Sh.Name
End Sub
```

The Workbook\_SheetActivate procedure uses the Sh argument. Sh is a variable that represents the active Sheet object. The message box displays the Sheet object's Name property.

The next example is contained in a ThisWorkbook Code window. It consists of two event-handler procedures:

- ✓ **Workbook\_SheetDeactivate:** Executed when any sheet in the workbook is deactivated. It stores the sheet that is deactivated in an object variable. (The Set keyword creates an object variable.)
- ✓ **Workbook\_SheetActivate:** Executed when any sheet in the workbook is activated. It checks the type of sheet that is activated (using the TypeName function). If the sheet is a chart sheet, the user gets a message (see Figure 11-5). When the OK button in the message box is clicked, the *previous* sheet (which is stored in the OldSheet variable) is reactivated.

**Figure 11-5:**  
When a  
chart sheet  
is activated,  
the user  
sees a  
message  
like this.





A workbook that contains this code is available at this book's website.

```
Dim OldSheet As Object

Private Sub Workbook_SheetDeactivate(ByVal Sh As Object)
    Set OldSheet = Sh
End Sub

Private Sub Workbook_SheetActivate(ByVal Sh As Object)
    Dim Msg As String
    If TypeName(Sh) = "Chart" Then
        Msg = "This chart contains "
        Msg = Msg & ActiveChart.SeriesCollection(1).Points.Count
        Msg = Msg & " data points." & vbCrLf
        Msg = Msg & "Click OK to return to " & OldSheet.Name
        MsgBox Msg
        OldSheet.Activate
    End If
End Sub
```

## *Workbook activation events*

Excel also recognizes the event that occurs when you activate or deactivate a particular workbook. The following code, which is contained in the Code window for the ThisWorkbook object, is executed whenever the workbook is activated. The procedure simply maximizes the workbook's window.

```
Private Sub Workbook_Activate()
    ActiveWindow.WindowState = xlMaximized
End Sub
```

An example of Workbook\_Deactivate code appears next. This procedure is executed when a workbook is deactivated. This procedure copies the selected range whenever the workbook is deactivated. It might be useful if you're copying data from lots of different areas and pasting them to a different workbook. When this event-procedure is in place, you can select the range to be copied, activate the other workbook, select the destination, and press Ctrl+V (or Enter) to paste the copied data.

```
Private Sub Workbook_Deactivate()
    ThisWorkbook.Windows(1).RangeSelection.Copy
End Sub
```

Simple as it is, this procedure required some experimentation before I got it to work correctly. First I tried this:

```
Selection.Copy
```

This statement didn't work as I had intended. It copied the range from the second workbook (the one I activated after deactivating the first workbook). That's because the second workbook became the active workbook after the deactivation event occurred.

This statement didn't work either. In fact, it gave me a runtime error:

```
ThisWorkbook.ActiveSheet.Selection.Copy
```

I eventually remembered the RangeSelection property of a Window object, and that one did the trick.

## Other Worksheet-Related Events

In the preceding section, I present examples for worksheet activation and deactivation events. In this section, I discuss three additional events that occur in worksheets: double-clicking a cell, right-clicking a cell, and changing a cell.

### *The BeforeDoubleClick event*

You can set up a VBA procedure to be executed when the user double-clicks a cell. In the following example (which is stored in the Code window for a Sheet object), double-clicking a cell in that sheet makes the cell bold (if it's not bold) or not bold (if it is bold):

```
Private Sub Worksheet_BeforeDoubleClick _
    (ByVal Target As Excel.Range, Cancel As Boolean)
    Target.Font.Bold = Not Target.Font.Bold
    Cancel = True
End Sub
```

The Worksheet\_BeforeDoubleClick procedure has two arguments: Target and Cancel. Target represents the cell (a Range object) that was double-clicked. If Cancel is set to True, the default double-click action doesn't occur.

The default action for double-clicking a cell is to put Excel into cell edit mode. I didn't want that to happen, so I set Cancel to True.

### *The BeforeRightClick event*

The BeforeRightClick event is similar to the BeforeDoubleClick event, except that it consists of right-clicking a cell. The following procedure checks to see whether the cell that was right-clicked contains a numeric value. If so, the code displays the Format Number dialog box and sets the Cancel argument

to True (avoiding the normal shortcut menu display). If the cell does not contain a numeric value, nothing special happens — the shortcut menu is displayed as usual.

```
Private Sub Worksheet_BeforeRightClick _
    (ByVal Target As Excel.Range, Cancel As Boolean)
    If IsNumeric(Target) And Not IsEmpty(Target) Then
        Application.CommandBars.ExecuteMso ("NumberFormatsDialog")
        Cancel = True
    End If
End Sub
```



Notice that the code, which is available on this book's website, makes an additional check to see if the cell is not empty. This is because VBA considers empty cells to be numeric. Don't ask me why; it just does.

## *The Change event*

The Change event occurs whenever any cell on the worksheet is changed. In the following example, the Worksheet\_Change procedure effectively prevents a user from entering a nonnumeric value into cell A1. This code is stored in the Code window for a Sheet object.

```
Private Sub Worksheet_Change(ByVal Target As Range)
    If Target.Address = "$A$1" Then
        If Not IsNumeric(Target) Then
            MsgBox "Enter a number in cell A1."
            Range("A1").ClearContents
            Range("A1").Activate
        End If
    End If
End Sub
```

The single argument for the Worksheet\_Change procedure (Target) represents the range that was changed. The first statement sees whether the cell's address is \$A\$1. If so, the code uses the IsNumeric function to determine whether the cell contains a numeric value. If not, a message appears, and the cell's value is erased. Cell A1 is then activated — useful if the cell pointer moved to a different cell after the entry was made. If the change occurs in any cell except A1, nothing happens.

### *Why not use data validation?*

You may be familiar with the Data→Data Tools→Data Validation command. This handy feature makes it easy to ensure that only data of the proper type is entered into a particular cell or range. Although the Data→Data Tools→Data Validation command is useful, it's definitely not foolproof.

Try adding data validation to a cell. For example, you can set it up so the cell accepts only a numerical value. It works fine — until you copy another cell and paste it to the data validation cell. Pasting removes the data validation. It's as if it was never there. The severity of this flaw depends on your application. In the next section, I describe how to use the Change event to provide for better validating.



Pasting wipes out data validation because Excel considers validation a format for a cell. Therefore, it is in the same classification as font size, color, or other similar attributes. When you paste a cell, you are replacing the formats in the target cell with those of the source cell. Unfortunately, those formats also include your validation rules.



### ***Preventing data validation from being destroyed***

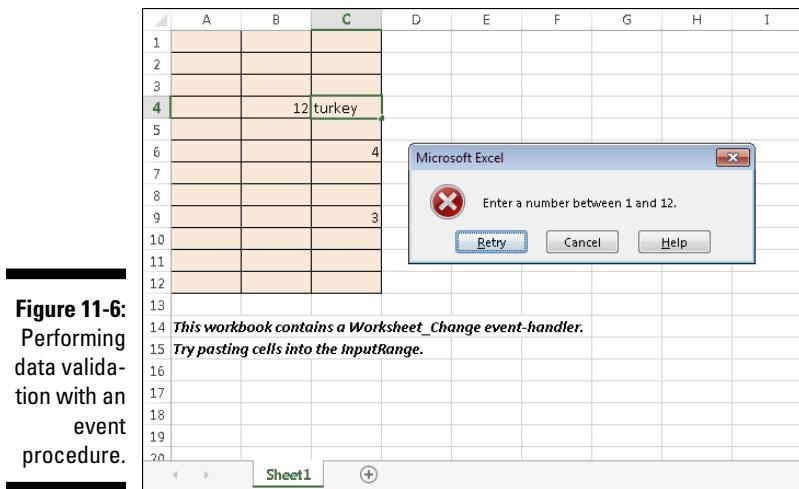
The procedure in this section demonstrates how to prevent users from copying data and wiping out data validation rules. This example assumes that the worksheet has a range named InputArea, and this input area contains data validation rules (set up by using the Data→Data Tools→Data Validation command). The range can have any validation rules you want.

A workbook that contains this code is available at this book's website:

```
Private Sub Worksheet_Change(ByVal Target As Range)
    Dim VT As Long
    'Do all cells in the validation range
    'still have validation?
    On Error Resume Next
    VT = Range("InputRange").Validation.Type
    If Err.Number <> 0 Then
        Application.Undo
        MsgBox "Your last operation was canceled." & _
            "It would have deleted data validation rules.", vbCritical
    End If
End Sub
```

The procedure is executed whenever a cell is changed. It checks the validation type of the range (named InputRange) that is *supposed* to contain the data validation rules. If the VT variable contains an error, then one or more cells in the InputRange no longer have data validation (the user probably copied some data over it). If that's the case, the code executes the Undo method of the Application object and reverses the user's action. Then it displays a message box, as shown in Figure 11-6.

The net effect? It's impossible to wipe out the validation rules by copying data. When Excel is broken, sometimes you can use VBA to fix it.



**Figure 11-6:**  
Performing  
data valida-  
tion with an  
event  
procedure.

## Events Not Associated with Objects

The events that I discuss previously in this chapter are associated with either a workbook object or a worksheet object. In this section, I discuss two types of events that are not associated with objects: time and keypresses.



Because time and keypresses aren't associated with a particular object such as a workbook or a worksheet, you program these events in a normal VBA module (unlike the other events discussed in this chapter).

### The OnTime event

The OnTime event occurs when a particular time of day occurs. The following example demonstrates how to get Excel to execute a procedure when the 3:00 p.m. event occurs. In this case, a robot voice tells you to wake up, accompanied by a message box:

```
Sub SetAlarm()
    Application.OnTime 0.625, "DisplayAlarm"
End Sub

Sub DisplayAlarm()
    Application.Speech.Speak ("Hey, wake up")
    MsgBox " It's time for your afternoon break! "
End Sub
```

In this example, I use the OnTime method of the Application object. This method takes two arguments: the time (0.625 or 3:00 p.m.) and the name of the Sub procedure to execute when the time event occurs (DisplayAlarm).

This procedure is quite useful if you tend to get so wrapped up in your work that you forget about meetings and appointments. Just set an OnTime event to remind yourself.



Most people (this author included) find it difficult to think of time in terms of the Excel numbering system. Therefore, you may want to use the VBA TimeValue function to represent the time. TimeValue converts a string that looks like a time into a value that Excel can handle. The following statement shows an easier way to program an event for 3:00 p.m.:

```
Application.OnTime TimeValue("3:00:00 pm"), "DisplayAlarm"
```

If you want to schedule an event relative to the current time (for example, 20 minutes from now), you can use a statement like this:

```
Application.OnTime Now + TimeValue("00:20:00"), "DisplayAlarm"
```

You can also use the OnTime method to run a VBA procedure on a particular day. You must make sure that your computer keeps running and that the workbook with the procedure is kept open. The following statement runs the DisplayAlarm procedure at 5:00 p.m. on December 31, 2013:

```
Application.OnTime DateValue("12/31/2013 5:00 pm"), "DisplayAlarm"
```

This particular code line could come in handy to warn you that you need to go home and get ready for the New Year's Eve festivities.

Here's another example that uses the OnTime event. Executing the UpdateClock procedures writes the time to cell A1 and also programs another event five seconds later. This event reruns the UpdateClock procedure. The net effect is that cell A1 is updated with the current time every five seconds. To stop the events, execute the StopClock procedure (which cancels the event). Note that NextTick is a module-level variable that stores the time for the next event.

```
Dim NextTick As Date

Sub UpdateClock()
    ' Updates cell A1 with the current time
    ThisWorkbook.Sheets(1).Range("A1") = Time
    ' Set up the next event five seconds from now
    NextTick = Now + TimeValue("00:00:05")
    Application.OnTime NextTick, "UpdateClock"
End Sub

Sub StopClock()
    ' Cancels the OnTime event (stops the clock)
    On Error Resume Next
    Application.OnTime NextTick, "UpdateClock", , False
End Sub
```



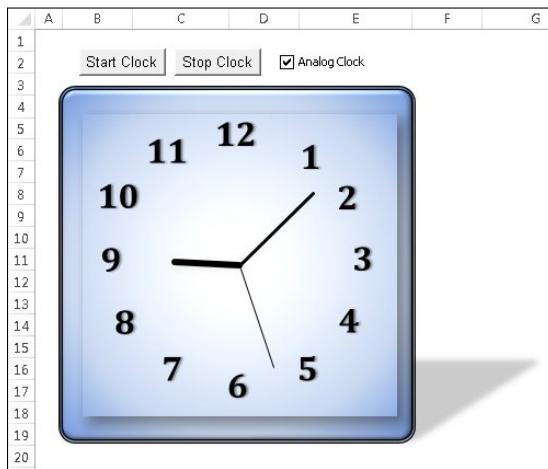
The OnTime event persists even after the workbook is closed. In other words, if you close the workbook without running the StopClock procedure, the workbook will reopen itself in five seconds (assuming that Excel is still running). To prevent this, use a Workbook\_BeforeClose event procedure that contains the following statement:

```
Call StopClock
```

The OnTime method has two additional arguments. If you plan to use this method, you should refer to the online help for complete details.



If you'd like to see a rather complicated application, download a copy of my analog clock workbook, shown in Figure 11-7. The clock face is actually a chart, and the chart is updated every second to display the time of day. Useless, but fun.



**Figure 11-7:**  
My analog  
clock  
application.

## Keypress events

While you work, Excel constantly monitors what you type. Because of this, you can set up a keystroke or a key combination to execute a procedure.

Here's an example that reassigns the PgDn and PgUp keys:

```
Sub Setup_OnKey()
    Application.OnKey "{PgDn}", "PgDn_Sub"
    Application.OnKey "{PgUp}", "PgUp_Sub"
End Sub
```

```

Sub PgDn_Sub()
    On Error Resume Next
    ActiveCell.Offset(1, 0).Activate
End Sub

Sub PgUp_Sub()
    On Error Resume Next
    ActiveCell.Offset(-1, 0).Activate
End Sub

```

After setting up the *OnKey* events by executing the *Setup\_OnKey* procedure, pressing PgDn moves you down one row. Pressing PgUp moves you up one row.

Notice that the key codes are enclosed in braces, not in parentheses. For a complete list of keyboard codes, consult the Help system. Search for *OnKey*.

In this example, I use *On Error Resume Next* to ignore any errors that are generated. For example, if the active cell is in the first row, trying to move up one row causes an error that can safely be ignored. And if a chart sheet is active, there is no active cell.

By executing the following routine, you cancel the *OnKey* events:

```

Sub Cancel_OnKey()
    Application.OnKey "{PgDn}"
    Application.OnKey "{PgUp}"
End Sub

```



Using an empty string as the second argument for the *OnKey* method does *not* cancel the *OnKey* event. Rather, it causes Excel to simply ignore the keystroke. For example, the following statement tells Excel to ignore Alt+F4. The percent sign represents the Alt key:

```
Application.OnKey "%{F4}", ""
```



Although you can use the *OnKey* method to assign a shortcut key for executing a macro, you should use the Macro Options dialog box for this task. For more details, see Chapter 5.



If you close the workbook that contains the code and leave Excel open, the *OnKey* method will not be reset. As a consequence, pressing the shortcut key will cause Excel to automatically open the file with the macro. To prevent this from happening, you should include code in your *Workbook\_BeforeClose* event code (shown earlier in this chapter) to reset the *Onkey* event.

# **Chapter 12**

---

# **Error-Handling Techniques**

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Understanding the difference between programming errors and run-time errors
  - ▶ Trapping and handling run-time errors
  - ▶ Using the VBA On Error and Resume statements
  - ▶ Finding out how you can use an error to your advantage
- 

To err is human. To anticipate errors is divine. When working with VBA, you should be aware of two broad classes of errors: programming errors and run-time errors. This chapter is all about run-time errors. I cover programming errors, also known as *bugs*, in Chapter 13.

A well-written program handles errors the way Fred Astaire danced: gracefully. Fortunately, VBA includes several tools to help you identify errors — and then handle them gracefully.

## ***Types of Errors***

If you've tried any of the examples in this book, you have probably encountered one or more error messages. Some of these errors result from bad VBA code. For example, you may spell a keyword incorrectly or type a statement with the wrong syntax. If you make such an error, you won't even be able to execute the procedure until you correct it.

This chapter does not deal with those types of errors. Instead, I discuss run-time errors — the errors that occur while Excel executes your VBA code. More specifically, this chapter covers the following fascinating topics:

- ✓ Identifying errors
- ✓ Doing something about the errors that occur
- ✓ Recovering from errors
- ✓ Creating intentional errors (Yes, sometimes an error can be a good thing.)

The ultimate goal of error handling is to write code that avoids displaying Excel's error messages as much as possible. In other words, you want to anticipate potential errors and deal with them before Excel has a chance to rear its ugly head with a (usually) less-than-informative error message.

## An Erroneous Example

To get things started, I developed a short and simple VBA macro. A macro this simple couldn't produce any errors, right?

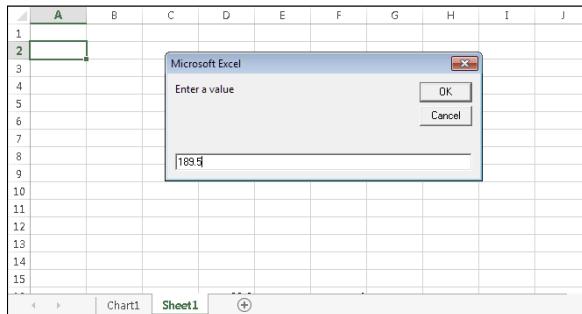
Activate the VBE, insert a module, and enter the following code:

```
Sub EnterSquareRoot()
    Dim Num As Double
    ' Prompt for a value
    Num = InputBox("Enter a value")

    ' Insert the square root
    ActiveCell.Value = Sqr(Num)
End Sub
```

As shown in Figure 12-1, this procedure asks the user for a value. It then performs a magical calculation and enters the square root of that value into the active cell.

**Figure 12-1:**  
The  
InputBox  
function  
displays a  
dialog box  
that asks  
the user for  
a value.



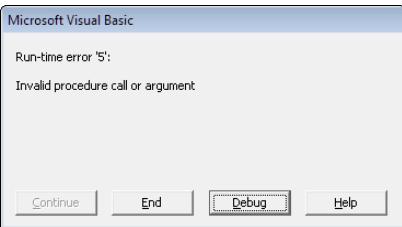
You can execute this procedure directly from the VBE by pressing F5. Alternatively, you may want to add a button to a worksheet (use Developer→Controls→Insert and select the Form controls button to do this) and then assign the macro to the button. (Excel prompts you for the macro to assign.) Then you can run the procedure by simply clicking the button.

## The macro's not quite perfect

Execute the code a couple of times to try it out. It works pretty well, doesn't it? Now try entering a negative number when you are prompted for a value. Oops. Trying to calculate the square root of a negative number is illegal on this planet.

Excel responds to the request to calculate the square root of a negative number by displaying the run-time error message shown in Figure 12-2. For now, just click the End button. If you click the Debug button, Excel suspends the macro, so you can use the debugging tools to help track down the error. (I describe the debugging tools in Chapter 13.)

**Figure 12-2:**  
Excel  
displays  
this error  
message  
when the  
procedure  
attempts to  
calculate the  
square root  
of a negative  
number.



Most folks don't find the Excel error messages (for example, *Invalid procedure call or argument*) particularly helpful. To improve the procedure, you need to anticipate this error and handle it more gracefully. In other words, you need to add some error-handling code.

Here's a modified version of EnterSquareRoot:

```
Sub EnterSquareRoot2()
    Dim Num As Double
    ' Prompt for a value
    Num = InputBox("Enter a value")

    ' Make sure the number is nonnegative
    If Num < 0 Then
        MsgBox "You must enter a positive number."
        Exit Sub
    End If

    ' Insert the square root
    ActiveCell.Value = Sqr(Num)
End Sub
```

An If-Then structure checks the value contained in the Num variable. If Num is less than 0, the procedure displays a message box containing information that humans can actually understand. Then the procedure ends with the Exit Sub statement, so the run-time error never has a chance to occur.

## *The macro is still not perfect*

So the modified EnterSquareRoot procedure is perfect, right? Not really. Try entering text rather than a value. Or click the Cancel button in the input box. Both of these actions generate an error (*Type mismatch*). This simple little procedure needs still more error-handling code.

The following modified code uses the IsNumeric function to make sure that Num contains a numeric value. If the user doesn't enter a number, the procedure displays a message and then stops. Also, notice that the Num variable is now declared as a Variant. If it were declared as a Double, the code would generate an unhandled error if the user entered a nonnumeric value into the input box.

```
Sub EnterSquareRoot3()
    Dim Num As Variant
    ' Prompt for a value
    Num = InputBox("Enter a value")

    ' Make sure Num is a number
    If Not IsNumeric(Num) Then
        MsgBox "You must enter a number."
        Exit Sub
    End If

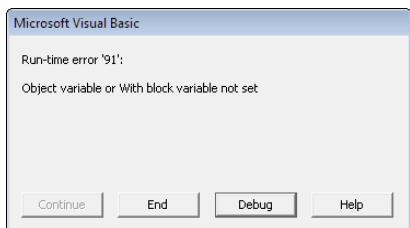
    ' Make sure the number is nonnegative
    If Num < 0 Then
        MsgBox "You must enter a positive number."
        Exit Sub
    End If

    ' Insert the square root
    ActiveCell.Value = Sqr(Num)
End Sub
```

## *Is the macro perfect yet?*

Now this code is absolutely perfect, right? Not quite. Try running the procedure while the active sheet is a chart sheet. Yikes, another run-time error; this time it's the dreaded Number 91 (see Figure 12-3). This error occurs because there is no active cell when a chart sheet is active, or when something other than a range is selected.

**Figure 12-3:**  
Running the  
procedure  
when a  
chart is  
selected  
generates  
this error.



The following listing uses the `TypeName` function to make sure that the selection is a range. If anything other than a range is selected, this procedure displays a message and then exits:

```
Sub EnterSquareRoot4()
    Dim Num As Variant
    ' Make sure a worksheet is active
    If TypeName(Selection) <> "Range" Then
        MsgBox "Select a cell for the result."
        Exit Sub
    End If

    ' Prompt for a value
    Num = InputBox("Enter a value")

    ' Make sure Num is a number
    If Not IsNumeric(Num) Then
        MsgBox "You must enter a number."
        Exit Sub
    End If

    ' Make sure the number is nonnegative
    If Num < 0 Then
        MsgBox "You must enter a positive number."
        Exit Sub
    End If

    ' Insert the square root
    ActiveCell.Value = Sqr(Num)
End Sub
```

## *Giving up on perfection*

By now, this procedure simply *must* be perfect. Think again, pal.

Protect the worksheet (using the Review⇒Changes⇒Protect Sheet command) and then run the code. Yep, a protected worksheet generates yet another error. And I probably haven't thought of all the other errors that can occur. Keep reading for another way to deal with errors — even those you can't anticipate.

## *Handling Errors Another Way*

How can you identify and handle every possible error? Often, you can't. Fortunately, VBA provides another way to deal with errors.

### *Revisiting the EnterSquareRoot procedure*

Examine the following code. I modified the routine from the previous section by adding an all-purpose On Error statement to trap all errors and then checking to see whether the InputBox was cancelled.

```
Sub EnterSquareRoot5()
    Dim Num As Variant
    Dim Msg As String

    ' Set up error handling
    On Error GoTo BadEntry

    ' Prompt for a value
    Num = InputBox("Enter a value")

    ' Exit if cancelled
    If Num = "" Then Exit Sub

    ' Insert the square root
    ActiveCell.Value = Sqr(Num)
    Exit Sub

BadEntry:
    Msg = "An error occurred." & vbCrLf & vbCrLf
    Msg = Msg & "Make sure a range is selected, "
    Msg = Msg & "the sheet is not protected, "
    Msg = Msg & "and you enter a nonnegative value."
    MsgBox Msg, vbCritical
End Sub
```



## On Error not working?

If an On Error statement isn't working as advertised, you need to change one of your settings.

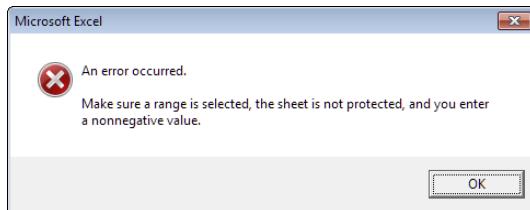
1. **Activate the VBE.**
2. **Choose the Tools⇒Options command.**
3. **Click the General tab of the Options dialog box.**

4. **Make sure that the Break On All Errors setting is deselected.**

If this setting is selected, Excel essentially ignores any On Error statements. You normally want to keep the Error Trapping options set to Break On Unhandled Errors.

This routine traps *any* type of run-time error. After trapping a run-time error, the revised EnterSquareRoot procedure displays the message box shown in Figure 12-4. This message box describes the most likely causes for the error.

**Figure 12-4:**  
A run-time error in the procedure generates this semi-helpful error message.



## About the On Error statement

Using an On Error statement in your VBA code lets you bypass Excel's built-in error handling and use your own error-handling code. In the previous example, a run-time error causes macro execution to jump to the statement labeled BadEntry. As a result, you avoid Excel's unfriendly error messages, and you can display your own (friendlier, I hope) message to the user.



Notice that the example uses an Exit Sub statement right before the BadEntry label. This statement is necessary because you don't want to execute the error-handling code if an error does *not* occur.

## Handling Errors: The Details

You can use the On Error statement in three ways, as shown in Table 12-1.

<b>Table 12-1</b>		<b>Using the On Error Statement</b>
<b>Syntax</b>		<b>What It Does</b>
On Error GoTo label		After executing this statement, VBA resumes execution at the specified line. You must include a colon after the label so that VBA recognizes it as a label.
On Error GoTo 0		After executing this statement, VBA resumes its normal error-checking behavior. Use this statement after using one of the other On Error statements, or when you want to remove error handling in your procedure.
On Error Resume Next		After executing this statement, VBA simply ignores all errors and resumes execution with the next statement.

## Resuming after an error

In some cases, you simply want the routine to end gracefully when an error occurs. For example, you may display a message describing the error and then exit the procedure. (The EnterSquareRoot5 example uses this technique.) In other cases, you want to recover from the error, if possible.

To recover from an error, you must use a Resume statement. This clears the error condition and lets you continue execution at some location. You can use the Resume statement in three ways, as shown in Table 12-2.

<b>Table 12-2</b>		<b>Using the Resume Statement</b>
<b>Syntax</b>		<b>What It Does</b>
Resume		Execution resumes with the statement that caused the error. Use this if your error-handling code corrects the problem, and it's okay to continue.
Resume Next		Execution resumes with the statement immediately following the statement that caused the error. This essentially ignores the error.
Resume <i>label</i>		Execution resumes at the <i>label</i> you specify.

The following example uses a Resume statement after an error occurs:

```
Sub EnterSquareRoot6()
    Dim Num As Variant
    Dim Msg As String
    Dim Ans As Integer
    TryAgain:
        ' Set up error handling
        On Error GoTo BadEntry

        ' Prompt for a value
        Num = InputBox("Enter a value")
        If Num = "" Then Exit Sub

        ' Insert the square root
        ActiveCell.Value = Sqr(Num)

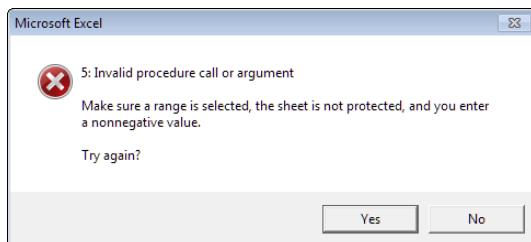
        Exit Sub

    BadEntry:
        Msg = Err.Number & ": " & Error(Err.Number)
        Msg = Msg & vbNewLine & vbNewLine
        Msg = Msg & "Make sure a range is selected, "
        Msg = Msg & "the sheet is not protected, "
        Msg = Msg & "and you enter a nonnegative value."
        Msg = Msg & vbNewLine & vbNewLine & "Try again?"
        Ans = MsgBox(Msg, vbYesNo + vbCritical)
        If Ans = vbYes Then Resume TryAgain
    End Sub
```

This procedure has another label: TryAgain. If an error occurs, execution continues at the BadEntry label, and the code displays the message shown in Figure 12-5. If the user responds by clicking Yes, the Resume statement kicks in, and execution jumps back to the TryAgain label. If the user clicks No, the procedure ends.

Notice that the error message also includes the error number, along with the “official” error description. I threw that in because I write about it later in the section “Identifying specific errors.”

**Figure 12-5:**  
If an error occurs, the user can decide whether to try again.



Remember that the Resume statement clears the error condition before continuing. To see what I mean, try substituting the following statement for the second-to-last statement in the preceding example:

```
If Ans = vbYes Then GoTo TryAgain
```



The code doesn't work correctly if you use GoTo rather than Resume. To demonstrate, enter a negative number: You get the error prompt. Click Yes to try again and then enter *another* negative number. This second error is not trapped because the original error condition was not cleared.

This example is available on this book's website.

## Error handling in a nutshell

To help you keep all this error-handling business straight, I've prepared a quick-and-dirty summary. A block of error-handling code has the following characteristics:

- ✓ It begins immediately after the label specified in the On Error statement.
- ✓ It should be reached by your macro only if an error occurs. This means that you must use a statement such as Exit Sub or Exit Function immediately before the label.
- ✓ It may require a Resume statement. If you choose not to abort the procedure when an error occurs, you must execute a Resume statement before returning to the main code.

## Knowing when to ignore errors

In some cases, it's perfectly okay to ignore errors. That's when the On Error Resume Next statement comes into play.

The following example loops through each cell in the selected range and converts the value to its square root. This procedure generates an error message if any cell in the selection contains a negative number or text:

```
Sub SelectionSqrt()  
    Dim cell As Range  
    If TypeName(Selection) <> "Range" Then Exit Sub  
    For Each cell In Selection  
        cell.Value = Sqr(cell.Value)  
    Next cell  
End Sub
```

In this case, you may want to simply skip any cell that contains a value you can't convert to a square root. You can create all sorts of error-checking capabilities by using If-Then structures, but you can devise a better (and simpler) solution by simply ignoring the errors that occur.

The following routine accomplishes this by using the On Error Resume Next statement:

```
Sub SelectionSqrt()
    Dim cell As Range
    If TypeName(Selection) <> "Range" Then Exit Sub
    On Error Resume Next
    For Each cell In Selection
        cell.Value = Sqr(cell.Value)
    Next cell
End Sub
```

In general, you can use an On Error Resume Next statement if you consider the errors harmless or inconsequential to your task.

## *Identifying specific errors*

All errors are not created equal. Some are serious, and some are less serious. Although you may ignore errors you consider inconsequential, you must deal with other, more serious errors. In some cases, you need to identify the specific error that occurred.

Every type of error has an official number. When an error occurs, Excel stores the error number in an Error object named Err. This object's Number property contains the error number, and its Description property contains a description of the error. For example, the following statement displays the error number, a colon, and a description of the error:

```
MsgBox Err.Number & ": " & Err.Description
```

Figure 12-5, earlier in this chapter, shows an example of this. Keep in mind, however, that the Excel error messages are not always very useful — but you already know that.

The following procedure demonstrates how to determine which error occurred. In this case, you can safely ignore errors caused by trying to get the square root of a nonpositive number (that is, error 5) or errors caused by trying to get the square root of a nonnumeric value (error 13). On the other hand, you need to inform the user if the worksheet is protected and the selection contains one or more locked cells. (Otherwise, the user may think the macro

worked when it really didn't.) Attempting to write to a locked cell in a protected worksheet causes error 1004.

```
Sub SelectionSqrt()
    Dim cell As Range
    Dim ErrMsg As String
    If TypeName(Selection) <> "Range" Then Exit Sub
    On Error GoTo ErrorHandler
    For Each cell In Selection
        cell.Value = Sqr(cell.Value)
    Next cell
    Exit Sub

ErrorHandler:
    Select Case Err.Number
        Case 5 'Negative number
            Resume Next
        Case 13 'Type mismatch
            Resume Next
        Case 1004 'Locked cell, protected sheet
            MsgBox "Cell is locked. Try again.", vbCritical, cell.Address
            Exit Sub
        Case Else
            ErrMsg = Error(Err.Number)
            MsgBox "ERROR: " & ErrMsg, vbCritical, cell.Address
            Exit Sub
    End Select
End Sub
```

When a run-time error occurs, execution jumps to the code beginning at the ErrorHandler label. The Select Case structure (I discuss that structure in Chapter 10) tests for three common error numbers. If the error number is 5 or 13, execution resumes at the next statement. (In other words, the error is ignored.) But if the error number is 1004, the routine advises the user and then ends. The last case, a catchall for unanticipated errors, traps all other errors and displays the actual error message.

## An Intentional Error

Sometimes you can use an error to your advantage. For example, suppose you have a macro that works only if a particular workbook is open. How can you determine whether that workbook is open? One way is to write code that loops through the Workbooks collection checking to determine if the workbook you're interested in is in that collection.

Here's an easier way: a general-purpose function that accepts one argument (a workbook name) and returns True if the workbook is open, False if it's not.

Here's the function:

```
Function WorkbookIsOpen(book As String) As Boolean
    Dim WBName As String
    On Error GoTo NotOpen
    WBName = Workbooks(book).Name
    WorkbookIsOpen = True
    Exit Function
NotOpen:
    WorkbookIsOpen = False
End Function
```

This function takes advantage of the fact that Excel generates an error if you refer to a workbook that is not open. For example, the following statement generates an error if a workbook named MyBook.xlsx is not open:

```
WBName = Workbooks("MyBook.xlsx").Name
```

In the WorkbookIsOpen function, the On Error statement tells VBA to resume the macro at the NotOpen statement if an error occurs. Therefore, an error means that the workbook is not open, and the function returns False. If the workbook is open, no error occurs, and the function returns True.

Here's another variation on the WorkbookIsOpen function. This version uses On Error Resume Next to ignore the error. But the code checks Err's Number property. If Err.Number is 0, no error occurred, and the workbook is open. If Err.Number is anything else, it means that an error occurred (and the workbook is not open).

```
Function WorkbookIsOpen(book) As Boolean
    Dim WBName As String
    On Error Resume Next
    WBName = Workbooks(book).Name
    If Err.Number = 0 Then WorkbookIsOpen = True _
        Else WorkbookIsOpen = False
End Function
```

The following example demonstrates how to use this function in a Sub procedure:

```
Sub UpdatePrices()
    If Not WorkbookIsOpen("Prices.xlsx") Then
        MsgBox "Please open the Prices workbook first!"
        Exit Sub
    End If
    ' [Other code goes here]
End Sub
```

The UpdatePrices procedure (which must be in the same workbook as WorkbookIsOpen) calls the WorkbookIsOpen function and passes the workbook name (Prices.xlsx) as an argument. The WorkbookIsOpen function returns either True or False. Therefore, if the workbook is not open, the procedure informs the user of that fact. If the workbook is open, the macro continues.

Error handling can be a tricky proposition — after all, many different errors can occur, and you can't anticipate all of them. In general, you should trap errors and correct the situation before Excel intervenes, if possible. Writing effective error-trapping code requires a thorough knowledge of Excel and a clear understanding of how the VBA error handling works. Subsequent chapters contain more examples of error handling.

## Chapter 13

# Bug Extermination Techniques

### In This Chapter

- ▶ Defining a bug and why you should squash it
- ▶ Recognizing types of program bugs you may encounter
- ▶ Using techniques for debugging your code
- ▶ Using the VBA built-in debugging tools

**1**

If the word *bugs* conjures up an image of a cartoon rabbit, this chapter can set you straight. Simply put, a bug is an error in your programming. Here I cover the topic of programming bugs — how to identify them and how to wipe them off the face of your module.

## Species of Bugs

Welcome to Entomology 101. The term *program bug*, as you probably know, refers to a problem with software. In other words, if software doesn't perform as expected, it has a bug. Fact is, all major software programs have bugs — lots of bugs. Excel itself has hundreds (if not thousands) of bugs. Fortunately, the vast majority of these bugs are relatively obscure and appear in only very specific circumstances.

When you write nontrivial VBA programs, your code probably will have bugs. This is a fact of life and not necessarily a reflection of your programming ability. The bugs may fall into any of the following categories:

- ✓ **Logic flaws in your code:** You can often avoid these bugs by carefully thinking through the problem your program addresses.
- ✓ **Incorrect context bugs:** This type of bug surfaces when you attempt to do something at the wrong time. For example, your code may try to write data to cells in the active sheet when the active sheet is actually a chart sheet (which has no cells).
- ✓ **Extreme-case bugs:** These bugs rear their ugly heads when you encounter data you didn't anticipate, such as very large or very small numbers.

- ✓ **Wrong data-type bugs:** This type of bug occurs when you try to process data of the wrong type, such as attempting to take the square root of a text string.
- ✓ **Wrong version bugs:** This type of bug involves incompatibilities between different Excel versions. For example, you may develop a workbook with Excel 2013 and then find out that the workbook doesn't work with Excel 2003. You can usually avoid such problems by not using version-specific features. Often, the easiest approach is to develop your application by using the lowest version number of Excel that users might have. In all cases, however, you should test your work on all versions you expect it will be used with.
- ✓ **Beyond-your-control bugs:** These are the most frustrating. An example occurs when Microsoft upgrades Excel and makes a minor, undocumented change that causes your macro to bomb. Even security updates have been known to cause problems.

*Debugging* is the process of identifying and correcting bugs in your program. Developing debugging skills takes time, so don't be discouraged if this process is difficult at first.



It's important to understand the distinction between *bugs* and *syntax errors*. A syntax error is a language error. For example, you might misspell a keyword, omit the Next statement in a For-Next loop, or have a mismatched parenthesis. Before you can even execute the procedure, you must correct these syntax errors. A program bug is much subtler. You can execute the routine, but it doesn't perform as expected.

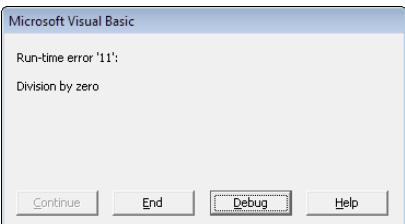
## Identifying Bugs

Before you can do any debugging, you must determine whether a bug actually exists. You can tell that your macro contains a bug if it doesn't work the way it should. (Gee, this book is just filled with insight, isn't it?) Usually, but not always, you can easily discern this.

A bug often (but not always) becomes apparent when Excel displays a run-time error message. Figure 13-1 shows an example. Notice that this error message includes a button labeled Debug. More about this later in the "About the Debugger" section.

A key fact known to all programmers is that bugs often appear when you least expect them. For example, just because your macro works fine with one data set doesn't mean you can assume it will work equally as well with all data sets.

**Figure 13-1:**  
An error message like this often means that your VBA code contains a bug.



The best debugging approach is to start with thorough testing, under a variety of real-life conditions. And because any workbook changes made by your VBA code cannot be undone, it is always a good idea to use a backup copy of the workbook that you use for testing. I usually copy some files into a temporary folder and use those files for my testing.

## Debugging Techniques

In this section, I discuss the four most common methods for debugging Excel VBA code:

- ✓ Examining the code
- ✓ Inserting MsgBox functions at various locations in your code
- ✓ Inserting Debug.Print statements
- ✓ Using the Excel built-in debugging tools

### Examining your code

Perhaps the most straightforward debugging technique is simply taking a close look at your code to see whether you can find the problem. This method, of course, requires knowledge and experience. In other words, you have to know what you're doing. If you're lucky, the error jumps right out, and you slap your forehead and say, "Doh!" When the forehead pain diminishes, you can fix the problem.

Notice I said, "If you're lucky." That's because often you discover errors when you have been working on your program for eight hours straight, it is 2 a.m., and you are running on caffeine and willpower. At times like that, you are lucky if you can even see your code, let alone find the bugs. Thus, don't be surprised if simply examining your code isn't enough to make you find and expunge all the bugs it contains.

## Using the MsgBox function

A common problem in many programs involves one or more variables not taking on the values you expect. In such cases, monitoring the variable(s) while your code runs is a helpful debugging technique. One way to do this is by inserting temporary MsgBox functions into your routine. For example, if you have a variable named CellCount, you can insert the following statement:

```
MsgBox CellCount
```

When you execute the routine, the MsgBox function displays CellCount's value.

It's often helpful to display the values of two or more variables in the message box. The following statement displays the current value of two variables: LoopIndex (1) and CellCount (72), separated by a space.

```
MsgBox LoopIndex & " " & CellCount
```

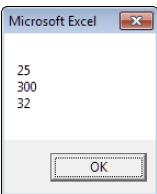
Notice that I combine the two variables with the concatenation operator (&) and insert a space character between them. Otherwise, the message box strings the two values together, making them look like a single value. You can also use the built-in constant, vbNewLine, in place of the space character. vbNewLine inserts a line-feed break, which displays the text on a new line. The following statement displays three variables, each on a separate line (see Figure 13-2):

```
MsgBox LoopIndex & vbCrLf & CellCount & vbCrLf & MyVal
```

---

**Figure 13-2:**  
Using a  
message  
box to  
display the  
value of  
three  
variables.

---



This technique isn't limited to monitoring variables. You can use a message box to display all sorts of useful information while your code is running. For example, if your code loops through a series of sheets, the following statement displays the name and type of the active sheet:

```
MsgBox ActiveSheet.Name & " " & TypeName(ActiveSheet)
```

If your message box shows something unexpected, hit Ctrl+Break, and you see a dialog box that tells you, “Code execution has been interrupted.” As shown in Figure 13-3, you have four choices:

- ✓ Click the Continue button, and the code continues executing.
- ✓ Click the End button, and execution stops.
- ✓ Click the Debug button, and the VBE goes into Debug mode (which is explained a bit later in the section “About the Debugger”).
- ✓ Click the Help button, and a help screen tells you that you pressed Ctrl+Break. In other words, it’s not very helpful.

**Figure 13-3:**  
Pressing  
Ctrl+Break  
halts  
execution of  
your code  
and gives  
you some  
choices.



Feel free to use MsgBox functions frequently when you debug your code. Just make sure that you remove them after you identify and correct the problem.

## Inserting Debug.Print statements

As an alternative to using MsgBox functions in your code, you can insert one or more temporary Debug.Print statements. Use these statements to print the value of one or more variables in the Immediate window. Here’s an example that displays the value of three variables:

```
Debug.Print LoopIndex, CellCount, MyVal
```



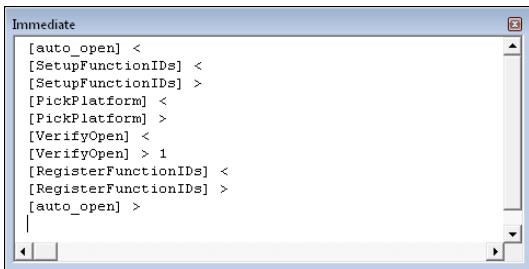
Notice that the variables are separated with commas. You can display as many variables as you like with a single Debug.Print statement.

Debug.Print sends output to the Immediate window even if that window is hidden. If VBE’s Immediate window is not visible, press Ctrl+G.

Unlike MsgBox, Debug.Print statements do not halt your code. So you’ll need to keep an eye on the Immediate window to see what’s going on.

After you've debugged your code, be sure to remove all the Debug.Print statements. Even big companies like Microsoft occasionally forget to remove their Debug.Print statements. In several previous versions of Excel, every time the Analysis ToolPak add-in was opened, you'd see several strange messages in the Immediate window (see Figure 13-4). That problem was finally fixed in Excel 2007.

**Figure 13-4:**  
Even professional programmers sometimes forget to remove their Debug.Print statements.



## Using the VBA debugger

The Excel designers are intimately familiar with the concept of bugs. consequently, Excel includes a set of debugging tools that can help you correct problems in your VBA code. The VBA debugger is the topic of the next section.

## About the Debugger

In this section, I discuss the gory details of using the Excel debugging tools. These tools are much more powerful than the techniques I discuss in the previous section. But along with power comes responsibility. Using the debugging tools takes a bit of setup work.

## Setting breakpoints in your code

Earlier in this chapter, I discuss using MsgBox functions in your code to monitor the values of certain variables. Displaying a message box essentially halts your code in mid-execution, and clicking the OK button resumes execution.

Wouldn't it be nice if you could halt a routine's execution, take a look at the value of *any* of your variables, and then continue execution? Well, that's exactly what you can do by setting a breakpoint. You can set a breakpoint in your VBA code in several ways:

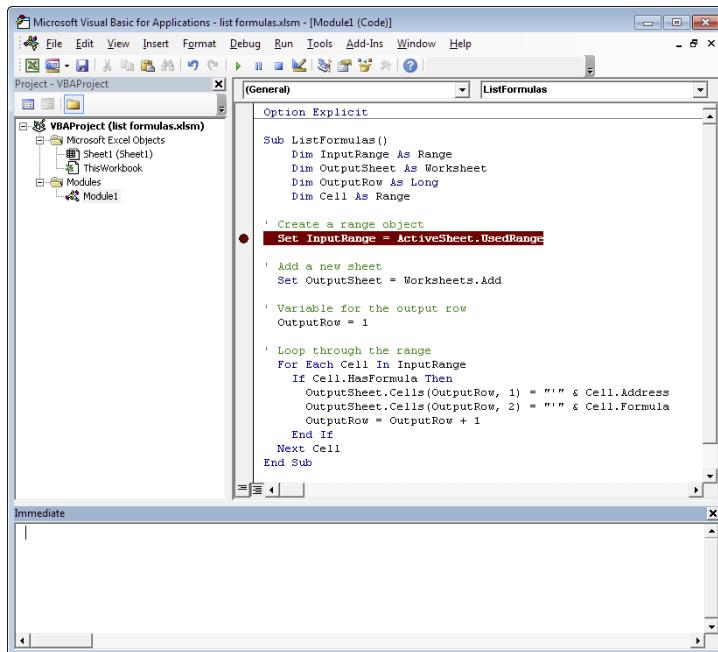
- ✓ Move the cursor to the statement at which you want execution to stop; then press F9.
- ✓ Click in the gray margin to the left of the statement at which you want execution to stop.
- ✓ Position the insertion point in the statement at which you want execution to stop. Then use the Debug⇒Toggle Breakpoint command.
- ✓ Right-click a statement and choose Toggle⇒Breakpoint from the shortcut menu.

The results of setting a breakpoint are shown in Figure 13-5. Excel highlights the line to remind you that you set a breakpoint there; it also inserts a large dot in the gray margin.

When you execute the procedure, Excel goes into *Break mode* before the line with the breakpoint is executed. In Break mode, the word [break] is displayed in the VBE title bar. To get out of Break mode and continue execution, press F5 or click the Run Sub/UserForm button in the VBE toolbar. See “stepping through your code” later in this chapter to find out more.



To quickly remove a breakpoint, click the large dot in the gray margin or move the cursor to the highlighted line and press F9. To remove all breakpoints in the module, press Ctrl+Shift+F9.



```

Microsoft Visual Basic for Applications - list formulas.xlsm - [Module1 (Code)]
File Edit View Insert Format Debug Run Tools Add-Ins Window Help
Project - VBAProject
  General ListFormulas
Option Explicit

Sub ListFormulas()
    Dim InputRange As Range
    Dim OutputSheet As Worksheet
    Dim OutputRow As Long
    Dim Cell As Range

    ' Create a range object
    Set InputRange = ActiveSheet.UsedRange
    ● Add a new sheet
    Set OutputSheet = Worksheets.Add

    ' Variable for the output row
    OutputRow = 1

    ' Loop through the range
    For Each Cell In InputRange
        If Cell.HasFormula Then
            OutputSheet.Cells(OutputRow, 1) = "=" & Cell.Address
            OutputSheet.Cells(OutputRow, 2) = "=" & Cell.Formula
            OutputRow = OutputRow + 1
        End If
    Next Cell
End Sub

```

**Figure 13-5:**  
The highlighted statement marks a breakpoint in this procedure.

VBA also has a keyword, which you can insert as a statement, that forces Break mode:

Stop

When your code reaches the Stop keyword, VBA enters Break mode.

What is Break mode? You can think of it as a state of suspended animation. Your VBA code stops running, and the current statement is highlighted in bright yellow. In Break mode, you can

- ✓ Type VBA statements in the Immediate window. (See the next section for details.)
- ✓ Press F8 to step through your code one line at a time to check various things while the program is paused.
- ✓ Move the mouse pointer over a variable to display its value in a small pop-up window.
- ✓ Skip the next statement(s) and continue execution there (or even go back a couple of statements).
- ✓ Edit a statement and then continue.



Figure 13-6 shows some debugging action. A breakpoint is set (notice the big dot), and I'm using the F8 key to step through the code line by line (notice the arrow that points to the current statement). I used the Immediate window to check a few things, the mouse pointer is hovering over the OutputRow variable, and the VBE displays its current value.

### ***Using the Immediate window***

The Immediate window may not be visible in the VBE. You can display the VBE's Immediate window at any time by pressing Ctrl+G.

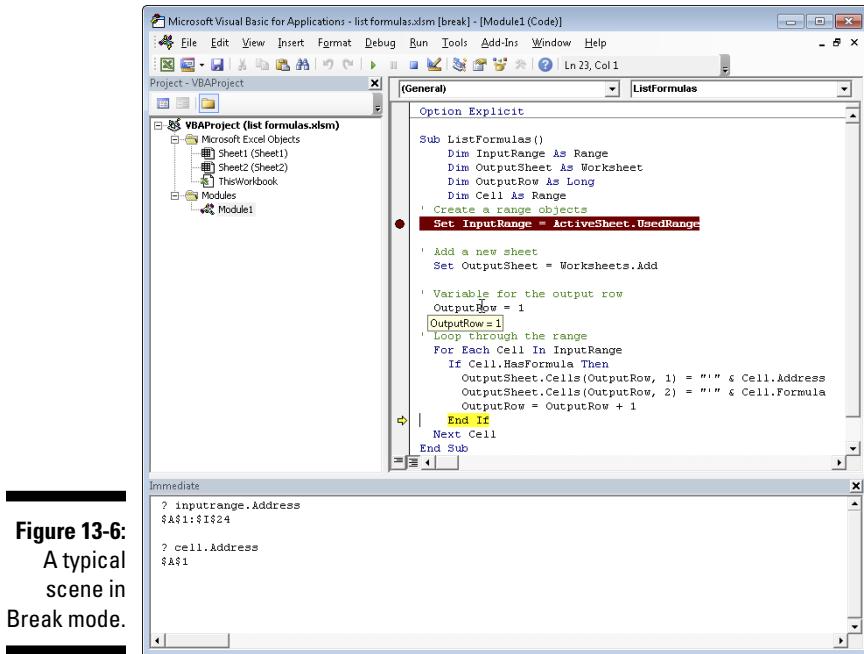
In Break mode, the Immediate window is particularly useful for finding the current value of any variable in your program. For example, if you want to know the current value of a variable named CellCount, enter the following in the Immediate window and press Enter:

Print CellCount

You can save a few milliseconds by using a question mark in place of the word *Print*, like this:

? CellCount

The Immediate window lets you do other things besides check variable values. For example, you can change the value of a variable, activate a different sheet, or even open a new workbook. Just make sure that the command you enter is a valid VBA statement.



The screenshot shows the Microsoft Visual Basic for Applications (VBA) editor in Break mode. The title bar reads "Microsoft Visual Basic for Applications - list formulas.xlsm [break] - [Module1 (Code)]". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Insert, Format, Debug, Run, Tools, Add-Ins, Window, Help. The Project Explorer on the left shows a VBAProject named "list formulas.xlsm" with Microsoft Excel Objects (Sheet1, Sheet2, ThisWorkbook), Modules, and Module1. The Module1 code window contains the following VBA code:

```

Option Explicit

Sub ListFormulas()
    Dim InputRange As Range
    Dim OutputSheet As Worksheet
    Dim OutputRow As Long
    Dim Cell As Range
    ' Create a range objects
    Set InputRange = ActiveSheet.UsedRange

    ' Add a new sheet
    Set OutputSheet = Worksheets.Add

    ' Variable for the output row
    OutputRow = 1
    [OutputRow=1]
    ' Loop through the range
    For Each Cell In InputRange
        If Cell.HasFormula Then
            OutputSheet.Cells(OutputRow, 1) = "" & Cell.Address
            OutputSheet.Cells(OutputRow, 2) = "" & Cell.Formula
            OutputRow = OutputRow + 1
        End If
    Next Cell
End Sub

```

The Immediate window at the bottom displays the results of the code execution:

```

? inputrange.Address
$A$1:$I$24

? cell.Address
$A$1

```

**Figure 13-6:**  
A typical  
scene in  
Break mode.



You can also use the Immediate window when Excel is not in Break mode. I often use the Immediate window to test small code snippets (whatever I can cram on a single line) before incorporating them into my procedures.

### Stepping through your code

While in Break mode, you can also step through your code line by line. One statement is executed each time you press F8. Throughout this line-by-line execution of your code, you can activate the Immediate window at any time to check the status of your variables.



You can use your mouse to change which statement VBA will execute next. If you put your mouse pointer in the gray margin to the left of the currently highlighted statement (which will usually be yellow), your pointer changes to a right-pointing arrow. Simply drag your mouse to the statement you want done next and watch that statement turn yellow.

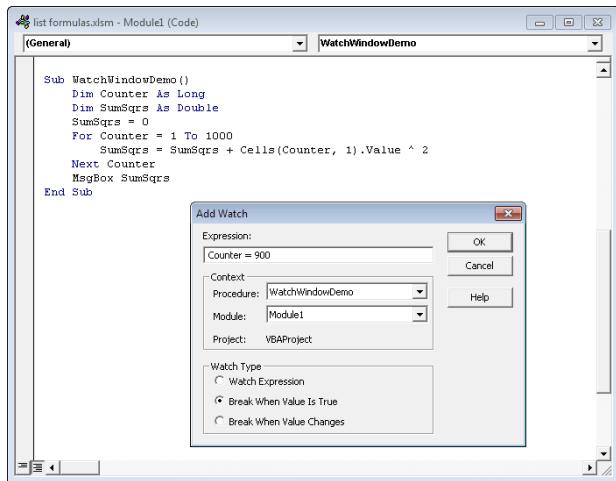
## Using the Watch window

In some cases, you may want to know whether a certain variable or expression takes on a particular value. For example, suppose that a procedure loops through 1,000 cells. You notice that a problem occurs during the 900th iteration of the loop. Well, you could insert a breakpoint in the loop, but that would

mean responding to 899 prompts before the code finally gets to the iteration you want to see (and that gets boring real fast). A more efficient solution involves setting a *watch expression*.

For example, you can create a watch expression that puts the procedure into Break mode whenever a certain variable takes on a specific value — for example, Counter=900. To create a watch expression, choose Debug→Add Watch to display the Add Watch dialog box. See Figure 13-7.

**Figure 13-7:**  
The Add Watch dialog box lets you specify a condition that causes a break.

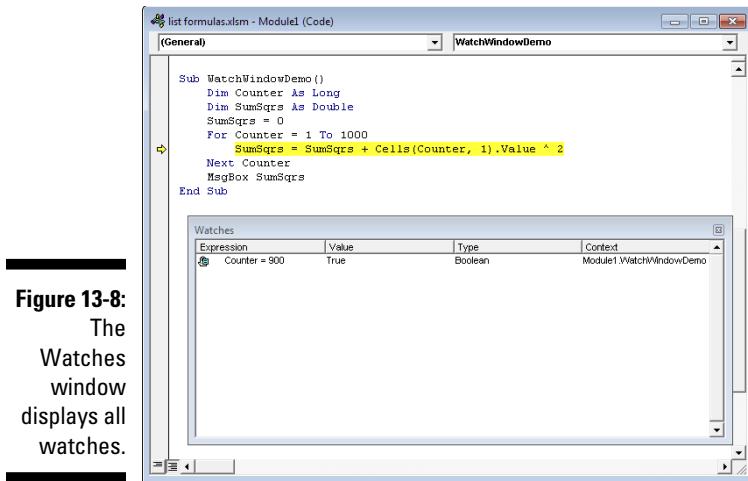


The Add Watch dialog box has three parts:

- ✓ **Expression:** Enter a valid VBA expression or a variable here. For example, Counter=900 or just Counter.
- ✓ **Context:** Select the procedure and the module you want to watch. Note that you can select All Procedures and All Modules.
- ✓ **Watch Type:** Select the type of watch by clicking an option button. Your choice here depends on the expression you enter. The first choice, Watch Expression, does not cause a break; it simply displays the expression's value when a break occurs.

Execute your procedure after setting up your watch expression(s). Things run normally until your watch expression is satisfied (based on the Watch Type you specified). When that happens, Excel enters Break mode (you did set the Watch Type to "Break When Value Is True," didn't you?). From there, you can step through the code or use the Immediate window to debug your code.

When you create a watch, VBE displays the Watches window shown in Figure 13-8. This window displays the value of all watches that you've defined. In this figure, the value of Counter hit 900, which caused Excel to enter Break mode.

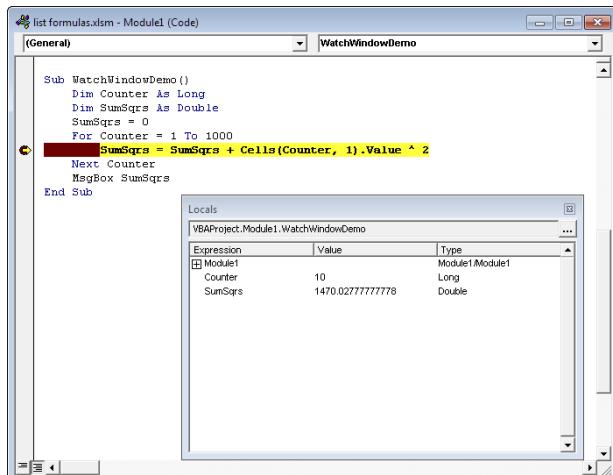


**Figure 13-8:**  
The  
Watches  
window  
displays all  
watches.

The best way to understand how this Watch business works is to use it and try various options. Before long, you'll probably wonder how you ever got along without it.

## Using the Locals window

Another useful debugging aid is the Locals window. You can show this window by choosing View→Locals Window from the VBE's menu. When you are in Break mode, this window will show you a list of all variables that are local to the current procedure (see Figure 13-9). The nice thing about this window is that you don't have to add a load of watches manually if you want to look at the content of many variables. The VBE has done all the hard work for you.



**Figure 13-9:**  
The Locals  
window  
displays all local  
variables and their  
content.

## Bug Reduction Tips

I can't tell you how to completely eliminate bugs in your VBA programs. Finding bugs in software can be a profession by itself, but I can provide a few tips to help you keep those bugs to a minimum:

- ✓ **Use an Option Explicit statement at the beginning of your modules.** This statement requires you to define the data type for every variable you use. This creates a bit more work for you, but you avoid the common error of misspelling a variable name. And it has a nice side benefit: Your routines run a bit faster.
- ✓ **Format your code with indentation.** Using indentations helps delineate different code segments. If your program has several nested For-Next loops, for example, consistent indentation helps you keep track of them all.
- ✓ **Be careful with the On Error Resume Next statement.** As I discuss in Chapter 12, this statement causes Excel to ignore any errors and continue executing the routine. In some cases, using this statement causes Excel to ignore errors that it shouldn't ignore. Your code may have bugs, and you may not even realize it.
- ✓ **Use lots of comments.** Nothing is more frustrating than revisiting code you wrote six months ago and not having a clue as to how it works. By adding a few comments to describe your logic, you can save lots of time down the road.
- ✓ **Keep your Sub and Function procedures simple.** By writing your code in small modules, each of which has a single, well-defined purpose, you simplify the debugging process.
- ✓ **Use the macro recorder to help identify properties and methods.** When I can't remember the name or the syntax of a property or method, I often simply record a macro and look at the recorded code.
- ✓ **Understand Excel's debugger.** Although it can be a bit daunting at first, the Excel debugger is a useful tool. Invest some time and get to know it.



Debugging code is not one of my favorite activities (it ranks right up there with getting audited by the IRS), but it's a necessary evil that goes along with programming. As you gain more experience with VBA, you spend less time debugging and, when you have to debug, are more efficient at doing so.

## **Chapter 14**

---

# **VBA Programming Examples**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Exploring VBA examples
  - ▶ Making your VBA code run as fast as possible
- 

**M**y philosophy for figuring out how to write Excel macros places heavy emphasis on examples. I find that a good example often communicates a concept much better than a lengthy description of the underlying theory. Because you're reading this book, you probably agree with me. This chapter presents several examples that demonstrate common VBA techniques.

I organize these examples into the following categories:

- ✓ Working with ranges
- ✓ Changing Excel settings
- ✓ Working with charts
- ✓ Speeding up your VBA code

Although you may be able to use some of the examples directly, in most cases you must adapt them to your own needs.

## ***Working with Ranges***

Most of your VBA programming probably involves worksheet ranges. (For a refresher course on Range objects, refer to Chapter 8.) When you work with Range objects, keep the following points in mind:

- ✓ Your VBA doesn't need to *select* a range to work with it.
- ✓ If your code does select a range, its worksheet must be active.
- ✓ The macro recorder doesn't always generate the most efficient code. Often, you can create your macro by using the recorder and then edit the code to make it more efficient.

- ✓ It's often a good idea to use named ranges in your VBA code. For example, using Range("Total") is better than using Range("D45"). In the latter case, if you add a row above row 45, you need to modify the macro so that it uses the correct range address (D46). Note that you name a range of cells by choosing Formulas⇒Defined Names⇒Define Name.
- ✓ When running a macro that works on the current range selection, the user might select entire columns or rows. In most cases, you don't want to loop through every cell in the selection (that could take a long time). Your macro should create a subset of the selection consisting of only the nonblank cells.
- ✓ Excel allows multiple selections. For example, you can select a range, press Ctrl, and select another range with your mouse. Your code can test for a multiple selection and take appropriate actions.



The examples in this section, which are available at this book's website, demonstrate these points.



If you prefer to enter these examples yourself, press Alt+F11 to activate the VBE. Then insert a VBA module and type the code. Make sure that the workbook is set up properly. For instance, if the example uses two sheets named Sheet1 and Sheet2, make sure that the workbook has sheets with those names.

## *Copying a range*

Copying a range ranks right up there as one of the most favorite Excel activities of all time. When you turn on the macro recorder and copy a range from A1:A5 to B1:B5, you get this VBA macro:

```
Sub CopyRange()
    Range("A1:A5").Select
    Selection.Copy
    Range("B1").Select
    ActiveSheet.Paste
    Application.CutCopyMode = False
End Sub
```

Notice the last statement. This statement was generated by pressing Esc, which cancels the marching ants display that appears in the worksheet when you copy a range.

This macro works fine, but you can copy a range more efficiently than this. You can produce the same result with the following one-line macro, which doesn't select any cells (and also doesn't require setting CutCopyMode to False):

```
Sub CopyRange2()
    Range("A1:A5").Copy Range("B1")
End Sub
```

This procedure takes advantage of the fact that the Copy method can use an argument that specifies the destination. I found that by consulting the VBA Help system. This example also demonstrates that the macro recorder doesn't always generate the most efficient code.

## ***Copying a variable-sized range***

In many cases, you need to copy a range of cells but don't know the exact row and column dimensions. For example, you might have a workbook that tracks weekly sales. The number of rows changes as you add new data.

Figure 14-1 shows a range on a worksheet. This range consists of several rows, and the number of rows will change from day to day. Because you don't know the exact range address at any given time, you need a way to write code that doesn't use a range address.

**Figure 14-1:**  
This range  
can consist  
of any num-  
ber of rows.

A	B	C	D	E	F
1	Date	Units	Amount		
2	Sep-04	181	6,697		
3	Sep-05	174	5,742		
4	Sep-06	201	7,437		
5	Sep-07	229	8,473		
6	Sep-08	203	6,496		
7	Sep-09	229	7,328		
8	Sep-10	213	8,094		
9	Sep-11	219	8,322		
10	Sep-12	236	7,788		
11	Sep-13	261	8,613		
12	Sep-14	262	8,646		
13					
14					
15					

The following macro demonstrates how to copy this range from Sheet1 to Sheet2 (beginning at cell A1). It uses the CurrentRegion property, which returns a Range object that corresponds to the block of cells around a particular cell. In this case, that cell is A1.

```
Sub CopyCurrentRegion()
    Range("A1").CurrentRegion.Copy
    Sheets("Sheet2").Select
    Range("A1").Select
    ActiveSheet.Paste
    Sheets("Sheet1").Select
    Application.CutCopyMode = False
End Sub
```

Using the CurrentRegion property is equivalent to choosing Home→Editing→Find & Select→GoTo Special (which displays the GoTo Special dialog

box) and choosing the Current Region option. To see how this works, record your actions while issuing that command. Generally, the CurrentRegion consists of a rectangular block of cells surrounded by one or more blank rows or columns.

You can make this macro even more efficient by not selecting the destination. The following macro takes advantage of the fact that the Copy method can use an argument for the destination range:

```
Sub CopyCurrentRegion2()
    Range("A1").CurrentRegion.Copy _
        Sheets("Sheet2").Range("A1")
End Sub
```



It's even a bit easier if the data is in the form of a table (created in Excel using Insert→Tables→Table). The table has a name (such as Table1) and expands automatically when new data is added.

```
Sub CopyTable()
    Range("Table1").Copy Sheets("Sheet2").Range("A1")
End Sub
```

If you try this, you'll find that the header row in the table is not copied because the name Table1 does not include that row. If you need to include the header row, change the table reference to

```
Range("Table1[#All]")
```

## Selecting to the end of a row or column

You're probably in the habit of using key combinations such as Ctrl+Shift+Right Arrow and Ctrl+Shift+Down Arrow to select a range that consists of everything from the active cell to the end of a row or a column. Not surprisingly, you can write macros that perform these types of selections.

You can use the CurrentRegion property to select an entire block of cells. But what if you want to select, say, one column from a block of cells? Fortunately, VBA can accommodate this type of action. The following VBA procedure selects the range beginning at the active cell and extending down to the cell just above the first blank cell in the column. After selecting the range, you can do whatever you want with it — copy it, move it, format it, and so on.

```
Sub SelectDown()
    Range(ActiveCell, ActiveCell.End(xlDown)).Select
End Sub
```

You can make this type of selection manually: Select the first cell, hold down the Shift key, press End, and then press Down Arrow.

This example uses the End method of the ActiveCell object, which returns a Range object. The End method takes one argument, which can be any of the following constants:

- ✓ xlUp
- ✓ xlDown
- ✓ xlToLeft
- ✓ xlToRight

Keep in mind that it's not necessary to select a range before doing something with it. The following macro applies bold formatting to a variable-sized (single column) range without selecting the range:

```
Sub MakeBold()
    Range(ActiveCell, ActiveCell.End(xlDown)) _
        .Font.Bold = True
End Sub
```

## Selecting a row or column

The following procedure demonstrates how to select the column that contains the active cell. It uses the EntireColumn property, which returns a Range object that consists of a full column:

```
Sub SelectColumn()
    ActiveCell.EntireColumn.Select
End Sub
```

As you may expect, VBA also offers an EntireRow property, which returns a Range object that consists of an entire row.

## Moving a range

You move a range by cutting it to the Clipboard and then pasting it in another area. If you record your actions while performing a move operation, the macro recorder generates code like the following:

```
Sub MoveRange()
    Range("A1:C6").Select
    Selection.Cut
    Range("A10").Select
    ActiveSheet.Paste
End Sub
```

As with the copying example earlier in this chapter, this is not the most efficient way to move a range of cells. In fact, you can move a range with a single VBA statement, as follows:

```
Sub MoveRange2()
    Range("A1:C6").Cut Range("A10")
End Sub
```

This macro takes advantage of the fact that the Cut method can use an argument that specifies the destination. Notice also that the range was not selected. The cell pointer remains in its original position.

## *Looping through a range efficiently*

Many macros perform an operation on each cell in a range, or they might perform selected actions based on each cell's content. These macros usually include a For-Next loop that processes each cell in the range.

The following example demonstrates how to loop through a range of cells. In this case, the range is the current selection. An object variable named Cell refers to the cell being processed. Within the For Each-Next loop, the single statement evaluates the cell and applies bold formatting if the cell contains a positive value.

```
Sub ProcessCells()
    Dim Cell As Range
    For Each Cell In Selection
        If Cell.Value > 0 Then Cell.Font.Bold = True
    Next Cell
End Sub
```

This example works, but what if the user's selection consists of an entire column or row? This is not uncommon because Excel lets you perform operations on entire columns or rows. In such a case, the macro seems to take forever because it loops through each cell (all 1,048,576 of them) in the column — even the blank cells. To make the macro more efficient, you need a way to process only the nonblank cells.

The following routine does just that by using the SpecialCells method. (Refer to the VBA Help system for specific details about its arguments.) This routine uses the Set keyword to create two new Range objects: the selection's subset that consists of cells with constants and the selection's subset that consists of cells with formulas. The routine processes each of these subsets, with the net effect of skipping all blank cells. Pretty slick, eh?

```
Sub SkipBlanks()
    Dim ConstantCells As Range
    Dim FormulaCells As Range
    Dim cell As Range
    ' Ignore errors
    On Error Resume Next

    ' Process the constants
    Set ConstantCells = Selection _
        .SpecialCells(xlConstants)
    For Each cell In ConstantCells
        If cell.Value > 0 Then
            cell.Font.Bold = True
        End If
    Next cell

    ' Process the formulas
    Set FormulaCells = Selection _
        .SpecialCells(xlFormulas)
    For Each cell In FormulaCells
        If cell.Value > 0 Then
            cell.Font.Bold = True
        End If
    Next cell
End Sub
```

The SkipBlanks procedure works equally fast, regardless of what you select. For example, you can select the range, all columns in the range, all rows in the range, or even the entire worksheet. It's a vast improvement over the ProcessCells procedure presented earlier in this section.

Notice that I use the following statement in this code:

```
On Error Resume Next
```

This statement tells Excel to ignore any errors that occur and simply process the next statement (see Chapter 12 for a discussion of error handling). This statement is necessary because the SpecialCells method produces an error if no cells qualify.

Using the SpecialCells method is equivalent to choosing the Home→Editing→Find & Select→GoTo Special command and selecting the Constants option or the Formulas option. To get a feel for how this works, record your actions while you issue that command and select various options.

## *Looping through a range efficiently (Part II)*

And now, the sequel. This section demonstrates another way of processing cells in an efficient manner. This method takes advantage of the UsedRange property — which returns a Range object that consists only of the used area of the worksheet. It also uses the Intersect method, which returns a Range object that consists of cells that two ranges have in common.

Here's a variation of the SkipBlanks procedure from the previous section:

```
Sub SkipBlanks2()
    Dim WorkRange As Range
    Dim cell As Range
    Set WorkRange = Intersect(Selection, ActiveSheet.UsedRange)
    For Each cell In WorkRange
        If cell.Value > 0 Then
            cell.Font.Bold = True
        End If
    Next cell
End Sub
```

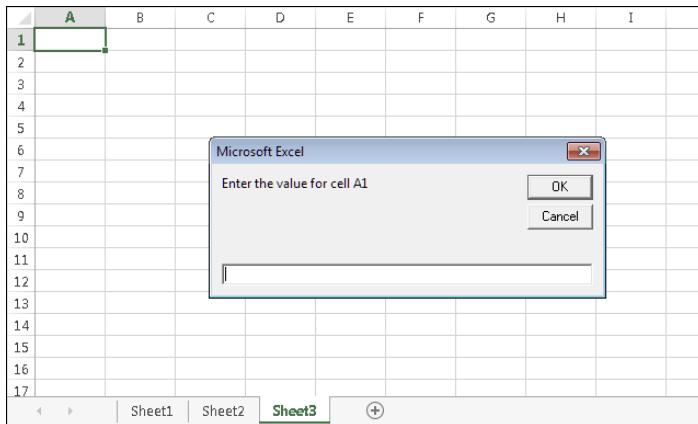
The WorkRange object variable consists of cells that are common to the user's selection, and the worksheet's used range. Therefore, if an entire column is selected, WorkRange contains only the cells that are in that column and also within the used area of the worksheet. It's fast and efficient, with no time wasted on processing cells that are outside of the worksheet's used area.

## *Prompting for a cell value*

As shown in Figure 14-2, you can use VBA's InputBox function to get a value from the user. Then you can insert that value into a cell. The following procedure demonstrates how to ask the user for a value and place the value in cell A1 of the active worksheet, using only one statement:

```
Sub GetValue()
    Range("A1").Value = InputBox(_
        "Enter the value for cell A1")
End Sub
```

**Figure 14-2:**  
Use the VBA  
InputBox  
function to  
get a value  
from the  
user.



If you try this example, you'll find that clicking the Cancel button in the InputBox erases the current value in cell A1. Erasing the user's data isn't a very good programming practice. Clicking Cancel should do nothing at all.

The following macro demonstrates a better approach: using a variable (x) to store the value entered by the user. If the value is not empty (that is, the user didn't click Cancel), the value of x is placed into cell A1. Otherwise, nothing happens.

```
Sub GetValue2()
    Dim x as Variant
    x = InputBox("Enter the value for cell A1")
    If x <> "" Then Range("A1").Value = x
End Sub
```

The variable x is defined as a Variant data type because it could be a number or an empty string (if the user clicks Cancel).

## Determining the selection type

If you design your macro to work with a range selection, the macro must be able to determine whether a range is actually selected. If something other than a range is selected (such as a chart or a shape), the macro will probably bomb. The following statement uses the VBA TypeName function to display the type of object that is currently selected:

```
MsgBox TypeName(Selection)
```

If a Range object is selected, the MsgBox displays Range. If your macro works only with ranges, you can use an If statement to ensure that a range is selected. This example displays a message and exits the procedure if the current selection is not a Range object:

```

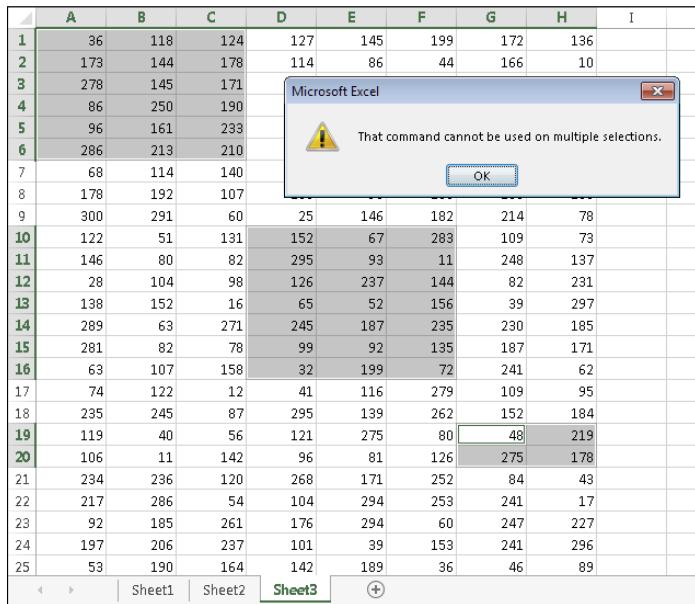
Sub CheckSelection()
    If TypeName(Selection) <> "Range" Then
        MsgBox "Select a range."
        Exit Sub
    End If
    ' ... [Other statements go here]
End Sub

```

## *Identifying a multiple selection*

As you know, Excel allows multiple selections by pressing Ctrl while choosing objects or ranges. This can cause problems with some macros. For example, you can't copy a multiple selection that consists of nonadjacent cells. If you attempt to do so, Excel scolds you with the message shown in Figure 14-3.

**Figure 14-3:**  
Excel  
doesn't like  
it if you try  
to copy a  
multiple  
selection.



The following macro demonstrates how to determine whether the user made a multiple selection so your macro can take appropriate action:

```

Sub MultipleSelection()
    If Selection.Areas.Count > 1 Then
        MsgBox "Multiple selections not allowed."
        Exit Sub
    End If
    ' ... [Other statements go here]
End Sub

```

This example uses the Areas method, which returns a collection of all ranges in the selection. The Count property returns the number of objects in the collection.

## Changing Excel Settings

Some of the most useful macros are simple procedures that change one or more of Excel's settings. For example, if you find yourself making frequent trips to the Excel Options dialog box to change a setting, that's a good candidate for a simple time-saving macro.

This section presents two examples that show you how to change settings in Excel. You can apply the general principles demonstrated by these examples to other operations that change settings.

### Changing Boolean settings

Like a light switch, a *Boolean* setting is either on or off. For example, you might want to create a macro that turns the worksheet page break display on and off. After you print or preview a worksheet, Excel displays dashed lines to indicate the page breaks. Some people (author included) find these dashed lines very annoying. Unfortunately, the only way to get rid of the page break display is to open the Excel Options dialog box, click the Advanced tab, and scroll down until you find the Show Page Breaks check box. If you turn on the macro recorder when you change that option, Excel generates the following code:

```
ActiveSheet.DisplayPageBreaks = False
```

On the other hand, if page breaks are not visible when you record the macro, Excel generates the following code:

```
ActiveSheet.DisplayPageBreaks = True
```

This may lead you to conclude that you need two macros: one to turn on the page break display and one to turn it off. Not true. The following procedure uses the Not operator, which turns True to False and False to True. Executing the TogglePageBreaks procedure is a simple way to toggle the page break display from True to False and from False to True:

```
Sub TogglePageBreaks()
    On Error Resume Next
    ActiveSheet.DisplayPageBreaks = Not _
        ActiveSheet.DisplayPageBreaks
End Sub
```

The first statement tells Excel about any errors. For example, a chart sheet doesn't display page breaks, so if you execute the macro when a chart sheet is active, you won't see an error message.

You can use this technique to toggle any settings that have Boolean (True or False) values.

## *Changing non-Boolean settings*

You can use a Select Case structure for non-Boolean settings. This example toggles the calculation mode between manual and automatic and displays a message indicating the current mode:

```
Sub ToggleCalcMode()
    Select Case Application.Calculation
        Case xlManual
            Application.Calculation = xlCalculationAutomatic
            MsgBox "Automatic Calculation Mode"
        Case xlAutomatic
            Application.Calculation = xlCalculationManual
            MsgBox "Manual Calculation Mode"
    End Select
End Sub
```

You can adapt this technique for changing other non-Boolean settings.

## *Working with Charts*

Charts are jam-packed with different objects, so manipulating charts with VBA can be a bit of a challenge.

I fired up Excel 2013, entered some numbers in A1:A3, and selected that range. Then I turned on the macro recorder and created a basic column chart with three data points. I deleted the chart's gridlines and changed the chart's title. Here's the macro that was recorded:

```
Sub Macro1()
    ' Recorded by Excel 2013
    ActiveSheet.Shapes.AddChart2(201, xlColumnClustered).Select
    ActiveChart.SetSourceData Source:=Range("Sheet1!$A$1:$A$3")
    ActiveChart.SetElement (msoElementPrimaryValueGridLinesNone)
    ActiveChart.ChartTitle.Select
    ActiveChart.ChartTitle.Text = "This is my chart"
End Sub
```

I was actually kind of surprised to see this code, because I'd never heard of the AddChart2 method. As it turns out, AddChart2 is new to Excel 2013. If you record that same macro in Excel 2010, you get this code:

```
Sub Macro1()
    Recorded by Excel 2010
    ActiveSheet.Shapes.AddChart.Select
    ActiveChart.ChartType = xlColumnClustered
    ActiveChart.SetSourceData Source:=Range("Sheet1!$A$1:$A$3")
    ActiveChart.Axes(xlValue).MajorGridlines.Select
    Selection.Delete
    ActiveChart.SetElement (msoElementChartTitleAboveChart)
    ActiveChart.ChartTitle.Text = "This is my chart"
End Sub
```

What does it all mean? It means that the macro recorded in Excel 2013 will not work in Excel 2010. But the macro recorded in Excel 2010 *will* work in Excel 2013. In other words, the Excel 2010 macro exhibits forward compatibility. The Excel 2013 macro is not backward compatible.



A typical Excel 2013 user would probably know nothing about macro compatibility as it relates to chart creation. But if you share your macro with someone who uses an earlier version, you'll find out about it quickly. Bottom line? If you rely on the macro-recorder for chart-related macros, make sure that you test the macros will all versions of Excel that will be running the macros.

## AddChart versus AddChart2

Here's the official syntax for the AddChart method (which is compatible with Excel 2007 and later):

```
.AddChart(Type, Left, Top, Width, Height)
```

Here's the syntax for the AddChart2 method (which is compatible only with Excel 2013):

```
.AddChart2(Style, XlChartType, Left, Top, Width, Height, NewLayout)
```

As you can see, the AddChart2 method takes several additional arguments — arguments that specify the style, chart type, and layout. The AddChart method, on the other hand, simply creates an empty chart. The specifics for the chart must be provided in additional statements.

Examining the recorded code does reveal a few things that may be helpful in writing your own chart-related macros. If you're curious, here's a hand-crafted version of that macro that creates a chart from the selected range:

```

Sub CreateAChart()
    Dim ChartData As Range
    Dim ChartShape As Shape
    Dim NewChart As Chart

    ' Create object variables
    Set ChartData = ActiveWindow.RangeSelection
    Set ChartShape = ActiveSheet.Shapes.AddChart
    Set NewChart = ChartShape.Chart

    With NewChart
        .ChartType = xlColumnClustered
        .SetSourceData Source:=Range(ChartData.Address)
        .SetElement (msoElementLegendRight)
        .SetElement (msoElementChartTitleAboveChart)
        .ChartTitle.Text = "This is my chart"
    End With
End Sub

```

The macro is compatible with Excel 2007 and later. The chart that's created is a clustered column chart with a legend and a title. This basic chart-creating macro can be customized easily. One way to do it is to record your actions while you modify the chart and then use the recorded code to guide you.

By the way, I discuss the With End-With construct later in this chapter. It's a handy way to save some typing and make your code easier to read.

If you need to write VBA macros that manipulate charts, you must understand some terminology. An *embedded chart* on a worksheet is a ChartObject object. You can activate a ChartObject much like you activate a sheet. The following statement activates the ChartObject named Chart 1:

```
ActiveSheet.ChartObjects("Chart 1").Activate
```

After you activate the chart, you can refer to it in your VBA code as the ActiveChart. If the chart is on a separate chart sheet, it becomes the active chart as soon as you activate that chart sheet.



A ChartObject is also a Shape, which can be a bit confusing. In fact, when your VBA code creates a chart, it starts by adding a new Shape. You can also activate a chart by selecting the Shape object that holds the chart:

```
ActiveSheet.Shapes("Chart 1").Select
```

I prefer to use the ChartObject object in my code, just to make it perfectly clear that I'm working with a chart.



When you click an embedded chart, Excel actually selects an object *inside* the ChartObject object. You can select the ChartObject itself by pressing Ctrl while clicking the embedded chart.

## *Modifying the chart type*

Here's a confusing statement for you: A ChartObject object acts as a container for a Chart object. Read that a few times, and it might actually make sense.

To modify a chart with VBA, you don't have to activate the chart. Rather, the Chart method can return the chart contained in the ChartObject. Are you thoroughly confused yet? The following two procedures have the same effect — they change the chart named Chart 1 to an area chart. The first procedure activates the chart first and then works with the active chart. The second procedure doesn't activate the chart. Rather it uses the Chart property to return the Chart object contained in the ChartObject object.

```
Sub ModifyChart1()
    ActiveSheet.ChartObjects("Chart 1").Activate
    ActiveChart.Type = xlArea
End Sub

Sub ModifyChart2()
    ActiveSheet.ChartObjects("Chart 1").Chart.Type = xlArea
End Sub
```

## *Looping through the ChartObjects collection*

This example changes the chart type of every embedded chart on the active sheet. The procedure uses a For Each-Next loop to cycle through each object in the ChartObjects collection, access the Chart object in each, and change its Type property.

```
Sub ChartType()
    Dim cht As ChartObject
    For Each cht In ActiveSheet.ChartObjects
        cht.Chart.Type = xlArea
    Next cht
End Sub
```

The following macro performs the same function but works on all the chart sheets in the active workbook:

```
Sub ChartType2()
    Dim cht As Chart
    For Each cht In ActiveWorkbook.Charts
        cht.Type = xlArea
    Next cht
End Sub
```

## Modifying chart properties

The following example changes the Legend font for all charts on the active sheet. It uses a For-Next loop to process all ChartObject objects:

```
Sub LegendMod()
    Dim chtObj As ChartObject
    For Each chtObj In ActiveSheet.ChartObjects
        With chtObj.Chart.Legend.Font
            .Name = "Calibri"
            .FontStyle = "Bold"
            .Size = 12
        End With
    Next cht
End Sub
```

Note that the Font object is contained in the Legend object, which is contained in the Chart object, which is contained in the ChartObjects collection. Now do you understand why it's called an *object hierarchy*?

## Applying chart formatting

This example applies several different types of formatting to the active chart. I created this macro by recording my actions as I formatted a chart. Then I cleaned up the recorded code by removing irrelevant lines.

```
Sub ChartMods()
    ActiveChart.Type = xlArea
    ActiveChart.ChartArea.Font.Name = "Calibri"
    ActiveChart.ChartArea.Font.FontStyle = "Regular"
    ActiveChart.ChartArea.Font.Size = 9
    ActiveChart.PlotArea.Interior.ColorIndex = xlNone
    ActiveChart.Axes(xlValue).TickLabels.Font.Bold = True
    ActiveChart.Axes(xlCategory).TickLabels.Font.Bold = _
        True
    ActiveChart.Legend.Position = xlBottom
End Sub
```

You must activate a chart before executing the ChartMods macro. Activate an embedded chart by clicking it. To activate a chart on a chart sheet, activate the chart sheet.

To ensure that a chart is selected, you can add a statement to determine if a chart is active. Here's the modified macro, which displays a message (and ends) if a chart is not activated:

```
Sub ChartMods2()
    If ActiveChart Is Nothing Then
        MsgBox "Activate a chart."
        Exit Sub
    End If
    ActiveChart.Type = xlArea
    ActiveChart.ChartArea.Font.Name = "Calibri"
    ActiveChart.ChartArea.Font.FontStyle = "Regular"
    ActiveChart.ChartArea.Font.Size = 9
    ActiveChart.PlotArea.Interior.ColorIndex = xlNone
    ActiveChart.Axes(xlValue).TickLabels.Font.Bold = True
    ActiveChart.Axes(xlCategory).TickLabels.Font.Bold = _
        True
    ActiveChart.Legend.Position = xlBottom
End Sub
```

Here's another version that uses the With-End With construct to save some typing and make the code a bit clearer. Once again, I'm getting ahead of myself. Flip ahead a few pages to read about the With End-With structure.

```
Sub ChartMods3()
    If ActiveChart Is Nothing Then
        MsgBox "Activate a chart."
        Exit Sub
    End If
    With ActiveChart
        .Type = xlArea
        .ChartArea.Font.Name = "Calibri"
        .ChartArea.Font.FontStyle = "Regular"
        .ChartArea.Font.Size = 9
        .PlotArea.Interior.ColorIndex = xlNone
        .Axes(xlValue).TickLabels.Font.Bold = True
        .Axes(xlCategory).TickLabels.Font.Bold = True
        .Legend.Position = xlBottom
    End With
End Sub
```

When it comes to using VBA to work with charts, this short section barely scratched the surface. There's a lot more to it, of course, but at least this basic introduction will get you headed in the right direction.

## VBA Speed Tips

VBA is fast, but it's not always fast enough. (Computer programs are never fast enough.) This section presents some programming examples you can use to speed up your macros.

## Turning off screen updating

When executing a macro, you can sit back and watch all the on-screen action that occurs in the macro. Although doing this can be instructive, after getting the macro working properly, it's often annoying and can slow down the course of your macro considerably. Fortunately, you can disable the screen updating that normally occurs when you execute a macro. To turn off screen updating, use the following statement:

```
Application.ScreenUpdating = False
```

If you want the user to see what's happening at any point during the macro, use the following statement to turn screen updating back on:

```
Application.ScreenUpdating = True
```

To demonstrate the difference in speed, execute this simple macro, which fills a range with numbers:

```
Sub FillRange()
    Dim r As Long, c As Long
    Dim Number As Long
    Number = 0
    For r = 1 To 50
        For c = 1 To 50
            Number = Number + 1
            Cells(r, c).Select
            Cells(r, c).Value = Number
        Next c
    Next r
End Sub
```

You see each cell being selected, and the value being entered into the cells. Now insert the following statement at the beginning of the procedure and execute it again:

```
Application.ScreenUpdating = False
```

The range is filled up much faster, and you don't see the end result until the macro is finished running and screen updating is (automatically) set to True.



When debugging code, sometimes program execution ends somewhere in the middle, without having turned Screen updating back on (and yes, this happens to me, too). This sometimes causes Excel's application window to become totally unresponsive. The way out of this frozen state is simple: Go back to the VBE and execute the following statement in the Immediate window:

```
Application.ScreenUpdating = True
```

## Turning off automatic calculation

If you have a worksheet with many complex formulas, you may find that you can speed things up considerably by setting the calculation mode to manual while your macro is executing. When the macro finishes, set the calculation mode back to automatic.

The following statement sets the Excel calculation mode to manual:

```
Application.Calculation = xlCalculationManual
```

Execute the next statement to set the calculation mode to automatic:

```
Application.Calculation = xlCalculationAutomatic
```

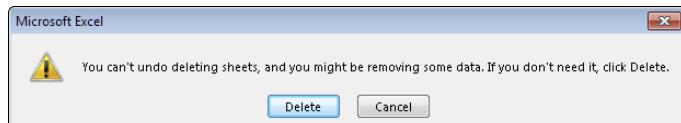


If your code uses cells with formula results, remember that turning off calculation means that the cells will not be recalculated unless you explicitly tell Excel to do so!

## Eliminating those pesky alert messages

As you know, a macro can automatically perform a series of actions. In many cases, you can start a macro and then go hang out in the break room while Excel does its thing. Some Excel operations, however, display messages that require a human response. For example, if your macro deletes a nonempty sheet, your code comes to a screeching halt while Excel waits for your response to the message shown in Figure 14-4. These types of messages mean that you can't leave Excel unattended while it executes your macro — unless you know the secret trick.

**Figure 14-4:**  
You can instruct Excel to not display these types of alerts while running a macro.



The secret trick: To avoid these alert messages, insert the following VBA statement in your macro:

```
Application.DisplayAlerts = False
```

Excel executes the default operation for these types of messages. In the case of deleting a sheet, the default operation is Delete (which is just what you want to happen). If you're not sure what the default operation is, perform a test and see what happens.

When the procedure ends, Excel automatically resets the DisplayAlerts property to True (its normal state). If you need to turn the alerts back on before the procedure ends, use this statement:

```
Application.DisplayAlerts = True
```

## *Simplifying object references*

As you probably already know, references to objects can become very lengthy. For example, a fully qualified reference to a Range object may look like this:

```
Workbooks("MyBook.xlsx").Worksheets("Sheet1")  
    .Range("InterestRate")
```

If your macro frequently uses this range, you may want to create an object variable by using the Set command. For example, the following statement assigns this Range object to an object variable named Rate:

```
Set Rate = Workbooks("MyBook.xlsx")  
    .Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("InterestRate")
```

After defining this object variable, you can use the variable Rate rather than the lengthy reference. For example, you can change the value of the cell named InterestRate:

```
Rate.Value = .085
```

This is much easier to type (and understand) than the following statement:

```
Workbooks("MyBook.xlsx").Worksheets("Sheet1").  
    Range("InterestRate") = .085
```

In addition to simplifying your coding, using object variables also speeds up your macros considerably. After creating object variables, I've seen some macros execute twice as fast as before.

## Declaring variable types

You don't usually have to worry about the type of data you assign to a variable. Excel handles all the details for you behind the scenes. For example, if you have a variable named MyVar, you can assign a number of any type to that variable. You can even assign a text string to it later in the procedure.



But if you want your procedures to execute as fast as possible (and avoid some potentially nasty problems), tell Excel what type of data will be assigned to each of your variables. This is known as *declaring* a variable's type. (Refer to Chapter 7 for complete details.) Get into the habit of declaring all variables that you use.

In general, you should use the data type that requires the smallest number of bytes yet can still handle all the data assigned to it. When VBA works with data, execution speed depends on the number of bytes VBA has at its disposal. In other words, the fewer bytes data uses, the faster VBA can access and manipulate the data. An exception to this is the Integer data type. If speed is critical, use the Long data type instead.

If you use an object variable (as described in the preceding section), you can declare the variable as a particular object type. Here's an example:

```
Dim Rate as Range
Set Rate = Workbooks("MyBook.xlsx") _
    .Worksheets("Sheet1").Range("InterestRate")
```

## Using the With-End With structure

Do you need to set a number of properties for an object? Your code runs faster if you use the With-End With structure. An additional benefit is that your code may be easier to read.

The following code does not use With-End With:

```
Selection.HorizontalAlignment = xlCenter
Selection.VerticalAlignment = xlCenter
Selection.WrapText = True
Selection.Orientation = 0
Selection.ShrinkToFit = False
Selection.MergeCells = False
```

Here's the same code, rewritten to use With-End With:

```
With Selection
    .HorizontalAlignment = xlCenter
    .VerticalAlignment = xlCenter
    .WrapText = True
    .Orientation = 0
    .ShrinkToFit = False
    .MergeCells = False
End With
```

If this structure seems familiar to you, it's probably because the macro recorder uses With-End With whenever it can. And I presented other examples earlier in this chapter.

# Part IV

# Communicating with Your Users

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K
1	930	81	268	226	480	273	413	878	510	467	
2	668	114						435	715	484	
3	924	971						329	238	548	
4	91	289						716	677	681	
5	83	133						857	309	865	
6	170	511						13	419	55	
7	50	138	342	760	104	219	627	578	881	444	
8	181	454	522	95	726	721	266	479	982	982	
9	358	885	591	48	639	915	127	808	504	136	
10	540	366	312	642	836	639	264	720	49	914	
11	931	100	637	336	4	640	997	567	618	122	
12	305	578	658	162	106	842	115	295	441	884	
13	586	840	814	119	208	861	330	79	53	409	
14	673	995	340	814	556	773	981	216	622	2	
15	526	986	972	349	903	126	984	269	530	334	
16	483	603	903	463	93	208	39	449	197	956	
17	848	751	978	927	880	561	82	267	162	62	
18	714	965	158	177	16	749	985	413	410	511	
19	40	175	213	210	571	370	513	905	951	86	



Supplement your understanding of presentations with this article online at Dummies.com  
[www.dummies.com/extras/excelvbaprogramming](http://www.dummies.com/extras/excelvbaprogramming).

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ Save time in various ways by using built-in custom dialog box alternatives
- ✓ Discover how to develop custom dialog boxes (also known as UserForms)
- ✓ Work with dialog box controls, such as buttons, list boxes, and check boxes
- ✓ Find out lots of useful tips and tricks for creating custom dialog boxes
- ✓ Modify Excel's user interface to make it easier to run your macros
- ✓ Supplement your understanding of presentations with this article online at Dummies.com: [www.dummies.com/extras/excelvba programming](http://www.dummies.com/extras/excelvba programming).

# **Chapter 15**

---

# **Simple Dialog Boxes**

---

## ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Saving time by using any of several alternatives to UserForms
  - ▶ Using the InputBox and MsgBox functions to get information from the user
  - ▶ Getting a filename and path from the user
  - ▶ Getting a folder name from the user
  - ▶ Writing VBA code to execute Ribbon commands that display Excel built-in dialog boxes
- 

**Y**ou can't use Excel very long without being exposed to dialog boxes. They seem to pop up all the time. Excel — like most Windows programs — uses dialog boxes to obtain information, clarify commands, and display messages. If you develop VBA macros, you can create your own dialog boxes that work just like those built into Excel. Those custom dialog boxes are called UserForms in VBA.

This chapter doesn't tell you anything about creating UserForms. Rather, it describes some techniques you might be able to use in *place* of UserForms. Chapters 16 through 18, however, do cover UserForms.

## ***UserForm Alternatives***

Some of the VBA macros you create behave the same every time you execute them. For example, you may develop a macro that enters a list of your employees into a worksheet range. This macro always produces the same result and requires no additional user input.

You might develop other macros, however, that behave differently under various circumstances or that offer the user options. In such cases, the macro may benefit from a custom dialog box. A custom dialog box provides a simple means for getting information from the user. Your macro then uses that information to determine what it should do.

UserForms can be quite useful, but creating them takes time. Before I cover the topic of creating UserForms in the next chapter, you need to know about some potentially timesaving alternatives.

VBA lets you display several different types of dialog boxes that you can sometimes use in place of a UserForm. You can customize these built-in dialog boxes in some ways, but they certainly don't offer the options available in a UserForm. In some cases, however, they're just what the doctor ordered.

In this chapter, you read about

- ✓ The MsgBox function
- ✓ The InputBox function
- ✓ The GetOpenFilename method
- ✓ The GetSaveAsFilename method
- ✓ The FileDialog method

I also describe how to use VBA to display some of the Excel built-in dialog boxes — the dialog boxes that Excel uses to get information from you.

## *The MsgBox Function*

You're probably already familiar with the VBA MsgBox function — I use it quite a bit in the examples throughout this book. The MsgBox function, which accepts the arguments shown in Table 15-1, is handy for displaying information and getting simple user input. It's able to get user input because it's a function. A function, as you recall, returns a value. In the case of the MsgBox function, it uses a dialog box to get the value that it returns. Keep reading to see exactly how it works.

Here's a simplified version of the syntax for the MsgBox function:

```
MsgBox(prompt[, buttons][, title])
```

---

**Table 15-1**                   **MsgBox Function Arguments**

---

<b>Argument</b>	<b>What It Affects</b>
Prompt	The text Excel displays in the message box
Buttons	A number that specifies which buttons (along with what icon) appear in the message box (optional)
Title	The text that appears in the message box's title bar (optional)

---

## Displaying a simple message box

You can use the MsgBox function in two ways:

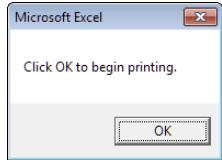
- ✓ **To simply show a message to the user.** In this case, you don't care about the result returned by the function.
- ✓ **To get a response from the user.** In this case, you do care about the result returned by the function. The result depends on the button that the user clicks.

If you use the MsgBox function by itself, don't include parentheses around the arguments. The following example simply displays a message and does not return a result. When the message is displayed, the code stops until the user clicks OK.

```
Sub MsgBoxDemo()  
    MsgBox "Click OK to begin printing."  
    Sheets("Results").PrintOut  
End Sub
```

Figure 15-1 shows how this message box looks. In this case, printing commences when the user clicks OK. Notice that there is no way to cancel the printing? The next section describes how to fix that.

**Figure 15-1:**  
A simple  
message  
box.



## Getting a response from a message box

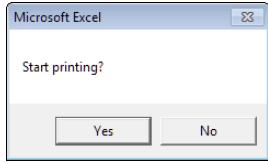
If you display a message box that has more than just an OK button, you'll probably want to know which button the user clicks. You're in luck. The MsgBox function can return a value that represents which button is clicked. You can assign the result of the MsgBox function to a variable.

In the following code, I use some built-in constants (which I describe later in Table 15-2) that make it easy to work with the values returned by MsgBox:

```
Sub GetAnswer()
    Dim Ans As Integer
    Ans = MsgBox("Start printing?", vbYesNo)
    Select Case Ans
        Case vbYes
            ActiveSheet.PrintOut
        Case vbNo
            MsgBox "Printing canceled"
    End Select
End Sub
```

Figure 15-2 shows how it looks. When you execute this procedure, the Ans variable is assigned a value of either vbYes or vbNo, depending on which button the user clicks. The Select Case statement uses the Ans value to determine which action the code should perform.

**Figure 15-2:**  
A simple  
message  
box, with  
two buttons.



You can also use the MsgBox function result without using a variable, as the following example demonstrates:

```
Sub GetAnswer2()
    If MsgBox("Start printing?", vbYesNo) = vbYes Then
        '      ...[code if Yes is clicked]...
    Else
        '      ...[code if Yes is not clicked]...
    End If
End Sub
```

## Customizing message boxes

The flexibility of the buttons argument makes it easy to customize your message boxes. You can choose which buttons to display, determine whether an icon appears, and decide which button is the default (the default button is “clicked” if the user presses Enter).

Table 15-2 lists some of the built-in constants you can use for the buttons argument. If you prefer, you can use the value rather than a constant (but I think using the built-in constants is a lot easier).

**Table 15-2****Constants Used in the MsgBox Function**

<b>Constant</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>What It Does</b>
vbOKOnly	0	Displays OK button only.
vbOKCancel	1	Displays OK and Cancel buttons.
vbAbortRetryIgnore	2	Displays Abort, Retry, and Ignore buttons.
vbYesNoCancel	3	Displays Yes, No, and Cancel buttons.
vbYesNo	4	Displays Yes and No buttons.
vbRetryCancel	5	Displays Retry and Cancel buttons.
vbCritical	16	Displays Critical Message icon.
vbQuestion	32	Displays Warning Query icon.
vbExclamation	48	Displays Warning Message icon.
vbInformation	64	Displays Information Message icon.
vbDefaultButton1	0	First button is default.
vbDefaultButton2	256	Second button is default.
vbDefaultButton3	512	Third button is default.
vbDefaultButton4	768	Fourth button is default.

To use more than one of these constants as an argument, just connect them with a + operator. For example, to display a message box with Yes and No buttons and an exclamation icon, use the following expression as the second MsgBox argument:

```
vbYesNo + vbExclamation
```

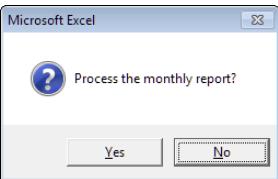
Or, if you prefer to make your code less understandable, use a value of 52 (that is, 4 + 48).

The following example uses a combination of constants to display a message box with a Yes button and a No button (vbYesNo) as well as a question mark icon (vbQuestion). The constant vbDefaultButton2 designates the second button (No) as the default button — that is, the button that is clicked if the user presses Enter. For simplicity, I assign these constants to the Config variable and then use Config as the second argument in the MsgBox function:

```
Sub GetAnswer3()
    Dim Config As Integer
    Dim Ans As Integer
    Config = vbYesNo + vbQuestion + vbDefaultButton2
    Ans = MsgBox("Process the monthly report?", Config)
    If Ans = vbYes Then RunReport
End Sub
```

Figure 15-3 shows the message box Excel displays when you execute the GetAnswer3 procedure. If the user clicks the Yes button, the routine executes the procedure named RunReport (which is not shown). If the user clicks the No button (or presses Enter), the routine ends with no action. Because I omitted the title argument in the MsgBox function, Excel uses the default title, Microsoft Excel.

**Figure 15-3:**  
The MsgBox  
function's  
buttons  
argument  
determines  
what  
appears in  
the mes-  
sage box.



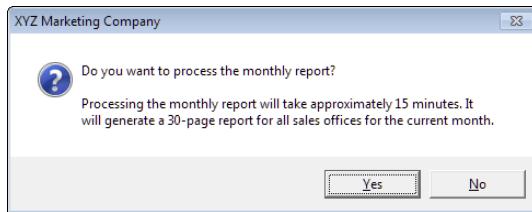
The following routine provides another example of using the MsgBox function:

```
Sub GetAnswer4()
    Dim Msg As String, Title As String
    Dim Config As Integer, Ans As Integer
    Msg = "Do you want to process the monthly report?"
    Msg = Msg & vbCrLf & vbCrLf
    Msg = Msg & "Processing the monthly report will "
    Msg = Msg & "take approximately 15 minutes. It "
    Msg = Msg & "will generate a 30-page report for "
    Msg = Msg & "all sales offices for the current "
    Msg = Msg & "month."
    Title = "XYZ Marketing Company"
    Config = vbYesNo + vbQuestion
    Ans = MsgBox(Msg, Config, Title)
    If Ans = vbYes Then RunReport
End Sub
```

This example demonstrates an efficient way to specify a longer message in a message box. I use a variable (Msg) and the concatenation operator (&) to build the message in a series of statements. The vbCrLf constant inserts a line break character that starts a new line (use it twice to insert a blank line). I also use the title argument to display a different title in the message box. Figure 15-4 shows the message box Excel displays when you execute this procedure.

**Figure 15-4:**

This dialog box, displayed by the MsgBox function, displays a title, an icon, and two buttons.



Previous examples have used constants (such as vbYes and vbNo) for the return value of a MsgBox function. Besides these two constants, Table 15-3 lists a few others.

**Table 15-3****Constants Used as Return Values  
for the MsgBox Function**

<b>Constant</b>	<b>Value</b>	<b>What It Means</b>
vbOK	1	User clicked OK.
vbCancel	2	User clicked Cancel.
vbAbort	3	User clicked Abort.
vbRetry	4	User clicked Retry.
vbIgnore	5	User clicked Ignore.
vbYes	6	User clicked Yes.
vbNo	7	User clicked No.

And that's pretty much all you need to know about the MsgBox function. Use message boxes with caution, though. There's usually no reason to display message boxes that serve no purpose. For example, people tend to get annoyed when they see a message box every day that reads, "Good morning, thanks for loading the Budget Projection workbook."

## The InputBox Function

The VBA InputBox function is useful for obtaining a single piece of information typed by the user. That information could be a value, a text string, or even a range address. This is a good alternative to developing a UserForm when you need to get only one value.

### *InputBox syntax*

Here's a simplified version of the syntax for the InputBox function:

```
InputBox(prompt[, title][, default])
```

The InputBox function accepts the arguments listed in Table 15-4.

---

**Table 15-4****InputBox Function Arguments**

---

Argument	What It Affects
Prompt	The text displayed in the input box
Title	The text displayed in the input box's title bar (optional)
Default	The default value for the user's input (optional)

---

### *An InputBox example*

Here's a statement showing how you can use the InputBox function:

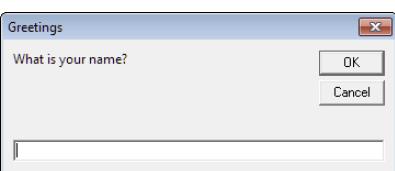
```
TheName = InputBox("What is your name?", "Greetings")
```

When you execute this VBA statement, Excel displays the dialog box shown in Figure 15-5. Notice that this example uses only the first two arguments and does not supply a default value. When the user enters a value and clicks OK, the routine assigns the value to the variable TheName.

---

**Figure 15-5:**  
The  
InputBox  
function  
displays this  
dialog box.

---



The following example uses the third argument and provides a default value. The default value is the username stored by Excel (the Application object's UserName property).

```
Sub GetName()
    Dim TheName As String
    TheName = InputBox("What is your name?", _
        "Greetings", Application.UserName)
End Sub
```

The InputBox always displays a Cancel button. If the user clicks Cancel, the InputBox function returns an empty string.



VBA's InputBox function always returns a string, so if you need to get a value, your code will need to do some additional checking. The following example uses the InputBox function to get a number. It uses the IsNumeric function to check whether the string is a number. If the string does contain a number, all is fine. If the user's entry cannot be interpreted as a number, the code displays a message box.

```
Sub AddSheets()
    Dim Prompt As String
    Dim Caption As String
    Dim DefValue As Integer
    Dim NumSheets As String

    Prompt = "How many sheets do you want to add?"
    Caption = "Tell me..."
    DefValue = 1
    NumSheets = InputBox(Prompt, Caption, DefValue)

    If NumSheets = "" Then Exit Sub 'Canceled
    If IsNumeric(NumSheets) Then
        If NumSheets > 0 Then Sheets.Add Count:=NumSheets
    Else
        MsgBox "Invalid number"
    End If
End Sub
```

Figure 15-6 shows the dialog box that this routine produces.

**Figure 15-6:**  
Another example of using the InputBox function.



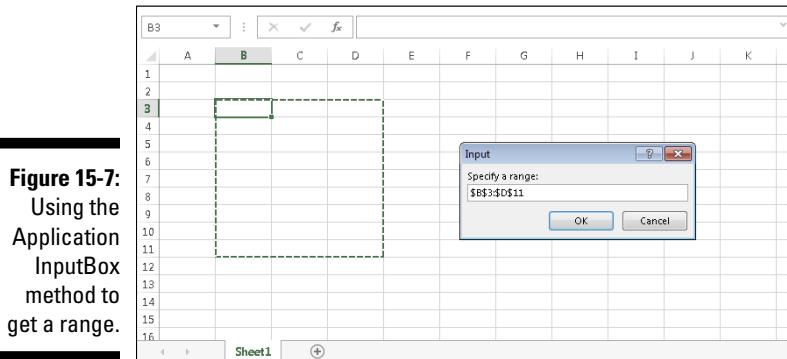
## *Another type of InputBox*

The information presented in this section applies to VBA's InputBox function. In addition, you have access to the InputBox method, which is a method of the Application object.

One big advantage of using the Application InputBox method is that your code can prompt for a range selection. The user can then select the range in the worksheet by highlighting the cells. Here's a quick example that prompts the user to select a range:

```
Sub GetRange()
    Dim Rng As Range
    On Error Resume Next
    Set Rng = Application.InputBox _
        (prompt:="Specify a range:", Type:=8)
    If Rng Is Nothing Then Exit Sub
    MsgBox "You selected range " & Rng.Address
End Sub
```

Figure 15-7 shows how it looks.



**Figure 15-7:**  
Using the  
Application  
InputBox  
method to  
get a range.

In this simple example, the code tells the user the address of the range that was selected. In real life, your code would actually do something useful with the selected range. A nice thing about this example is that Excel takes care of the error handling. If you enter something that's not a range, Excel tells you about it and lets you try again.

The Application.InputBox method is similar to VBA's InputBox function, but it also has some differences. Check the Help system for complete details.

## The GetOpenFilename Method

If your VBA procedure needs to ask the user for a filename, you *could* use the InputBox function and let the user do some typing. An input box usually isn't the best tool for this job, however, because most users find it difficult to remember paths, backslashes, filenames, and file extensions. In other words, it's far too easy to make a typographical error when typing a filename.

For a better solution to this problem, use the GetOpenFilename method of the Application object, which ensures that your code gets its hands on a valid filename, including its complete path. The GetOpenFilename method displays the familiar Open dialog box (a dead ringer for the dialog box Excel displays when you choose File→Open).



The GetOpenFilename method doesn't actually open the specified file. This method simply returns the user-selected filename as a string. Then you can write code to do whatever you want with the filename.

### *The syntax for the GetOpenFilename method*

The official syntax for the GetOpenFilename method is as follows:

```
object.GetOpenFilename ([fileFilter], [filterIndex],
[title], [buttonText], [multiSelect])
```

The GetOpenFilename method takes the optional arguments shown in Table 15-5.

**Table 15-5      GetOpenFilename Method Arguments**

<b>Argument</b>	<b>What It Does</b>
FileFilter	Determines the types of files that appear in the dialog box (for example, *.TXT). You can specify several different filters from which the user can choose.
FilterIndex	Determines which of the file filters the dialog box displays by default.
Title	Specifies the caption for the dialog box's title bar.
ButtonText	Ignored (used only for the Macintosh version of Excel).
MultiSelect	If True, the user can select multiple files.

## A GetOpenFilename example

The fileFilter argument determines what appears in the dialog box's Files of Type drop-down list. This argument consists of pairs of file filter strings followed by the wild card file filter specification, with commas separating each part and pair. If omitted, this argument defaults to the following:

```
All Files (*.*) , *.*
```

Notice that this string consists of two parts, separated by a comma:

```
All Files (*.*)
```

and

```
*.*
```

The first part of this string is the text displayed in the Files of Type drop-down list. The second part determines which files the dialog box displays. For example, `*.*` means *all files*.

The code in the following example brings up a dialog box that asks the user for a filename. The procedure defines five file filters. Notice that I use the VBA line continuation sequence to set up the Filter variable; doing so helps simplify this rather complicated argument.

```
Sub GetImportFileName ()  
    Dim Finfo As String  
    Dim FilterIndex As Integer  
    Dim Title As String  
    Dim FileName As Variant  
  
    ' Set up list of file filters  
    FInfo = "Text Files (*.txt),*.txt," & _  
            "Lotus Files (*.prn),*.prn," & _  
            "Comma Separated Files (*.csv),*.csv," & _  
            "ASCII Files (*.asc),*.asc," & _  
            "All Files (*.*) ,*.*"  
  
    ' Display *.* by default  
    FilterIndex = 5  
  
    ' Set the dialog box caption  
    Title = "Select a File to Import"
```

```

' Get the filename
FileName = Application.GetOpenFilename (FInfo, _
    FilterIndex, Title)

' Handle return info from dialog box
If FileName = False Then
    MsgBox "No file was selected."
Else
    MsgBox "You selected " & FileName
End If
End Sub

```

Figure 15-8 shows the dialog box Excel displays when you execute this procedure. The appearance may vary, depending on the version of Windows you use.

In a real application, you would do something more meaningful with the filename. For example, you might want to open it by using a statement such as this:

```
Workbooks.Open FileName
```

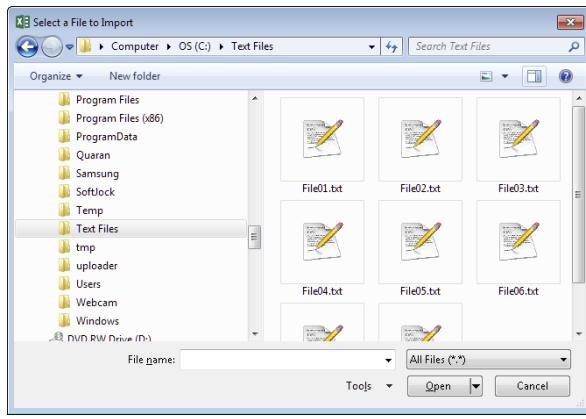


Notice that the FileName variable is declared as a Variant data type. If the user clicks Cancel, that variable contains a Boolean value (False). Otherwise, FileName is a string. Therefore, using a Variant data type handles both possibilities.

By the way, the dialog box may look different, depending on which version of Windows you use.

**Figure 15-8:**

The GetOpenFilename method displays a customizable dialog box and returns the selected file's path and name. It does not open the file.



## The GetSaveAsFilename Method

The Excel GetSaveAsFilename method works just like the GetOpenFilename method, but it displays the Excel Save As dialog box rather than its Open dialog box. The GetSaveAsFilename method gets a path and filename from the user but doesn't do anything with that information. It's up to you to write code that actually saves the file.

The syntax for this method follows:

```
object.GetSaveAsFilename ([InitialFilename], [FileFilter],
[FilterIndex], [Title], [ButtonText])
```

The GetSaveAsFilename method takes Table 15-6's arguments, all of which are optional.

**Table 15-6      GetSaveAsFilename Method Arguments**

Argument	What It Does
InitialFileName	Specifies a default filename that appears in the File Name box.
FileFilter	Determines the types of files Excel displays in the dialog box (for example, *.TXT). You can specify several different filters from which the user can choose.
FilterIndex	Determines which of the file filters Excel displays by default.
Title	Defines a caption for the dialog box's title bar.

## Getting a Folder Name

Sometimes, you don't need to get a filename; you just need to get a folder name. If that's the case, the FileDialog object is just what the doctor ordered.

The following procedure displays a dialog box that allows the user to select a directory. The selected directory name (or "Canceled") is then displayed by using the MsgBox function.

```
Sub GetAFolder()
    With Application.FileDialog(msoFileDialogFolderPicker)
        .InitialFileName = Application.DefaultFilePath & "\"
        .Title = "Please select a location for the backup"
        .Show
        If .SelectedItems.Count = 0 Then
            MsgBox "Canceled"
        Else
```

```

        MsgBox .SelectedItems(1)
    End If
End With
End Sub

```

The FileDialog object lets you specify the starting directory by specifying a value for the InitialFileName property. In this case, the code uses Excel's default file path as the starting directory.

## Displaying Excel's Built-in Dialog Boxes

One way to look at VBA is that it's a tool that lets you mimic Excel commands. For example, consider this VBA statement:

```
Range("A1:A12").Name = "MonthNames"
```

Executing this VBA statement has the same effect as choosing Formulas⇒Defined Names⇒Define Name to display the New Name dialog box, then typing MonthNames in the Name box and A1:A12 in the Refers to box, and clicking OK.

When you execute the VBA statement, the New Name dialog box does not appear. This is almost always what you want to happen; you don't want dialog boxes flashing across the screen while your macro executes.

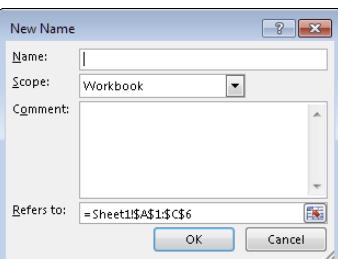
In some cases, however, you may want your code to display one of Excel's many built-in dialog boxes and let the user make the choices in the dialog box. You can do this by using VBA to execute a Ribbon command. Here's an example that displays the New Name dialog box. The address in the Refers to box represents the range that's selected when the command is executed (see Figure 15-9).

```
Application.CommandBars.ExecuteMso "NameDefine"
```



Your VBA code can't get any information from the dialog box. For example, if you execute the code to display the New Name dialog box, your code can't get the name entered by the user, or the range that's being named.

**Figure 15-9:**  
Displaying  
one of  
Excel's  
dialog boxes  
by using  
VBA.



The ExecuteMso is a method of the CommandBars object and accepts one argument, an idMso parameter that represents a Ribbon control. Unfortunately, these parameters are not listed in the Help system. And because the Ribbon hasn't been around forever, code that uses the ExecuteMso method is not compatible with versions prior to Excel 2007.

Here's another example of using the ExecuteMso method. This statement, when executed, displays the Font tab of the Format Cells dialog box:

```
Application.CommandBars.ExecuteMso "FormatCellsFontDialog"
```

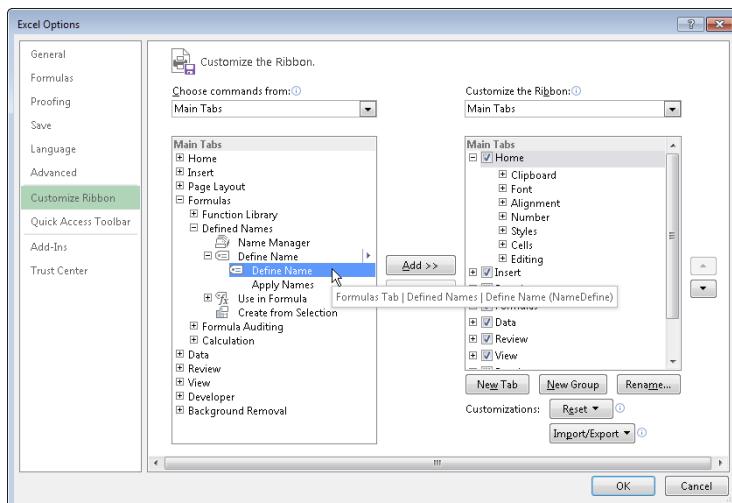
If you try to display a built-in dialog box in an incorrect context, Excel displays an error message. For example, here's a statement that displays the Format Number dialog box:

```
Application.CommandBars.ExecuteMso "NumberFormatsDialog"
```

If you execute this statement when it's not appropriate (for example, a Shape is selected), Excel displays an error message because that dialog box is appropriate only for worksheet cells.

Excel has thousands of commands. How can you find the name of the one you need? One way is to use the Customize Ribbon tab of the Excel Options dialog box. The quick way to get there is to right-click on any Ribbon control and choose Customize The Ribbon from the shortcut menu. Virtually every command available in Excel is listed in the left panel. Find the command you need, hover your mouse over it, and you'll see its secret command name in the tooltip (it's the part in parenthesis). Figure 15-10 shows an example.

**Figure 15-10:**  
Using the  
Customize  
Ribbon  
panel to  
identify a  
command  
name.



# Chapter 16

---

# UserForm Basics

## *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Finding out when to use UserForms
- ▶ Understanding UserForm objects
- ▶ Displaying a UserForm
- ▶ Creating a UserForm that works with a useful macro

**A** UserForm is useful if your VBA macro needs to pause and get some information from a user. For example, your macro may have some options that can be specified in a UserForm. If only a few pieces of information are required (for example, a Yes/No answer or a text string), one of the techniques I describe in Chapter 15 may do the job. But if you need to obtain more information, you must create a UserForm. In this chapter, I introduce you to UserForms. You'll be pleased to make their acquaintance.

## *Knowing When to Use a UserForm*

This section describes a situation in which a UserForm is useful. The following macro changes the text in each cell in the selection to uppercase letters. It does this by using the VBA built-in UCase function.

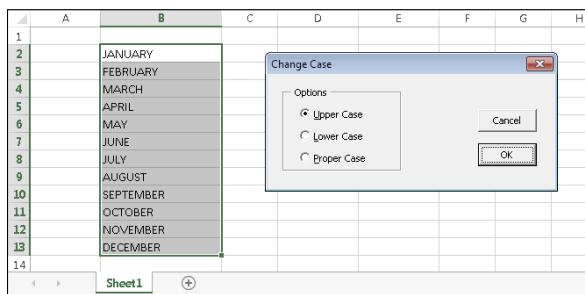
```
Sub ChangeCase()
    Dim WorkRange As Range

    ' Exit if a range is not selected
    If TypeName(Selection) <> "Range" Then Exit Sub

    ' Process only text cells, no formulas
    On Error Resume Next
    Set WorkRange = Selection.SpecialCells _
        (xlCellTypeConstants, xlCellTypeConstants)
    For Each cell In WorkRange
        cell.Value = UCase(cell.Value)
    Next cell
End Sub
```

You can make this macro even more useful. For example, it would be nice if the macro could also change the text in the cells to either lowercase or proper case (capitalizing the first letter in each word). One approach is to create two additional macros — one for lowercase and one for proper case. Another approach is to modify the macro to handle the other options. If you use the second approach, you need some method of asking the user which type of change to make to the cells.

The solution is to display a dialog box like the one shown in Figure 16-1. You create this dialog box on a UserForm in the VBE and display it by using a VBA macro. In the next section, I provide step-by-step instructions for creating this dialog box. Before I get into that, I set the stage with some introductory material.



**Figure 16-1:**  
You can get information from the user by displaying a UserForm.



In VBA, the official name for a dialog box is a UserForm. But a UserForm is really an object that contains what's commonly known as a *dialog box*. This distinction isn't important, so I tend to use these terms interchangeably.

## Creating UserForms: An Overview

When creating a UserForm, you usually take the following general steps:

- 1. Determine how the dialog box will be used and at what point it will be displayed in your VBA macro.**
- 2. Press Alt+F11 to activate the VBE and insert a new UserForm object.**  
A UserForm object holds a single UserForm.
- 3. Add controls to the UserForm.**  
Controls include items such as text boxes, buttons, check boxes, and list boxes.
- 4. Use the Properties window to modify the properties for the controls or for the UserForm itself.**

5. Write event-handler procedures for the controls (for example, a macro that executes when the user clicks a button in the dialog box).

These procedures are stored in the Code window for the UserForm object.

6. Write a procedure (stored in a VBA module) that displays the dialog box to the user.

Don't worry if some of these steps seem foreign. I provide more details in the following sections, along with step-by-step instructions for creating a UserForm.

When you are designing a UserForm, you are creating what developers call the Graphical User Interface (GUI) to your application. GUI also stands for Gaming Under the Influence, but that's not relevant here.

Take some time to consider what your form should look like and how your users are likely to want to interact with the elements on the UserForm. Try to guide them through the steps they need to take on the form by carefully considering the arrangement and wording of the controls. Like most things VBA-related, the more you do it, the easier it gets.

## *Working with UserForms*

Each dialog box that you create is stored in its own UserForm object — one dialog box per UserForm. You create and access these UserForms in the Visual Basic Editor.

### *Inserting a new UserForm*

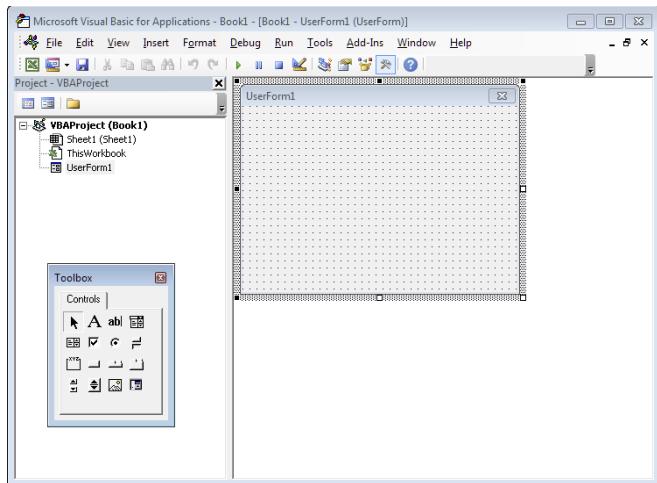
Insert a UserForm object with the following steps:

1. Activate the VBE by pressing Alt+F11.
2. Select the workbook in the Project window.
3. Choose Insert>UserForm.

The VBE inserts a new UserForm object, which contains an empty dialog box.

Figure 16-2 shows a UserForm — an empty dialog box. Your job, if you choose to accept it, is to add some controls to this UserForm.

**Figure 16-2:**  
A new  
UserForm  
object.



## Adding controls to a UserForm

When you activate a UserForm, the VBE displays the Toolbox in a floating window, as shown in Figure 16-2. You use the tools in the Toolbox to add controls to your UserForm. If, for some reason, the Toolbox doesn't appear when you activate your UserForm, choose View⇒Toolbox.

To add a control, just click the desired control in the Toolbox and drag it into the dialog box to create the control. After you add a control, you can move and resize it by using standard techniques.

Table 16-1 lists the various tools, as well as their capabilities. To determine which tool is which, hover your mouse pointer over the control and read the small pop-up description.

**Table 16-1**      **Toolbox Controls**

<b>Control</b>	<b>What It Does</b>
Label	Shows text.
TextBox	Allows the user to enter text.
ComboBox	Displays a drop-down list.
ListBox	Displays a list of items.
CheckBox	Useful for on/off or yes/no options.
OptionButton	Used in groups of two or more; allows the user to select one of several options.
ToggleButton	A button that is either on or off.

<b>Control</b>	<b>What It Does</b>
Frame	A container for other controls.
CommandButton	A clickable button.
TabStrip	Displays tabs.
MultiPage	A tabbed container for other objects.
ScrollBar	A draggable bar.
SpinButton	A clickable button often used for changing a value.
Image	Holds an image.
RefEdit	Allows the user to select a range.

## *Changing properties for a UserForm control*

Every control you add to a UserForm has a number of properties that determine how the control looks or behaves. In addition, the UserForm itself also has its own set of properties. You can change these properties with the aptly named Properties window. Figure 16-3 shows the Properties window when a CommandButton control is selected.

The Properties window appears when you press F4, and the properties shown in this window depend on what is selected. If you select a different control, the properties change to those appropriate for that control. To hide the Properties window and get it out of the way, click the Close button in its title bar. Pressing F4 will always bring it back when you need it.

Properties for controls include the following:

- ✓ Name
- ✓ Width
- ✓ Height
- ✓ Value
- ✓ Caption

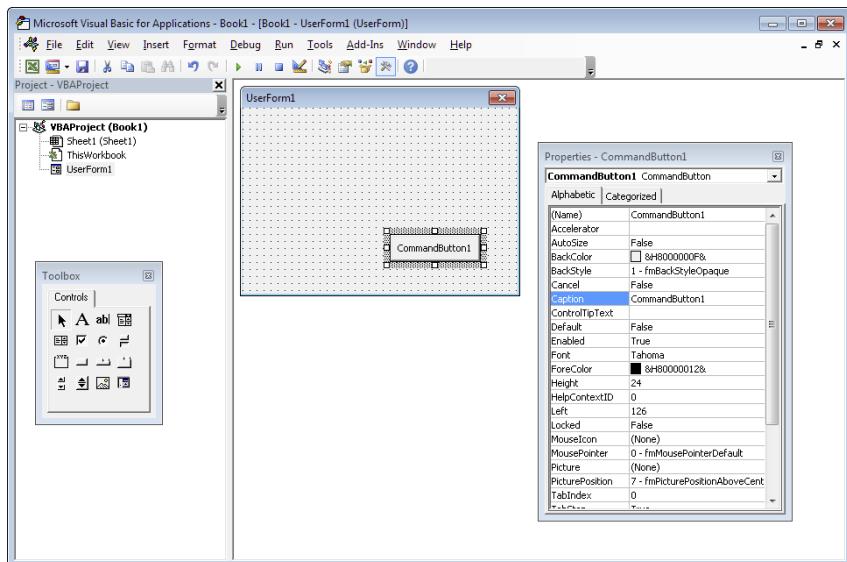
Each control has its own set of properties (although many controls have some common properties). To change a property using the Properties window:

1. Make sure that the correct control is selected in the UserForm.
2. Make sure the Properties window is visible (press F4 if it's not).
3. In the Properties window, click on the property that you want to change.

#### 4. Make the change in the right portion of the Properties window.

If you select the UserForm itself (not a control on the UserForm), you can use the Properties window to adjust UserForm properties.

**Figure 16-3:**  
Use the  
Properties  
windows to  
change the  
properties  
of UserForm  
controls.



Chapter 17 tells you everything you need to know about working with dialog box controls.



Some of the UserForm properties serve as default settings for new controls you drag onto the UserForm. For example, if you change the Font property for the UserForm itself, controls that you add will use that same font. Controls that are already on the UserForm are not affected.

## Viewing the UserForm Code window

Every UserForm object has a Code module that holds the VBA code (the event-handler procedures) executed when the user works with the dialog box. To view the Code module, press F7. The Code window is empty until you add some procedures. Press Shift+F7 to return to the dialog box.

Here's another way to switch between the Code window and the UserForm display: Use the View Code and View Object buttons in the Project window's title bar. Or right-click the UserForm and choose View Code. If you're viewing code, double-click the UserForm name in the Project window to return to the UserForm.

## Displaying a UserForm

You display a UserForm by using the UserForm's Show method in a VBA procedure.



The macro that displays the dialog box must be in a VBA module — not in the Code window for the UserForm.

The following procedure displays the dialog box named UserForm1:

```
Sub ShowDialogBox()
    UserForm1.Show
    ' Other statements can go here
End Sub
```

When Excel displays the dialog box, the ShowDialogBox macro halts until the user closes the dialog box. Then VBA executes any remaining statements in the procedure. Most of the time, you won't have any more code in the procedure. As you later see, you put your event-handler procedures in the Code window for the UserForm. These procedures kick in when the user works with the controls on the UserForm.

## Using information from a UserForm

The VBE provides a name for each control you add to a UserForm. The control's name corresponds to its Name property. Use this name to refer to a particular control in your code. For example, if you add a CheckBox control to a UserForm named UserForm1, the CheckBox control is named CheckBox1 by default. You can use the Properties box to make this control appear with a check mark. Or, you can write code to do it:

```
UserForm1.CheckBox1.Value = True
```

Most of the time, you write the code for a UserForm in the UserForm's code module. If that's the case, you can omit the UserForm object qualifier and write the statement like this:

```
CheckBox1.Value = True
```

Your VBA code can also check various properties of the controls and take appropriate actions. The following statement executes a macro named PrintReport if the check box (named CheckBox1) is checked:

```
If CheckBox1.Value = True Then Call PrintReport
```

I discuss this topic in detail in Chapter 17.



It's usually a good idea to change the default name the VBE has given to your controls to something more meaningful. You might consider naming the checkbox I just described "cbxPrintReport." Note that I precede the name with a three-letter prefix (for "checkbox"), indicating the type of control. It is a matter of taste whether you think doing so is a good practice.

## A UserForm Example

This section's UserForm example is an enhanced version of the ChangeCase macro from the beginning of the chapter. Recall that the original version of this macro changes the text in the selected cells to uppercase. This modified version uses a UserForm to ask the user which type of change to make: uppercase, lowercase, or proper case.

This dialog box needs to obtain one piece of information from the user: the type of change to make to the text. Because the user has three choices, your best bet is a dialog box with three OptionButton controls. The dialog box also needs two more buttons: an OK button and a Cancel button. Clicking the OK button runs the code that does the work. Clicking the Cancel button causes the macro to finish without doing anything.



This workbook is available at the book's website. However, you get more out of this exercise if you follow the steps provided here and create it yourself.

## *Creating the UserForm*

These steps create the UserForm. Start with an empty workbook.

- 1. Press Alt+F11 to activate the VBE.**
- 2. If multiple projects are in the Project window, select the project that corresponds to the workbook you're using.**
- 3. Choose Insert>UserForm.**  
The VBE inserts a new UserForm object with an empty dialog box.
- 4. Press F4 to display the Properties window.**
- 5. In the Properties window, change the dialog box's Caption property to Change Case.**
- 6. The dialog box is a bit too large, so you may want to click it and use the handles (on the right and bottom sides) to make it smaller.**

Step 6 can also be done after you position all the controls in the dialog box.

## Adding the CommandButtons

Ready to add two CommandButtons — OK and Cancel — to the dialog box? Follow along:

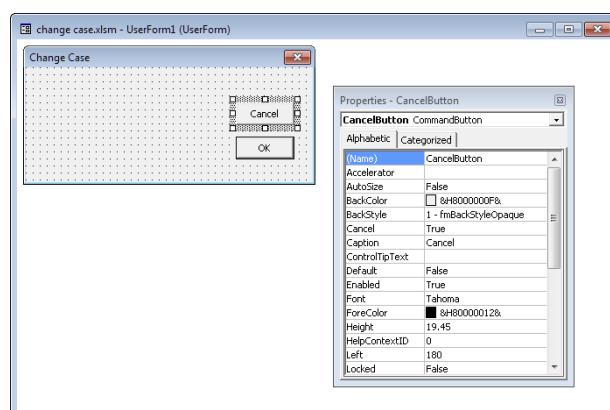
- 1. Make sure that the Toolbox is displayed; if it isn't, choose View ➔ Toolbox.**
  - 2. If the Properties window isn't visible, press F4 to display it.**
  - 3. In the Toolbox, drag a CommandButton into the dialog box to create a button.**
- As you see in the Properties box, the button has a default name and caption: CommandButton1.
- 4. Make sure that the CommandButton is selected; then activate the Properties window and change the following properties:**

<i>Property</i>	<i>Change To</i>
Name	OKButton
Caption	OK
Default	True

- 5. Add a second CommandButton object to the UserForm and change the following properties:**

<i>Property</i>	<i>Change To</i>
Name	CancelButton
Caption	Cancel
Cancel	True

- 6. Adjust the size and position of the controls so your dialog box looks something like Figure 16-4.**



**Figure 16-4:**  
The UserForm with two Command Button controls.

## *Adding the OptionButtons*

In this section, you add three OptionButtons to the dialog box. Before adding the OptionButtons, you add a Frame object that contains the OptionButtons. The Frame isn't necessary, but it makes the dialog box look more professional.

- 1. In the Toolbox, click the Frame tool and drag it into the dialog box.**  
This step creates a frame to hold the options buttons.
- 2. Use the Properties window to change the frame's caption to Options.**
- 3. In the Toolbox, click the OptionButton tool and drag it into the dialog box (within the Frame).**  
Doing this creates an OptionButton control.
- 4. Select the OptionButton and use the Properties window to change the following properties:**

<i>Property</i>	<i>Change To</i>
Name	<b>OptionUpper</b>
Caption	<b>Upper Case</b>
Accelerator	<b>U</b>
Value	<b>True</b>

Setting the Value property to True makes this OptionButton the default.

- 5. Add another OptionButton and use the Properties window to change the following properties:**

<i>Property</i>	<i>Change To</i>
Name	<b>OptionLower</b>
Caption	<b>Lower Case</b>
Accelerator	<b>L</b>

- 6. Add a third OptionButton and use the Properties window to change the following properties:**

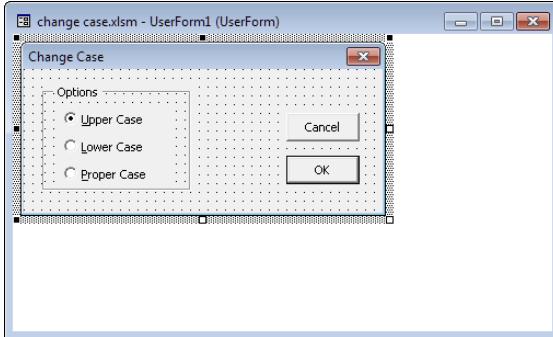
<i>Property</i>	<i>Change To</i>
Name	<b>OptionProper</b>
Caption	<b>Proper Case</b>
Accelerator	<b>P</b>

- 7. Adjust the size and position of the OptionButtons, Frame, and dialog box.**

Your UserForm should look something like Figure 16-5.

If you'd like a sneak preview to see what the UserForm looks like when it's displayed, press F5. None of the controls are working yet, so you need to click the red "X" in the title bar to close the dialog box.

**Figure 16-5:**  
This is the UserForm after adding three Option Button controls inside a Frame control.



The Accelerator property determines which letter in the caption is underlined — and more importantly, it determines what Alt-key combination selects that control. For example, you can select the Lower Case option by pressing Alt+L because the L is underlined. Accelerator keys are optional, but some users prefer to use the keyboard to navigate dialog boxes.

You may wonder why the OptionButtons have accelerator keys but the CommandButtons go without. Generally, OK and Cancel buttons never have accelerator keys because they can be accessed from the keyboard. Pressing Enter is equivalent to clicking OK because the control's Default property is True. Pressing Esc is equivalent to clicking Cancel because the control's Cancel property is True.

## *Adding event-handler procedures*

Now it's time to make the UserForm actually do something. Here's how to add an event-handler procedure for the Cancel and OK buttons:

**1. Double-click the Cancel button.**

VBE activates the Code window for the UserForm and inserts an empty procedure:

```
Private Sub CancelButton_Click()  
End Sub
```

The procedure named CancelButton\_Click is executed when the Cancel button is clicked, but only when the dialog box is displayed. In other words, clicking the Cancel button when you're designing the dialog box won't execute the procedure. Because the Cancel button's Cancel property is set to True, pressing Esc also triggers the CancelButton\_Click procedure.

**2. Insert the following statement inside the procedure (before the End Sub statement):**

```
Unload UserForm1
```

This statement closes the UserForm (and removes it from memory) when the Cancel button is clicked.

**3. Press Shift+F7 to return to the UserForm.**

**4. Double-click the OK button.**

VBE activates the code window for the UserForm and inserts an empty Sub procedure called OKButton\_Click.

When the UserForm is displayed, clicking OK executes this procedure. Because this button has its Default property set to True, pressing Enter also executes the OKButton\_Click procedure.

**5. Enter the following code so the procedure looks like this:**

```
Private Sub OKButton_Click()
    Dim WorkRange As Range
    Dim cell As Range

    ' Process only text cells, no formulas
    On Error Resume Next
    Set WorkRange = Selection.SpecialCells _
        (xlCellTypeConstants, xlCellTypeConstants)

    ' Upper case
    If OptionUpper Then
        For Each cell In WorkRange
            cell.Value = UCase(cell.Value)
        Next cell
    End If

    ' Lower case
    If OptionLower Then
        For Each cell In WorkRange
            cell.Value = LCase(cell.Value)
        Next cell
    End If

    ' Proper case
    If OptionProper Then
        For Each cell In WorkRange
            cell.Value = Application. _
                WorksheetFunction.Proper(cell.Value)
        Next cell
    End If
End Sub
```

```
    Next cell
End If
Unload UserForm1
End Sub
```

The preceding code is an enhanced version of the original ChangeCase macro that I present at the beginning of the chapter. The macro consists of three separate blocks of code. This code uses three If-Then structures; each one has a For Each-Next loop. Only one block is executed, determined by which OptionButton the user selects. The last statement *unloads* (closes) the dialog box after the work is finished.

Here's something kind of odd. Notice that VBA has a UCase function and an LCase function, but it doesn't have a function to convert text to proper case. Therefore, I use Excel's PROPER worksheet function (preceded by Application.WorksheetFunction) to do the proper case conversion.

Another option is to use the VBA StrConv function, with a second argument of vbProperCase. (See the Help system for details.) The StrConv function is not available in all Excel versions, so I use the PROPER worksheet function instead. It's worth noting that the StrConv beats the PROPER function at converting to proper case. Excel's PROPER function always capitalizes the letter that follows an apostrophe. So the word *can't* becomes *Can'T*. StrConv doesn't do that.

## ***Creating a macro to display the dialog box***

We're almost finished with this project. The only thing missing is a way to display the dialog box. Follow these steps to create the procedure that makes the dialog box appear:

**1. In the VBE window, choose Insert→Module.**

The VBE adds an empty VBA module (named Module1) to the project.

**2. Enter the following code:**

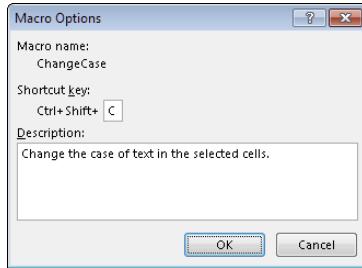
```
Sub ChangeCase()
    If TypeName(Selection) = "Range" Then
        UserForm1.Show
    Else
        MsgBox "Select a range.", vbCritical
    End If
End Sub
```

This procedure is simple. It checks to make sure that a range is selected. If so, the dialog box is displayed (using the Show method). The user then interacts with the dialog box, and the code stored in the UserForm's Code pane is executed. If a range is not selected, the user sees a MsgBox with the text "Select a range."

## Making the macro available

At this point, everything should be working properly. But you still need an easy way to execute the macro. Assign a shortcut key (Ctrl+Shift+C) that executes the ChangeCase macro:

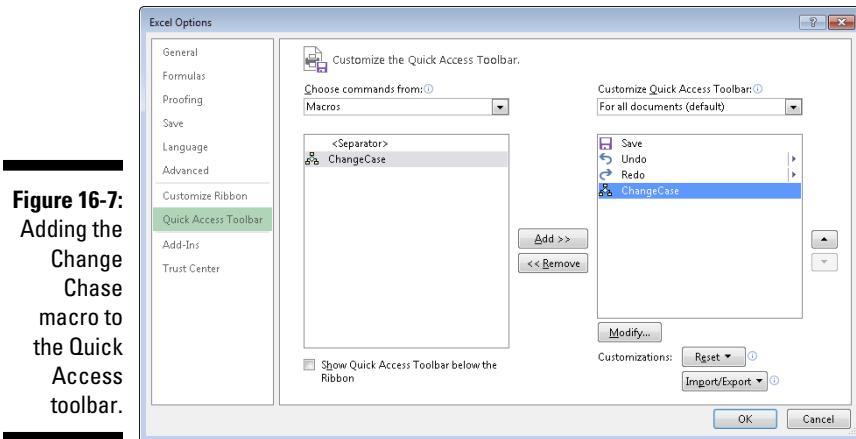
1. **Activate the Excel window via Alt+F11.**
  2. **Choose Developer→Code→Macros or press Alt+F8.**
  3. **In the Macros dialog box, select the ChangeCase macro.**
  4. **Click the Options button.**
- Excel displays its Macro Options dialog box.
5. **Enter an uppercase C for the Shortcut key.**
  6. **Enter a description of the macro in the Description field.**
  7. **Click OK.**
  8. **Click Cancel when you return to the Macro dialog box.**



**Figure 16-6:**  
Assign a  
shortcut key  
to execute  
the Change  
Case macro.

After you perform this operation, pressing Ctrl+Shift+C executes the ChangeCase macro, which displays the UserForm if a range is selected.

You can also make this macro available from the Quick Access toolbar. Right-click the Quick Access toolbar and choose Customize Quick Access Toolbar. The Excel Options dialog box appears, and you'll find the ChangeCase macro listed under Macros (see Figure 16-7).



**Figure 16-7:**  
Adding the  
Change  
Case  
macro to  
the Quick  
Access  
toolbar.

## Testing the macro

Finally, you need to test the macro and dialog box to make sure they work properly:

**1. Activate a worksheet (any worksheet in any workbook).**

**2. Select some cells that contain text.**

You can even select entire rows or columns.

**3. Press Ctrl+Shift+C.**

The UserForm appears. Figure 16-8 shows how it should look.

**4. Make your choice and click OK.**

If you did everything correctly, the macro makes the specified change to the text in the selected cells.

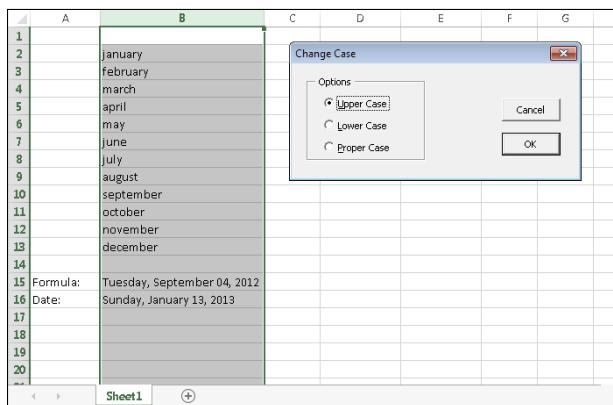
If you test this procedure when only one cell is selected, you'll find that *all* the cells on the worksheet are processed. That behavior is a byproduct of using the SpecialCells method. If you'd prefer to be able to process just one cell, change the first block of code to this:

```
If Selection.Count = 1 Then
    Set WorkRange = Selection
Else
    Set WorkRange = Selection.SpecialCells _
        (xlCellTypeConstants, xlCellTypeConstants)
End If
```

Figure 16-9 shows the worksheet after converting the text to uppercase. Notice that the formula in cell B15 and the date in cell B16 were not changed. The macro, as you recall, works only with cells that contain text.

As long as the workbook is open, you can execute the macro from any other workbook. If you close the workbook that contains your macro, Ctrl+Shift+C no longer has any function.

If the macro doesn't work properly, double-check the preceding steps to locate and correct the error. Don't be alarmed; debugging is a normal part of developing macros. As a last resort, download the completed workbook from this book's website and try to figure out where you went wrong.



**Figure 16-8:**  
The  
UserForm  
is  
in action.

A	B	C	D	E
1				
2	JANUARY			
3	FEBRUARY			
4	MARCH			
5	APRIL			
6	MAY			
7	JUNE			
8	JULY			
9	AUGUST			
10	SEPTEMBER			
11	OCTOBER			
12	NOVEMBER			
13	DECEMBER			
14				
15	Formula: Tuesday, September 04, 2012			
16	Date: Sunday, January 13, 2013			
17				
18				

**Figure 16-9:**  
The text  
has been  
converted to  
uppercase.

## Chapter 17

# Using UserForm Controls

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Understanding each type of dialog box control
- ▶ Changing each control's properties
- ▶ Working with dialog box controls

**A** user responds to a custom dialog box (also known as a *UserForm*) by using the various controls (buttons, edit boxes, option buttons, and so on) that the dialog box contains. Your VBA code then makes use of these responses to determine which actions to take. You have quite a few controls at your disposal, and this chapter tells you about them.

If you worked through the hands-on example in Chapter 16, you already have some experience with UserForm controls. This chapter fills in some of the gaps.

## *Getting Started with Dialog Box Controls*

In this section, I tell you how to add controls to a UserForm, give them meaningful names, and adjust some of their properties.



Before you can do any of these things, you must have a UserForm, which you get by choosing **Insert**→**UserForm** in the VBE. When you add a UserForm, make sure that the correct project is selected in the Project window (if more than one project is available).

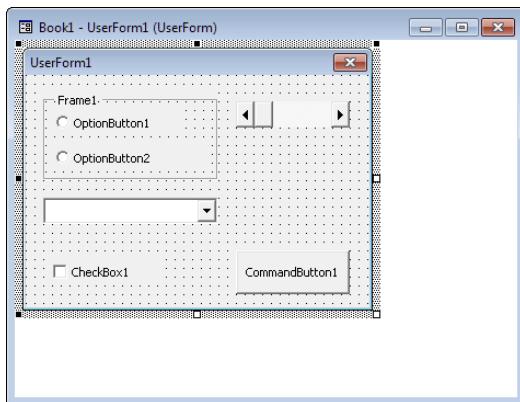
### *Adding controls*

Oddly enough, the VBE doesn't have menu commands that let you add controls to a dialog box. You must use the floating Toolbox, which I describe in Chapter 16, to add controls. Normally, the Toolbox pops up automatically when you activate a UserForm in the VBE. If it doesn't, you can display the Toolbox by choosing **View**→**Toolbox**.

Follow along to add a control to the UserForm:

1. Click the Toolbox tool that corresponds to the control you want to add.
2. Click in the UserForm and drag to size and position the control.

Alternatively, you can simply drag a control from the Toolbox to the UserForm to create a control with the default dimensions. Figure 17-1 shows a UserForm that contains a few controls: Two OptionButtons (inside of a Frame), a ComboBox, a CheckBox, a ScrollBar, and a CommandButton.



**Figure 17-1:**  
A UserForm  
with a few  
controls  
added.



A UserForm may contain vertical and horizontal grid lines, which help align the controls you add. When you add or move a control, it *snaps* to the grid. If you don't like this feature, you can turn off the grids by following these steps:

1. Choose Tools⇒Options in the VBE.
2. In the Options dialog box, select the General tab.
3. Set your desired options in the Form Grid Settings section.

## Introducing control properties

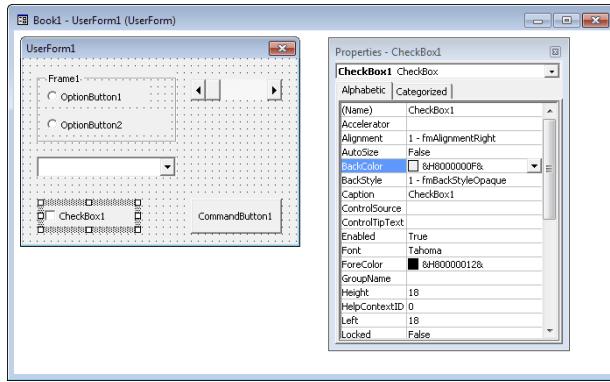
Every control that you add to a UserForm has properties that determine how the control looks and behaves. You can change a control's properties at the following two times:

- ✓ At design time — when you're designing the UserForm. You do so manually, using the Properties window.

- At runtime — while your macro is running. You do so by writing VBA code. Changes made at runtime are always temporary; they are made to the copy of the dialog box you are showing, not to the actual UserForm object you designed.

When you add a control to a UserForm, you almost always need to make some design-time adjustments to its properties. You make these changes in the Properties window. (To display the Properties window, press F4.) Figure 17-2 shows the Properties window, which displays properties for the object selected in the UserForm — which happens to be a CheckBox control.

**Figure 17-2:**  
Use the  
Properties  
window  
to make  
design-time  
changes to  
a control's  
properties.



To change a control's properties at runtime, you must write VBA code. For example, you may want to hide a particular control when the user clicks a check box. In such a case, you write code to change the control's `Visible` property.

Each control has its own set of properties. All controls, however, share some common properties, such as `Name`, `Width`, and `Height`. Table 17-1 lists some of the common properties available for many controls.

**Table 17-1** Common Control Properties

Property	What It Affects
Accelerator	The letter underlined in the control's caption. The user presses this key in conjunction with the Alt key to select the control.
AutoSize	If True, the control resizes itself automatically based on the text in its caption.

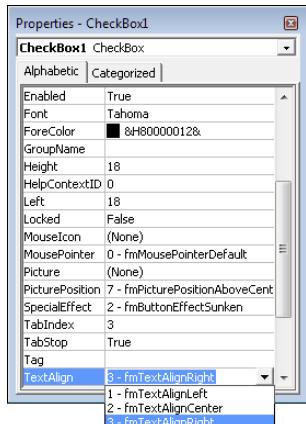
(continued)

**Table 17-1 (continued)**

<b>Property</b>	<b>What It Affects</b>
BackColor	The control's background color.
BackStyle	The background style (transparent or opaque).
Caption	The text that appears on the control.
Left and Top	Values that determine the control's position.
Name	The control's name. By default, a control's name is based on the control type. You can change the name to any valid name, but each control's name must be unique within the dialog box.
Picture	A graphics image to display. The image can be from a graphics file, or you can select the Picture property and paste an image that you copied to the Clipboard.
Value	The control's value.
Visible	If False, the control is hidden.
Width and Height	Values that determine the control's width and height.

When you select a control, that control's properties appear in the Properties window. To change a property, just select it in the Properties window and make the change. Some properties give you some help. For example, if you need to change the TextAlign property, the Properties window displays a drop-down list that contains all valid property values, as shown in Figure 17-3.

**Figure 17-3:**  
Change  
some  
properties  
by selecting  
from a  
drop-down  
list of valid  
property  
values.



## Dialog Box Controls: The Details

In the following sections, I introduce you to each type of control you can use in custom dialog boxes and discuss some of the more useful properties. I don't discuss every property for every control because that would require a book that's about four times as thick (and it would be a very boring book).

The Help system for controls and properties is thorough. To find complete details for a particular property, select the property in the Properties window and press F1.

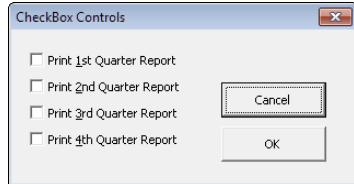


All the examples in this section are available on this book's website.

### CheckBox control

A CheckBox control is useful for getting a binary choice: yes or no, true or false, on or off, and so on. Figure 17-4 shows some examples of CheckBox controls.

**Figure 17-4:**  
CheckBox  
Controls  
dialog box.



The following is a description of a CheckBox control's most useful properties:

- ✓ **Accelerator:** A character that lets the user change the value of the control by using the keyboard. For example, if the accelerator is A, pressing Alt+A changes the value of the CheckBox control (from checked to unchecked, or from unchecked to checked). In the example shown here, I use numbers for the accelerators (Alt+1, Alt+2, and so on).
- ✓ **ControlSource:** The address of a worksheet cell that's linked to the CheckBox. The cell displays TRUE if the control is checked or FALSE if the control is not checked. This is optional. Most of the time a CheckBox is not linked to a cell.
- ✓ **Value:** If True, the CheckBox has a checkmark. If False, it does not have a checkmark.

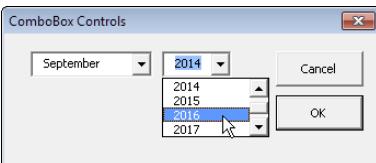


Don't confuse CheckBox controls with OptionButton controls. They look kind of similar, but they are used for different purposes.

## ComboBox control

A ComboBox control is similar to a ListBox control (described later in the “ListBox control” section). A ComboBox, however, is a drop-down control. Another difference is that the user may be allowed to enter a value that does not appear in the list of items. Figure 17-5 shows two ComboBox controls. The control on the right (for the year) is being used, so it has dropped down to display its list of options.

**Figure 17-5:**  
ComboBox  
Controls  
dialog box.



The following is a description of some useful ComboBox control properties:

- ✓ **ControlSource:** A cell that stores the value selected in the ComboBox.
- ✓ **ListRows:** The number of items to display when the list drops down.
- ✓ **ListStyle:** The appearance of the list items.
- ✓ **RowSource:** A range address that contains the list of items displayed in the ComboBox.
- ✓ **Style:** Determines whether the control acts like a drop-down list or a ComboBox. A drop-down list doesn't allow the user to enter a new value.
- ✓ **Value:** The text of the item selected by the user and displayed in the ComboBox.



If your list of items is not in a worksheet, you can add items to a ComboBox control by using the AddItem method. More information on this method is in Chapter 18.

## CommandButton control

CommandButton is just a common clickable button. It is of no use unless you provide an event-handler procedure to execute when the button is clicked. Figure 17-6 shows a dialog box with nine CommandButtons. Two of these buttons feature a clipart image (specified by copying the clipart and then pasting it into the Picture field in the Properties window).



**Figure 17-6:**  
Command  
Button  
controls.

When a CommandButton is clicked, it executes an event-handler procedure with a name that consists of the CommandButton's name, an underscore, and the word *Click*. For example, if a CommandButton is named MyButton, clicking it executes the macro named MyButton\_Click. This macro is stored in the Code window for the UserForm.

The following is a description of some useful CommandButton control properties:

- ✓ **Cancel:** If True, pressing Esc executes the macro attached to the button. Only one of the form's buttons should have this option set to True.
- ✓ **Default:** If True, pressing Enter executes the macro attached to the button. Again: Just one button should have this option set to True.

## Frame control

A Frame control encloses other controls. You do so either for aesthetic purposes or to logically group a set of controls. A frame is particularly useful when the dialog box contains more than one set of OptionButton controls. (See “OptionButton control,” later in this chapter.)

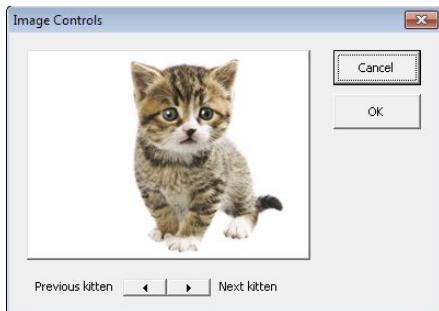
The following list describes some useful Frame control properties:

- ✓ **BorderStyle:** The frame's appearance.
- ✓ **Caption:** The text displayed at the top of the frame. The caption can be an empty string if you don't want the control to display a caption.

## Image control

An Image control displays an image. You may want to use an Image control to display your company's logo in a dialog box. Figure 17-7 shows a dialog box with an Image control that displays a photo of a cute little kitten.

**Figure 17-7:**  
An Image  
control  
displays a  
photo.



The following list describes the most useful Image control properties:

- **Picture:** The graphics image that is displayed.
- **PictureSizeMode:** How the picture is displayed if the control size does not match the image size.

When you click the Picture property, you are prompted for a filename. However, the graphics image (after it's retrieved) is stored in the workbook. That way, if you distribute your workbook to someone else, you don't have to include a copy of the graphics file.



Rather than retrieve the image from a file, you can also copy and paste. Excel's clipart collection is a great source of images. Use **Insert**⇒**Illustrations**⇒**Online Pictures** and choose an image to place in your worksheet. Select the image and press **Ctrl+C** to copy it to the Clipboard. Then activate your UserForm, click the Image control, and select the Picture property in the Properties box. Press **Ctrl+V** to paste the copied image. You can then delete the clipart image in the worksheet.



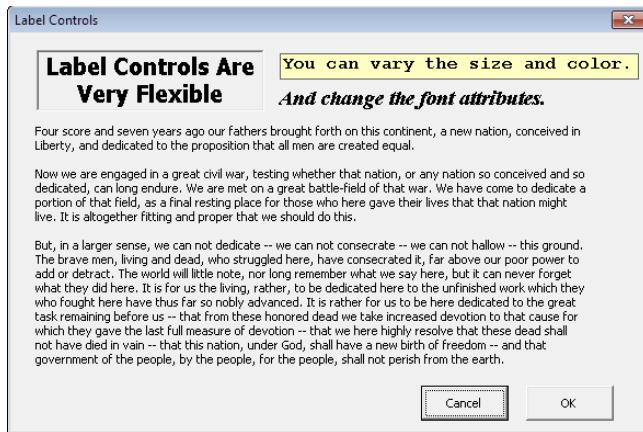
Some graphics images are very large and can make your workbook size increase dramatically. For best results, use an image that's as small as possible.

## *Label control*

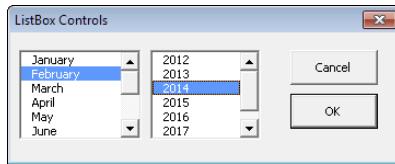
A Label control simply displays text in your dialog box. Figure 17-8 shows a few Label controls. As you can see, you have a great deal of control over the formatting of a Label control.

## *ListBox control*

The ListBox control presents a list of items from which the user can choose one or more. Figure 17-9 shows a dialog box with two ListBox controls.



**Figure 17-8:**  
Label controls can take on lots of different looks.



**Figure 17-9:**  
ListBox controls.

ListBox controls are very flexible. For example, you can specify a worksheet range that holds the ListBox items, and the range can consist of multiple columns. Or you can fill the ListBox with items by using VBA code.

If a ListBox isn't tall enough to display all the items in the list, a scrollbar appears so the user can scroll down to see more items.

The following list is a description of the most useful ListBox control properties:

- ✓ **ControlSource:** A cell that stores the value selected in the ListBox.
- ✓ **IntegralHeight:** This is True if the ListBox height adjusts automatically to display full lines of text when the list is scrolled vertically. If False, the ListBox may display partial lines of text when it is scrolled vertically. Note that when this property is True, the actual height of your ListBox may be slightly different, when your UserForm is shown, from what you had set it originally. In other words, the height may adjust to ensure that the last entry is entirely visible.
- ✓ **ListStyle:** The appearance of the list items.
- ✓ **MultiSelect:** Determines whether the user can select multiple items from the list.
- ✓ **RowSource:** A range address that contains the list of items displayed in the ListBox.
- ✓ **Value:** The text of the selected item in the ListBox.

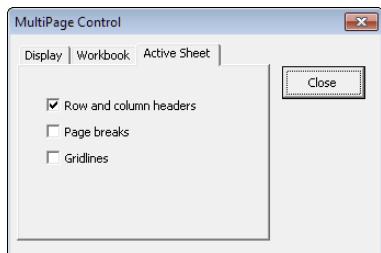


If the ListBox has its MultiSelect property set to 1 or 2, then the user can select multiple items in the ListBox. In such a case, you cannot specify a ControlSource; you need to write a macro that determines which items are selected. Chapter 18 demonstrates how to do so.

## ***MultiPage control***

A MultiPage control lets you create tabbed dialog boxes, like the Format Cells dialog box (the one that appears when you press Ctrl+1 in Excel). Figure 17-10 shows an example of a custom dialog box that uses a MultiPage control. This particular control has three pages, or tabs.

**Figure 17-10:**  
Use a  
MultiPage  
control to  
create a  
tabbed  
dialog box.



Descriptions of the most useful MultiPage control properties follow:

- ✓ **Style:** Determines the appearance of the control. The tabs can appear normally (on the top), on the left, as buttons, or hidden (no tabs — your VBA code determines which page is displayed).
- ✓ **Value:** Determines which page or tab is displayed. A Value of 0 displays the first page, a Value of 1 displays the second page, and so on.

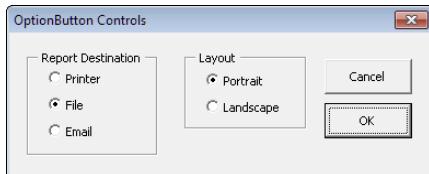


By default, a MultiPage control has two pages. To add pages, right-click a tab and select New Page from the resulting Context menu.

## ***OptionButton control***

OptionButtons are useful when the user needs to select from a small number of items. OptionButtons are always used in groups of at least two. Figure 17-11 shows two sets of OptionButtons, and each set is contained in a frame.

**Figure 17-11:**  
Two sets of  
Option  
Button  
controls,  
each  
contained  
in a Frame  
control.



The following is a description of the most useful OptionButton control properties:

- ✓ **Accelerator:** A letter that lets the user select the option by using the keyboard. For example, if the accelerator for an option button is C, then pressing Alt+C selects the control.
- ✓ **GroupName:** A name that identifies an option button as being associated with other option buttons with the same GroupName property.
- ✓ **ControlSource:** The worksheet cell that's linked to the option button. The cell displays TRUE if the control is selected or FALSE if the control is not selected.
- ✓ **Value:** If True, the OptionButton is selected. If False, the OptionButton is not selected.

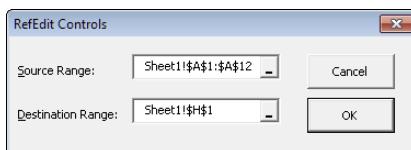


If your dialog box contains more than one set of OptionButtons, you *must* change the GroupName property for all OptionButtons in a particular set. Otherwise, all OptionButtons become part of the same set. Alternatively, you can enclose each set of OptionButtons in a Frame control, which automatically groups the OptionButtons in the frame.

## RefEdit control

The RefEdit control is used when you need to let the user select a range in a worksheet. Figure 17-12 shows a UserForm with two RefEdit controls. Its Value property holds the address of the selected range (as a text string).

**Figure 17-12:**  
Two RefEdit  
controls.





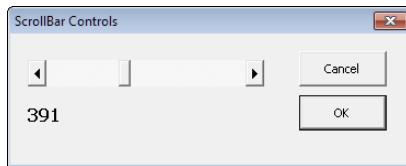
The RefEdit control sometimes causes trouble on more complex UserForms. For best results, do not place a RefEdit control inside a Frame or MultiPage control.

## ScrollBar control

When you add a ScrollBar control, you can make it horizontal or vertical. The ScrollBar control is similar to a SpinButton control (described later). The difference is that the user can drag the ScrollBar's button to change the control's value in larger increments. Another difference is that when you click the up button on a vertical ScrollBar, the value decreases — which is a bit counter-intuitive. So, a ScrollBar is not always a good substitute for a SpinButton.

Figure 17-13 shows a ScrollBar control, with a horizontal orientation. Its Value property is displayed in a Label control, placed below the ScrollBar.

**Figure 17-13:**  
A ScrollBar  
control, with  
a Label  
control below it.



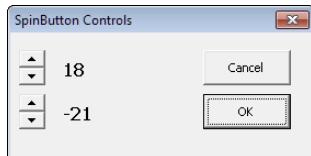
The following is a description of the most useful properties of a ScrollBar control:

- ✓ **Value:** The control's current value.
- ✓ **Min:** The control's minimum value.
- ✓ **Max:** The control's maximum value.
- ✓ **ControlSource:** The worksheet cell that displays the control's value.
- ✓ **SmallChange:** The amount that the control's value is changed by a click.
- ✓ **LargeChange:** The amount that the control's value is changed by clicking either side of the button.

The ScrollBar control is most useful for specifying a value that extends across a wide range of possible values.

## SpinBox control

The SpinButton control lets the user select a value by clicking the control, which has two arrows (one to increase the value and the other to decrease the value). As with a ScrollBar control, a SpinButton can be oriented either horizontally or vertically. Figure 17-14 shows a dialog box that uses two vertically oriented SpinButton controls. Each control is linked to the Label control on the right (by using VBA procedures).



**Figure 17-14:**  
SpinBox  
controls.

The following descriptions explain the most useful properties of a SpinButton control:

- ✓ **Value:** The control's current value.
- ✓ **Min:** The control's minimum value.
- ✓ **Max:** The control's maximum value.
- ✓ **ControlSource:** The worksheet cell that displays the control's value.
- ✓ **SmallChange:** The amount that the control's value is changed by a click. Usually this property is set to 1, but you can make it any value.



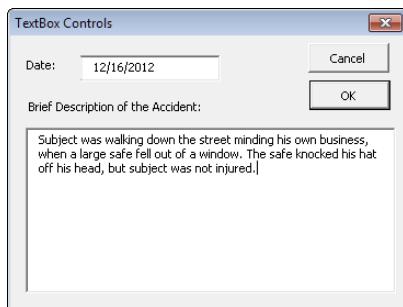
If you use a ControlSource for a SpinButton, you should understand that the worksheet is recalculated every time the control's value is changed. Therefore, if the user changes the value from 0 to 12, the worksheet is calculated 12 times. If your worksheet takes a long time to calculate, you may want to avoid using a ControlSource to store the value.

## TabStrip control

A TabStrip control is similar to a MultiPage control, but it's not as easy to use. In fact, I'm not sure why this control is even included. You can pretty much ignore it and use the MultiPage control instead.

## TextBox control

A TextBox control lets the user enter text. Figure 17-15 shows a dialog box with two TextBox controls.



**Figure 17-15:**  
TextBox  
controls.

The following is a description of the most useful TextBox control properties:

- ✓ **AutoSize:** If True, the control adjusts its size automatically, depending on the amount of text.
- ✓ **ControlSource:** The address of a cell that contains the text in the TextBox.
- ✓ **IntegralHeight:** If True, the TextBox height adjusts automatically to display full lines of text when the list is scrolled vertically. If False, the TextBox may display partial lines of text when it is scrolled vertically.
- ✓ **MaxLength:** The maximum number of characters allowed in the TextBox. If 0, the number of characters is unlimited.
- ✓ **MultiLine:** If True, the TextBox can display more than one line of text.
- ✓  **TextAlign:** Determines how the text is aligned in the TextBox.
- ✓ **WordWrap:** Determines whether the control allows word wrap.
- ✓ **ScrollBars:** Determines the type of scrollbars for the control: horizontal, vertical, both, or none.

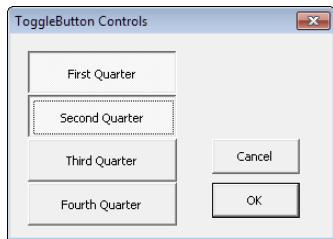


When you add a TextBox control, its WordWrap property is set to True, and its MultiLine property is set to False. The net effect? Word wrap doesn't work! So, if you want the words to wrap in a TextBox control, make sure that you set the MultiLine property to True.

## ***ToggleButton control***

A ToggleButton control has two states: on and off. Clicking the button toggles between these two states, and the button changes its appearance when clicked. Its value is either True (pressed) or False (not pressed). Figure 17-16 shows a dialog box with four ToggleButton controls. The top two are pressed.

**Figure 17-16:**  
Toggle  
Button  
controls.



I never ever use ToggleButton controls. I prefer to use CheckBox controls.

## ***Working with Dialog Box Controls***

In this section, I discuss how to work with dialog box controls in a UserForm object.

### ***Moving and resizing controls***

After you place a control in a dialog box, you can move it and resize it by using standard mouse techniques. Or for precise control, you can use the Properties window to enter a value for the control's Height, Width, Left, or Top property.



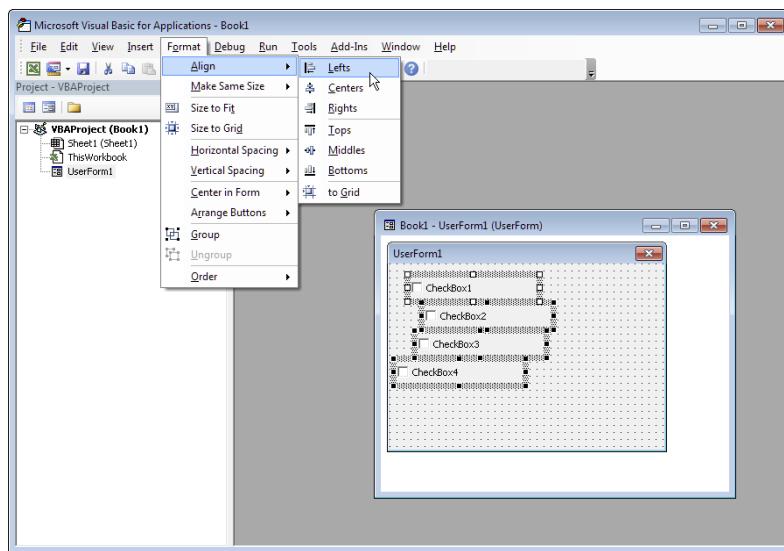
You can select multiple controls by Ctrl+clicking the controls. Or you can click and drag to "lasso" a group of controls. When multiple controls are selected, the Properties window displays only the properties common to all selected controls. You can change those common properties, and the change will be made to all controls you selected, which is much quicker than doing them one at a time.

A control can hide another control; in other words, you can stack one control on top of another. Unless you have a good reason for doing so, make sure that you do not overlap controls.

## Aligning and spacing controls

The Format menu in the VBE window provides several commands to help you precisely align and space the controls in a dialog box. Before you use these commands, select the controls you want to work with. These commands work just as you might expect, so I don't explain them here. Figure 17-17 shows a dialog box with several CheckBox controls that are about to be aligned.

**Figure 17-17:**  
Use the Format→ Align command to change the alignment of UserForm controls.



When you select multiple controls, the last selected control appears with white handles rather than the normal black handles. The control with the white handles is the basis for aligning or resizing the other selected controls when you use the Format menu.

## Accommodating keyboard users

Many users (including yours truly) prefer to navigate through a dialog box by using the keyboard: Pressing Tab or Shift+Tab cycles through the controls, while pressing a hot key instantly activates a particular control.

To make sure that your dialog box works properly for keyboard users, you must be mindful of two issues:

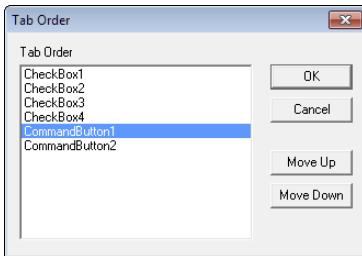
- ✓ Tab order
- ✓ Accelerator keys

### Changing the tab order

The tab order determines the order in which the controls are activated when the user presses Tab or Shift+Tab. It also determines which control has the initial *focus* — that is, which control is the active control when the dialog box first appears. For example, if a user is entering text into a TextBox, the TextBox has the focus. If the user clicks an OptionButton, the OptionButton has the focus. The first control in the tab order has the focus when Excel first displays a dialog box.

To set the control tab order, choose View→Tab Order. You can also right-click the dialog box and choose Tab Order from the shortcut menu. In either case, Excel displays the Tab Order dialog box shown in Figure 17-18.

**Figure 17-18:**  
The Tab  
Order dialog  
box.



The Tab Order dialog box lists all the controls in the UserForm. The tab order in the UserForm corresponds to the order of the items in the list. To change the tab order of a control, select it in the list and then click the Move Up or Move Down buttons. You can choose more than one control (click while pressing Shift or Ctrl) and move them all at one time.



Rather than use the Tab Order dialog box, you can set a control's position in the tab order by using the Properties window. The first control in the tab order has a TabIndex property of 0. If you want to remove a control from the tab order, set its TabStop property to False.



Some controls (such as Frame or MultiPage controls) act as containers for other controls. The controls inside a container control have their own tab order. To set the tab order for a group of OptionButtons inside a Frame control, select the Frame control before you choose the View→Tab Order command.

### Setting hot keys

Normally, you want to assign an accelerator key, or *hot key*, to dialog box controls. You do so by entering a letter for the Accelerator property in the Properties window. If a control doesn't have an Accelerator property (a TextBox, for example), you can still allow direct keyboard access to it by using a Label control. That is, assign an accelerator key to the Label and put the Label directly before the TextBox in the tab order.

Figure 17-19 shows a UserForm with three TextBoxes. The Labels that describe the TextBoxes have accelerator keys, and each Label precedes its corresponding TextBox in the tab order. Pressing Alt+D, for example, activates the TextBox next to the Department Label.

**Figure 17-19:**  
Use Labels  
to provide  
direct  
access to  
controls that  
don't have  
accelerator  
keys.



## Testing a UserForm

The VBE offers three ways to test a UserForm without calling it from a VBA procedure:

- ✓ Choose the Run>Run Sub/UserForm command.
- ✓ Press F5.
- ✓ Click the Run Sub/UserForm button on the Standard toolbar.

When a dialog box is displayed in this test mode, you can try out the tab order and the accelerator keys.

## Dialog Box Aesthetics

Dialog boxes can look good, bad, or somewhere in between. A good-looking dialog box is easy on the eye, has nicely sized and aligned controls, and its function is perfectly clear to the user. Bad-looking dialog boxes confuse the user, have misaligned controls, and give the impression that the developer didn't have a plan (or a clue).

Try to limit the number of controls on your form. If you do need many controls (a rule of thumb: more than 10 controls), consider using a MultiPage control to split the task the user has to do into logical (and smaller) steps.

A good rule to follow is to try to make your dialog boxes look like the Excel built-in dialog boxes. As you gain more experience with dialog box construction, you can duplicate almost all the features of the Excel dialog boxes.

## Chapter 18

# UserForm Techniques and Tricks

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Using a custom dialog box in your application
- ▶ Creating a dialog box: a hands-on example

The previous chapters show you how to insert a UserForm (which contains a custom dialog box), add controls to the UserForm, and adjust some of the control's properties. These skills, however, won't do you much good unless you understand how to make use of UserForms in your VBA code. This chapter provides these missing details and presents some useful techniques and tricks in the process.

## *Using Dialog Boxes*

When you use a custom dialog box in your application, you normally write VBA code that does the following:

- ✓ Initializes the UserForm controls. For example, you may write code that sets the default values for the controls.
- ✓ Displays the dialog box by using the UserForm object's Show method.
- ✓ Responds to the events that occur for the various controls — such as clicking a CommandButton.
- ✓ Validates the information provided by the user (if the user did not cancel the dialog box). This step is not always necessary.
- ✓ Takes some action with the information provided by the user (if the information is valid).

## A UserForm Example

This example demonstrates the five points I describe in the preceding section. In this example, you use a dialog box to get two pieces of information: a person's name and sex. The dialog box uses a TextBox control to get the name, and it uses three OptionButtons to get the sex (Male, Female, or Unknown). The information collected in the dialog box is then sent to the next blank row in a worksheet.

### *Creating the dialog box*

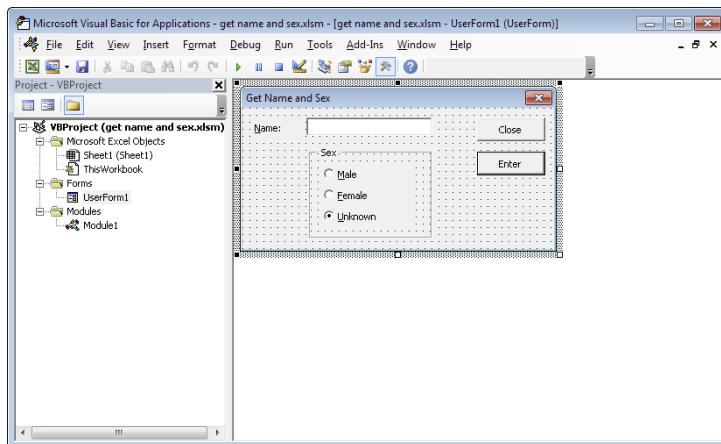
Figure 18-1 shows the finished UserForm for this example. For best results, start with a new workbook with only one worksheet in it. Then follow these steps:

- 1. Press Alt+F11 to activate the VBE.**
- 2. In the Project window, select the empty workbook and choose Insert→UserForm.**

An empty UserForm is added to the project.

- 3. Change the UserForm's Caption property to Get Name and Sex.**

If the Properties window isn't visible, press F4.



**Figure 18-1:**  
This dialog box asks the user to enter a Name and choose a Sex.

This dialog box has eight controls:

- ✓ **A Label.** I modified the following properties for this control:

<i>Property</i>	<i>Value</i>
Accelerator	N
Caption	Name
TabIndex	0

- ✓ **A TextBox.** I modified the following properties for this control:

<i>Property</i>	<i>Value</i>
Name	TextName
TabIndex	1

- ✓ **A Frame object.** I modified the following properties for this control:

<i>Property</i>	<i>Value</i>
Caption	Sex
TabIndex	2

- ✓ **An OptionButton.** I modified the following properties for this control:

<i>Property</i>	<i>Value</i>
Accelerator	M
Caption	Male
Name	OptionMale
TabIndex	0

- ✓ **Another OptionButton.** I modified the following properties for this control:

<i>Property</i>	<i>Value</i>
Accelerator	F
Caption	Female
Name	OptionFemale
TabIndex	1

- ✓ **Another OptionButton.** I modified the following properties for this control:

<i>Property</i>	<i>Value</i>
Accelerator	U
Caption	Unknown
Name	OptionUnknown
TabIndex	2
Value	True

✓ **A CommandButton.** I modified the following properties for this control:

<i>Property</i>	<i>Value</i>
Caption	Enter
Default	True
Name	EnterButton
TabIndex	b

✓ **Another CommandButton.** I modified the following properties for this control:

<i>Property</i>	<i>Value</i>
Caption	Close
Cancel	True
Name	CloseButton
TabIndex	4

If you're following along on your computer (and you should be), take a few minutes to create this UserForm by using the preceding information. Make sure to create the Frame object before adding the OptionButtons to it.

In some cases, you may find copying an existing control easier than creating a new one. To copy a control, press Ctrl while you drag the control.



If you prefer to cut to the chase, you can download the example from this book's website.

## *Writing code to display the dialog box*

After you've added the controls to the UserForm, your next step is to develop some VBA code to display this dialog box:

1. In the VBE window, choose **Insert**→**Module** to insert a VBA module.
2. Enter the following macro:

```
Sub GetData()
    UserForm1.Show
End Sub
```

This short procedure uses the UserForm object's Show method to display the dialog box.

## *Making the macro available*

The next set of steps gives the user an easy way to execute the procedure:

1. Activate Excel.
2. Choose Developer→Controls→Insert and click the Button icon in the Form Controls section.
3. Drag in the worksheet to create the button.  
The Assign Macro dialog box appears.
4. Assign the GetData macro to the button.
5. Edit the button's caption so that it reads Data Entry.



If you want to get really fancy, you can add an icon to your Quick Access toolbar. Then clicking the icon runs the GetData macro. To set this up, right-click your Quick Access toolbar and choose Customize Quick Access Toolbar, which displays the Quick Access Toolbar tab of the Excel Options dialog box. In the Choose Commands From drop-down menu, select Macros. Then select the GetData macro and click Add. If you like, you can click the Modify button and change the icon. You can also make the Quick Access Toolbar icon visible only when the appropriate workbook is activated. Before you add the macro, use the drop-down control at the top-right of the Excel Options dialog box to specify the workbook name, rather than For All Documents (Default).

## Trying out your dialog box

Follow these steps to test your dialog box:

1. Click the Data Entry button on the worksheet. Or click the Quick Access toolbar icon if you set one up.

The dialog box appears, as shown in Figure 18-2.

**Figure 18-2:**  
Executing  
the GetData  
procedure  
displays the  
dialog box.



2. Enter some text into the edit box.
3. Click Enter or Close.

Nothing happens — which is understandable because you haven't created any procedures yet.

4. Click the “X” button in the dialog box’s title bar to get rid of the dialog box.

## *Adding event-handler procedures*

In this section, I explain how to write the procedures that handle the events that occur when the dialog box is displayed.

1. Press Alt+F11 to activate the VBE and then make sure that the UserForm is displayed.
2. Double-click the Close button on the UserForm.

The VBE activates the Code window for the UserForm and provides an empty procedure named CloseButton\_Click.

3. Modify the procedure as follows:

```
Private Sub CloseButton_Click()
    Unload UserForm1
End Sub
```

This procedure, which is executed when the user clicks the Close button, simply unloads the dialog box from memory.

4. Press Shift+F7 to redisplay UserForm1.

5. Double-click the Enter button and enter the following procedure:

```
Private Sub EnterButton_Click()
    Dim NextRow As Long

    ' Make sure Sheet1 is active
    Sheets("Sheet1").Activate

    ' Determine the next empty row
    NextRow = Application.WorksheetFunction. _
        CountA(Range("A:A")) + 1

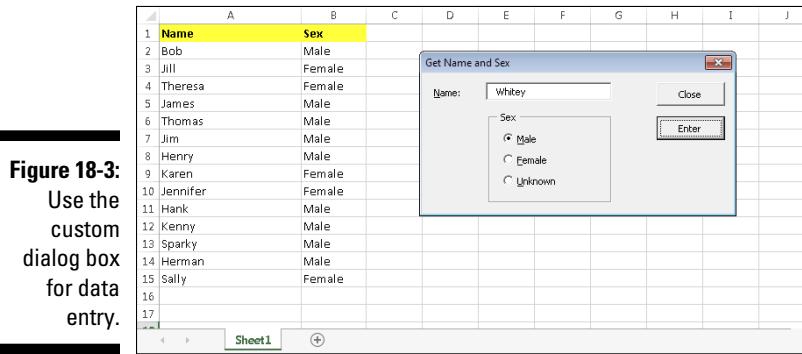
    ' Transfer the name
    Cells(NextRow, 1) = TextName.Text

    ' Transfer the sex
    If OptionMale Then Cells(NextRow, 2) = "Male"
    If OptionFemale Then Cells(NextRow, 2) = "Female"
    If OptionUnknown Then Cells(NextRow, 2) =
        "Unknown"

    ' Clear the controls for the next entry
    TextName.Text = ""
    OptionUnknown = True
    TextName.SetFocus
End Sub
```

**6. Now activate Excel and run the procedure again by clicking the Data Entry button.**

The dialog box works just fine. Figure 18-3 shows how this looks in action. I added column headers in row 1, but that step is not necessary.



**Figure 18-3:**  
Use the  
custom  
dialog box  
for data  
entry.

Here's how the EnterButton\_Click procedure works:

- ✓ First, the code makes sure that the proper worksheet (Sheet1) is active.
- ✓ It then uses the Excel COUNTA function to count the number of entries in column A and to determine the next blank cell in the column.
- ✓ Next, the procedure transfers the text from the TextBox to column A.
- ✓ It then uses a series of If statements to determine which OptionButton was selected and writes the appropriate text (Male, Female, or Unknown) to column B.
- ✓ Finally, the dialog box is reset to make it ready for the next entry. Notice that clicking the Enter button doesn't close the dialog box, because the user will probably want to enter more data. To end data entry, click the Close button.

## Validating the data

Play around with this routine some more, and you find that the macro has a small problem: It doesn't ensure that the user actually enters a name into the TextBox. The following code — which is inserted in the EnterButton\_Click procedure before the text is transferred to the worksheet — ensures that the user enters some text in the TextBox. If the TextBox is empty, a message appears, and the routine stops. The dialog box remains open, however, so the user can correct the problem.

```
' Make sure a name is entered
If TextName.Text = "" Then
    MsgBox "You must enter a name."
    Exit Sub
End If
```

## Now the dialog box works

After making these modifications, you find that the dialog box works flawlessly. In real life, you'd probably need to collect more information than just name and sex. However, the same basic principles apply. You just have to deal with more UserForm controls.

One more thing to remember: If the data doesn't begin in row 1 or if the data area contains any blank rows, the counting for the NextRow variable will be wrong. The COUNTA function is counting the number of cells in column A, and the assumption is that there are no blank cells above the last name in the column. Here's another way of determining the next empty row:

```
NextRow = Cells(Rows.Count, 1).End(xlUp).Row + 1
```

The statement simulates activating the last cell in column A, pressing End, pressing Up Arrow, and then moving down one row. If you do that manually, the cell pointer will be in the next empty cell in column A — even if the data area doesn't begin in row 1 and contains blank rows.

## More UserForm Examples

I could probably fill an entire book with interesting and useful tips for working with custom dialog boxes, but this book has a limited number of pages, so I wrap it up with a few more examples.

### A ListBox example

ListBoxes are useful controls, but working with them can be a bit tricky. Before displaying a dialog box that uses a ListBox, fill the ListBox with items. Then when the dialog box is closed, you need to determine which item(s) the user selected.

When dealing with ListBoxes, you need to know about the following properties and methods:



- ✓ **AddItem:** You use this method to add an item to a ListBox.
- ✓ **ListCount:** This property returns the number of items in the ListBox.
- ✓ **ListBox:** This property returns the index number of the selected item or sets the item that's selected (single selections only). The first item has a ListIndex of 0 (not 1).
- ✓ **MultiSelect:** This property determines whether the user can select more than one item from the ListBox.
- ✓ **RemoveAllItems:** Use this method to remove all items from a ListBox.
- ✓ **Selected:** This property returns an array indicating selected items (applicable only when multiple selections are allowed).
- ✓ **Value:** This property returns the selected item in a ListBox.



Most of the methods and properties that work with ListBoxes also work with ComboBoxes. So after you've figured out how to handle ListBoxes, you can transfer that knowledge to your work with ComboBoxes.

### *Filling a ListBox*

For best results, start with an empty workbook. The example in this section assumes the following:

- ✓ You've added a UserForm.
- ✓ The UserForm contains a ListBox control named `ListBox1`.
- ✓ The UserForm has a CommandButton named `OKButton`.
- ✓ The UserForm has a CommandButton named `CancelButton`, which has the following event-handler procedure:

```
Private Sub CancelButton_Click()
    Unload UserForm1
End Sub
```

The following procedure is stored in the Initialize procedure for the UserForm:

**1. Select your UserForm and press F7 to activate its Code window.**

The VBE displays the Code window for your form and is ready for you to input the code for the Initialize event.

**2. Using the Procedure drop-down list at the top of the Code window, choose Initialize.**

**3. Add the initialization code for the form:**

```
Sub UserForm_Initialize()
    ' Fill the list box
    With ListBox1
        .AddItem "January"
        .AddItem "February"
        .AddItem "March"
        .AddItem "April"
        .AddItem "May"
        .AddItem "June"
        .AddItem "July"
        .AddItem "August"
        .AddItem "September"
        .AddItem "October"
        .AddItem "November"
        .AddItem "December"
    End With

    ' Select the first list item
    ListBox1.ListIndex = 0
End Sub
```

This initialization routine runs automatically whenever your UserForm is loaded. So when you use the Show method for the UserForm, the code is executed and your ListBox is populated with 12 items, each added via the AddItem method.

**4. Insert a VBA module and type a short Sub procedure to display the dialog box:**

```
Sub ShowList()
    UserForm1.Show
End Sub
```

***Determining the selected item***

The preceding code merely displays a dialog box with a ListBox filled with month names. What's missing is a procedure to determine which item in the ListBox is selected.

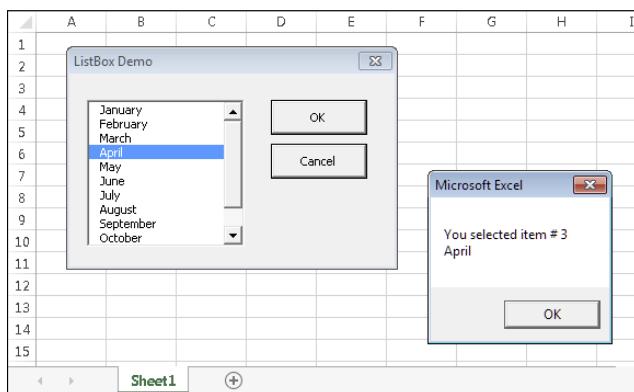
Add the following to the OKButton\_Click procedure:

```
Private Sub OKButton_Click()
    Dim Msg As String
    Msg = "You selected item # "
    Msg = Msg & ListBox1.ListIndex
    Msg = Msg & vbCrLf
    Msg = Msg & ListBox1.Value
    MsgBox Msg
    Unload UserForm1
End Sub
```

This procedure displays a message box with the selected item number and the selected item.

If no item in the ListBox is selected, the ListIndex property returns -1. However, this will never be the case for this particular ListBox, because code in the UserForm\_Initialize procedure selected the first item. It's impossible to unselect an item without selecting another item. So, there will *always* be a selected item, if the user doesn't actually select a month.

Figure 18-4 shows how this looks.



**Figure 18-4:**  
Determining  
which item  
in a ListBox  
is selected.

The first item in a ListBox has a ListIndex of 0, not 1 (as you might expect). This is always the case, even if you use an Option Base 1 statement to change the default lower bound for arrays.



This example is available at this book's website.

### Determining multiple selections

If your ListBox is set up so the user can select more than one item, you find that the ListIndex property returns only the *last* item selected. To determine all selected items, you need to use the Selected property, which contains an array.



To allow multiple selections in a ListBox, set the MultiSelect property to either 1 or 2. You can do so at design time by using the Properties window or at runtime by using a VBA statement such as this:

```
UserForm1.ListBox1.MultiSelect = 1
```

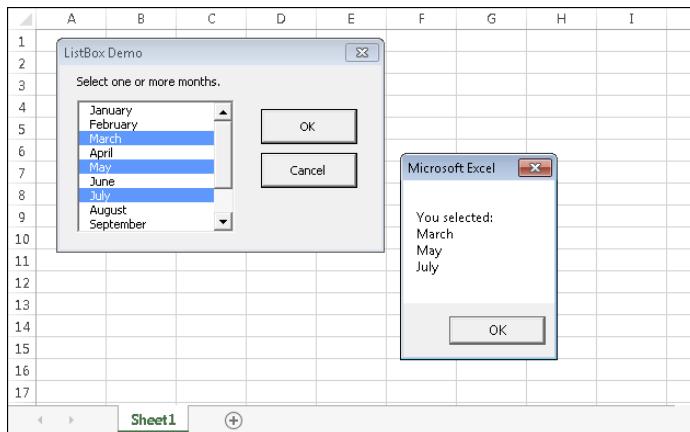
The MultiSelect property has three possible settings. The meaning of each is shown in Table 18-1.

**Table 18-1** Settings for the MultiSelect property

<b>Value</b>	<b>VBA Constant</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
0	fmMultiSelectSingle	Only a single item can be selected.
1	fmMultiSelectMulti	Clicking an item or pressing the space bar selects or deselects an item in the list.
2	fmMultiSelectExtended	Items are added to or removed from the selection set by holding down the Shift or Ctrl key as you click items.

The following procedure displays a message box that lists all selected items in a ListBox. Figure 18-5 shows an example.

**Figure 18-5:**  
Determining  
the selected  
items in  
a ListBox  
allows  
multiple  
selections.



```
Private Sub OKButton_Click()
    Dim Msg As String
    Dim i As Integer
    Dim Counter As Integer
    Msg = "You selected:" & vbCrLf
    For i = 0 To ListBox1.ListCount - 1
        If ListBox1.Selected(i) Then
            Counter = Counter + 1
            Msg = Msg & ListBox1.List(i) & vbCrLf
        End If
    Next i
    If Counter = 0 Then Msg = Msg & "(nothing)"
    MsgBox Msg
    Unload UserForm1
End Sub
```

This routine uses a For-Next loop to cycle through each item in the ListBox. Notice that the loop starts with item 0 (the first item) and ends with the last item (determined by the value of the ListCount property minus 1). If an item's Selected property is True, it means that the list item was selected. The code also uses a variable (Counter) to keep track of how many items are selected. An If-Then statement modifies the message if nothing is selected.

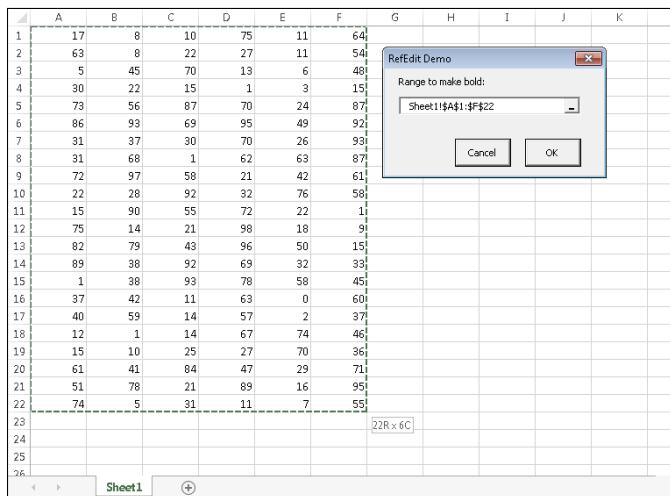


This example is available at this book's website.

## Selecting a range

In some cases, you may want the user to select a range while a dialog box is displayed. An example of this type of range selection occurs in the Create Table dialog box, which is displayed when you choose Home $\Rightarrow$ Insert $\Rightarrow$ Tables $\Rightarrow$ Table. The Create Table dialog box has a range selector control that contains Excel's guess regarding the range to be converted — but you can use this control to change the range by selecting cells in the worksheet.

To allow a range selection in your dialog box, add a RefEdit control. The following example displays a dialog box with the current region's range address displayed in a RefEdit control, as shown in Figure 18-6. The current region is the block of nonempty cells that contains the active cell. The user can accept or change this range. When the user clicks OK, the procedure makes the range bold.



**Figure 18-6:**  
This dialog  
box lets the  
user select  
a range.

This example assumes the following:

- ✓ You have a UserForm named UserForm1.
- ✓ The UserForm contains a CommandButton control named OKButton.
- ✓ The UserForm contains a CommandButton control named CancelButton.
- ✓ The UserForm contains a RefEdit control named RefEdit1.

The code is stored in a VBA module and shown here. This code does two things: initializes the dialog box by assigning the current region's address to the RefEdit control and displays the UserForm.

```
Sub BoldCells()
    ' Exit if worksheet is not active
    If TypeName(ActiveSheet) <> "Worksheet" Then Exit Sub

    ' Select the current region
    ActiveCell.CurrentRegion.Select

    ' Initialize RefEdit control
    UserForm1.RefEdit1.Text = Selection.Address

    ' Show dialog
    UserForm1.Show
End Sub
```

The following procedure is executed when the OK button is clicked. This procedure does some simple error checking to make sure that the range specified in the RefEdit control is valid.

```
Private Sub OKButton_Click()
    On Error GoTo BadRange
    Range(RefEdit1.Text).Font.Bold = True
    Unload UserForm1
    Exit Sub
BadRange:
    MsgBox "The specified range is not valid."
End Sub
```

If an error occurs (most likely an invalid range specification in the RefEdit control), the code jumps to the BadRange label, and a message box is displayed. The dialog box remains open so the user can select another range.



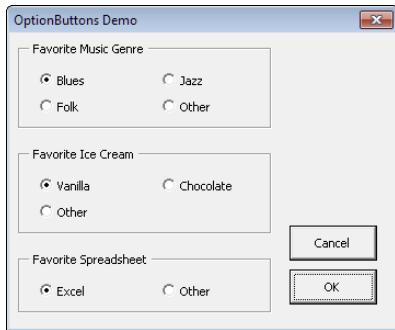
If getting a user selected range is the *only* function performed by your UserForm, you can simplify things by using the Application InputBox method. See Chapter 15.

## Using multiple sets of OptionButtons

Figure 18-7 shows a custom dialog box with three sets of OptionButtons. If your UserForm contains more than one set of OptionButtons, make sure that each set of OptionButtons works as a group. You can do so in either of two ways:

- ✓ Enclose each set of OptionButtons in a Frame control. This approach is the easiest and also makes the dialog box look more organized. It's easier to add the Frame before adding the OptionButtons. You can, however, also drag existing OptionButtons into a Frame.
- ✓ Make sure that each set of OptionButtons has a unique GroupName property (which you specify in the Properties box). If the OptionButtons are in a Frame, you don't have to be concerned with the GroupName property.

**Figure 18-7:**  
This dialog box contains three sets of Option Button controls.



Only one OptionButton in a group can have a value of True. To specify a default option for a set of OptionButtons, just set the Value property for the default item to True. You can do this directly in the Properties box or by using VBA code:

```
UserForm1.OptionButton1.Value = True
```



This example is available at this book's website. It also has code that displays the selected options when the user clicks OK.

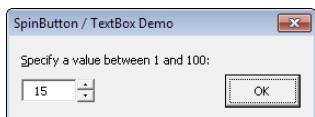
## Using a SpinButton and a TextBox

A SpinButton control lets the user specify a number by clicking arrows. This control consists only of arrows (no text), so you usually want a method to

display the selected number. One option is to use a Label control, but this has a disadvantage: The user can't type text in a Label. A better choice is to use a TextBox.

A SpinButton control and TextBox control form a natural pair, and Excel uses them frequently. For example, check out Excel's Page Setup dialog box for a few examples. Ideally, the SpinButton and its TextBox are always in sync: If the user clicks the SpinButton, the SpinButton's value should appear in the TextBox. And if the user enters a value directly into the TextBox, the SpinButton should take on that value. Figure 18-8 shows a custom dialog box with a SpinButton and a TextBox.

**Figure 18-8:**  
A UserForm  
with a  
SpinButton  
and a  
companion  
TextBox.



This UserForm contains the following controls:

- ✓ A SpinButton named SpinButton1, with its Min property set to 1 and its Max property set to 100
- ✓ A TextBox named TextBox1, positioned to the left of the SpinButton
- ✓ A CommandButton named OKButton

The event-handler procedure for the SpinButton follows. This procedure handles the Change event, which is triggered whenever the SpinButton value is changed. When the SpinButton's value changes (when it's clicked), this procedure assigns the SpinButton's value to the TextBox. To create this procedure, double-click the SpinButton to activate the Code window for the UserForm. Then enter this code:

```
Private Sub SpinButton1_Change()
    TextBox1.Text = SpinButton1.Value
End Sub
```

The event-handler for the TextBox, which is listed next, is a bit more complicated. To create this procedure, double-click the TextBox to activate the Code window for the UserForm. This procedure is executed whenever the user changes the text in the TextBox.

```

Private Sub TextBox1_Change()
    Dim NewVal As Integer

    NewVal = Val(TextBox1.Text)
    If NewVal >= SpinButton1.Min And _
        NewVal <= SpinButton1.Max Then _
            SpinButton1.Value = NewVal
End Sub

```

This procedure uses a variable, which stores the text in the TextBox (converted to a value with the Val function). It then checks to ensure that the value is within the proper range. If so, the SpinButton is set to the value in the TextBox. The net effect is that the SpinButton's value is always equal to the value in the TextBox (assuming that the SpinButton's value is in the proper range).



If you use F8 to single-step through the code in debugging mode, you will notice that when the line SpinButton1.Value = NewVal is executed, the change event of the SpinButton immediately fires. In turn, the SpinButton1\_Change event sets the value of TextBox1. Luckily, this in turn does not fire the TextBox1\_Change event, because its value is not actually changed by the SpinButton1\_Change event. But you can imagine this effect can cause surprising results in your UserForm. Confused? Just remember that if your code changes the Value of a control, the Change event of that control will fire.



This example is available at this book's website. It also has a few other bells and whistles that you may find useful.

## *Using a UserForm as a progress indicator*

If you have a macro that takes a long time to run, you might want to display a progress meter so people won't think Excel has crashed. You can use a UserForm to create an attractive progress indicator, as shown in Figure 18-9. Such a use of dialog boxes does, however, require a few tricks — which I'm about to show you.

**Figure 18-9:**  
This  
UserForm  
functions as  
a progress  
indicator for  
a lengthy  
macro.

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
1	930	81	268	226	480	273	413	878	510
2	668	114					435	715	484
3	924	971					329	238	548
4	91	289					716	677	681
5	83	133					857	309	865
6	170	511					13	419	55
7	50	138					578	881	444
8	181	454	522	95	726	721	266	479	982
9	358	885	591	48	639	915	127	808	504
10	540	366	312	642	836	639	264	720	49
11	931	100	637	336	4	640	997	567	618
12	305	578	658	162	106	842	115	295	441
13	586	840	814	119	208	861	330	79	53
14	673	995	340	814	556	773	981	216	622
15	526	986	972	349	903	126	984	269	530
16	483	603	903	463	93	208	39	449	197
17	848	751	978	927	880	561	82	267	162
18	714	965	158	177	16	749	985	413	410
19	40	175	213	210	521	370	513	305	951

### ***Creating the progress indicator dialog box***

The first step is to create your UserForm. In this example, the dialog box displays the progress while a macro inserts random numbers into 100 columns and 1,000 rows of the active worksheet. To create the dialog box, follow these steps:

- 1. Activate the VBE and insert a new UserForm.**
- 2. Change the UserForm's caption to Progress.**
- 3. Add a Frame object and set the following properties:**

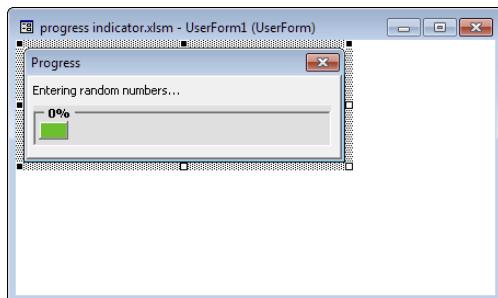
<b>Property</b>	<b>Value</b>
Caption	0%
Name	FrameProgress
SpecialEffect	2 — fmSpecialEffectSunken
Width	204
Height	28

- 4. Add a Label object inside the Frame and set the following properties:**

<b>Property</b>	<b>Value</b>
Name	LabelProgress
BackColor	&H000000FF& (red)
Caption	(no caption)
SpecialEffect	1 — fmSpecialEffectRaised
Width	20
Height	13
Top	5
Left	2

- 5. Add another Label above the frame and change its caption to Entering random numbers...**

The UserForm should resemble Figure 18-10.



**Figure 18-10:**  
The  
progress  
indicator  
UserForm.

### The procedures

This example uses two procedures and a module level variable.

- ✓ **The module level variable.** Located in a VBA module. This variable holds the copy of the UserForm:

```
Dim ProgressIndicator As UserForm1
```

- ✓ **EnterRandomNumbers.** It does all the work and is executed when the UserForm is shown. Notice that it calls the UpdateProgress procedure, which updates the progress indicator in the dialog box:

```
Sub EnterRandomNumbers ()  
    ' Inserts random numbers on the active worksheet  
    Dim Counter As Long  
    Dim RowMax As Long, ColMax As Long  
    Dim r As Long, c As Long  
    Dim PctDone As Single  
  
    ' Create a copy of the form in a variable  
    Set ProgressIndicator = New UserForm1  
  
    ' Show ProgressIndicator in modeless state  
    ProgressIndicator.Show vbModeless  
    If TypeName(ActiveSheet) <> "Worksheet" Then  
        Unload ProgressIndicator  
        Exit Sub  
    End If  
  
    ' Enter the random numbers  
    Cells.Clear  
    Counter = 1  
    RowMax = 200  
    ColMax = 50  
    For r = 1 To RowMax  
        For c = 1 To ColMax  
            Cells(r, c) = Int(Rnd * 1000)  
            Counter = Counter + 1  
        Next c  
        PctDone = Counter / (RowMax * ColMax)  
        Call UpdateProgress(PctDone)  
    Next r  
    Unload ProgressIndicator  
    Set ProgressIndicator = Nothing  
End Sub
```

✓ **UpdateProgress.** This procedure accepts one argument and updates the progress indicator in the dialog box:

```
Sub UpdateProgress(pct)
    With ProgressIndicator
        .FrameProgress.Caption = Format(pct, "0%")
        .LabelProgress.Width = pct * (.FrameProgress -
            .Width - 10)
    End With
    ' The DoEvents statement is responsible for the form
    ' updating
    DoEvents
End Sub
```

### *How this example works*

When the EnterRandomNumbers procedure is executed, it loads a copy of UserForm1 into the module variable named ProgressIndicator. Then it sets the width of the LabelProgress label to 0 and displays the UserForm in modeless state (so the code will continue to run).

The EnterRandomNumber procedure checks the active sheet. If it's not a worksheet, the UserForm (ProgressIndicator) is closed, and the procedure ends with no action. If the active sheet is a worksheet, the procedure does the following:

- 1. Erases all cells on the active worksheet.**
- 2. Loops through the rows and columns (specified by the RowMax and ColMax variables) and inserts a random number.**
- 3. Increments the Counter variable and calculates the percentage completed (which is stored in the PctDone variable).**
- 4. Calls the UpdateProgress procedure, which displays the percentage completed by changing the width of the LabelProgress label and updating the caption of the frame control.**
- 5. Last, the UserForm is unloaded.**

Using a progress indicator will, of course, make your macro run a bit slower because the code is doing additional work updating the UserForm. If speed is absolutely critical, think twice about using a progress indicator.



If you adapt this technique for your own use, you need to figure out how to determine the macro's progress, which varies depending on your macro. Then call the UpdateProgress procedure at periodic intervals while your macro is executing.

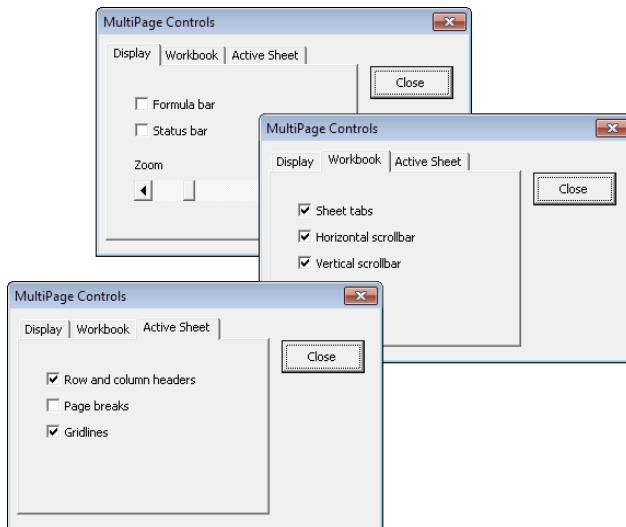


This example is available at this book's website.

## *Creating a modeless tabbed dialog box*

Tabbed dialog boxes are useful because they let you present information in small, organized chunks. Excel's Format Cells dialog box (which is displayed when you right-click a cell and choose Format Cells) is a good example. The dialog box in this example uses three tabs to help organize some of Excel's display options.

Creating your own tabbed dialog boxes is relatively easy, thanks to the MultiPage control. Figure 18-11 shows a custom dialog box that uses a MultiPage control with three *pages*, or *tabs*. When the user clicks a tab, a new page is activated, and only the controls on that page are displayed.



**Figure 18-11:**  
The three  
tabs of a  
MultiPage  
control.

Notice that this is a modeless dialog box. In other words, the user can keep it displayed while working. Each of the controls has an immediate effect, so there is no need to have an OK button. Here's the procedure that displays the UserForm so it stays on top:

```
Sub ShowDialog()
    UserForm1.Show vbModeless
End Sub
```

Modeless UserForms work a bit differently in Excel 2013, due to the single document interface (every workbook displays in its own separate window). With previous versions of Excel, a modeless UserForm stays on top regardless of which workbook is active. In Excel 2013, a modeless UserForm only stays on top of the workbook window that was active when the UserForm was displayed.



Keep the following points in mind when using the MultiPage control to create a tabbed dialog box:

- ✓ Use only one MultiPage control per dialog box.
- ✓ Make sure to use the MultiPage control, not the TabStrip control. The TabStrip control is more difficult to use.
- ✓ To make some controls (such as OK, Cancel, or Close buttons) visible at all times, place these controls outside the MultiPage control.
- ✓ Right-click a tab on the MultiPage control to display a shortcut menu that lets you add, remove, rename, or move a tab.
- ✓ At design time, click a tab to activate the page. After it is activated, add other controls to the page by using normal procedures.
- ✓ To select the MultiPage control itself (rather than a page on the control), click the border of the MultiPage control. Keep your eye on the Properties window, which displays the name and type of the selected control. You can also select the MultiPage control by selecting its name from the drop-down list in the Properties window.
- ✓ You can change the look of the MultiPage control by changing the Style and TabOrientation properties.
- ✓ The Value property of a MultiPage control determines which page is displayed. For example, if you write code to set the Value property to 0, the first page of the MultiPage control is displayed.



This example is available at this book's website.

## Displaying a chart in a UserForm

If you need to display a chart in a UserForm, you find that Excel doesn't provide any direct way to do so. Therefore, you need to get creative. This section describes a technique that lets you display one or more charts in a UserForm.

Figure 18-12 shows an example that displays three charts. The UserForm has an Image control. The trick is to use VBA code to save the chart as a GIF file and then specify that file as the Image control's Picture property (which loads the image from your disk). The Previous and Next buttons switch the displayed chart.



**Figure 18-12:**  
Displaying  
a chart in a  
UserForm.



In this example, which is also available on this book’s website, the three charts are on a sheet named Charts. The Previous and Next buttons determine which chart to display, and this chart number is stored as a Public variable named ChartNum, which is accessible to all procedures. A procedure named UpdateChart, which is listed here, does the actual work.

```
Private Sub UpdateChart()
    Dim CurrentChart As Chart
    Dim Fname As String

    Set CurrentChart = _
        Sheets("Charts").ChartObjects(ChartNum).Chart
    CurrentChart.Parent.Width = 300
    CurrentChart.Parent.Height = 150

    ' Save chart as GIF
    Fname = ThisWorkbook.Path & "\temp.gif"
    CurrentChart.Export FileName:=Fname, FilterName:="GIF"

    ' Show the chart
    Image1.Picture = LoadPicture(Fname)
End Sub
```

This procedure determines a name for the saved chart and then uses the Export method to export the GIF file. Finally, it uses the VBA LoadPicture function to specify the Picture property of the Image object.

## A Dialog Box Checklist

I wrap up this chapter with a checklist for use when creating dialog boxes:

- ✓ Are the controls aligned with each other?
- ✓ Are similar controls the same size?

- ✓ Are controls evenly spaced?
- ✓ Does the dialog box have an appropriate caption?
- ✓ Is the dialog box overwhelming? If so, you may want to use a series of dialog boxes or divide them over a MultiPage control.
- ✓ Can the user access every control with an accelerator key?
- ✓ Are any accelerator keys duplicated?
- ✓ Are the controls grouped logically, by function?
- ✓ Is the tab order set correctly? The user should be able to tab through the dialog box and access the controls sequentially.
- ✓ If you plan to store the dialog box in an add-in, did you test it thoroughly after creating the add-in?
- ✓ Will your VBA code take appropriate action if the user cancels the dialog box, presses Esc, or uses the Close button?
- ✓ Does the text contain any misspellings? Unfortunately, the Excel spell checker doesn't work with UserForms, so you're on your own when it comes to spelling.
- ✓ Will your dialog box fit on the screen in the lowest resolution to be used (usually 1024×768 mode)? In other words, if you develop your dialog box by using a high-resolution video mode, your dialog box may be too big to fit on a lower resolution screen.
- ✓ Do all TextBox controls have the appropriate validation setting? If you intend to use the WordWrap property, is the MultiLine property also set to True?
- ✓ Do all ScrollBars and SpinButtons allow valid values only?
- ✓ Do all ListBoxes have their MultiSelect property set properly?

The best way to master custom dialog boxes is by creating dialog boxes — lots of them. Start simply and experiment with the controls and their properties. And don't forget about the Help system; it's your best source for details about every control and property.

## **Chapter 19**

---

# **Accessing Your Macros through the User Interface**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Getting a sneak peek into customizing the Ribbon using XML
  - ▶ Adding items to a right-click menu
  - ▶ Adding a button to the Quick Access toolbar (manually)
  - ▶ Customizing the Ribbon (manually)
- 

**B**efore Office 2007, there was no such thing as a Ribbon. Back then, people used drop-down menus and toolbars. Now, the Ribbon is the user interface for Microsoft Office.

You might expect to be able to create custom Ribbon commands using VBA. The bad news is that you can't use VBA to modify the Ribbon. The good news is that you're not completely out of luck. This chapter describes some of the ways to work with Excel's user interface.

## ***Ribbon Customization***

This section describes ways to customize the Ribbon. You can modify the Ribbon manually, but you cannot make changes to the Ribbon by using VBA. Sad, but true. For example, if you write an application and you'd like to add a few new buttons to the Ribbon, you need to program those changes outside of Excel, using something called RibbonX.

### ***Customizing the Ribbon manually***

It's very easy to make changes to the Ribbon manually, but you must be using Excel 2010 or Excel 2013. If you use Excel 2007, you should just skip this section because it doesn't apply to you.

You can customize the Ribbon in these ways:

✓ Tabs

- Add a new custom tab.
- Delete custom tabs.
- Add a new group to tab.
- Change the order of the tabs.
- Change the name of a tab.
- Hide built-in tabs.

✓ Groups

- Add new custom groups.
- Add commands to a custom group.
- Remove commands from custom groups.
- Remove groups from a tab.
- Move a group to a different tab.
- Change the order of the groups within a tab.
- Change the name of a group.

That's a fairly comprehensive list of customization options, but there are some actions that you *cannot* do (no matter how hard you try):

- ✓ You cannot remove built-in tabs — but you *can* hide them.
- ✓ You cannot remove commands from built-in groups.
- ✓ You cannot change the order of commands in a built-in group.

You make manual changes to the Ribbon in the Customize Ribbon panel of the Excel Options dialog box (see Figure 19-1). The quickest way to display this dialog box is to right-click anywhere in the Ribbon and choose Customize The Ribbon.

The process of customizing the Ribbon is very similar to customizing the Quick Access toolbar, which is described later in this chapter. The only difference is that you need to decide where to put the command within the Ribbon. The general procedure is

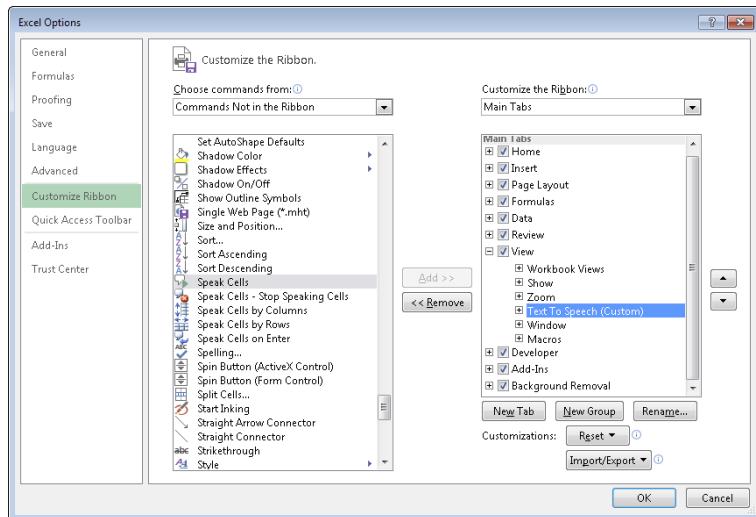
1. Use the drop-down list on the left (labeled Choose Commands From) to display various groups of commands.
2. Locate the command in the list box on the left and select it.
3. Use the drop-down list on the right (labeled Customize The Ribbon) to choose a group of tabs.

Main tabs refer to the tabs that are always visible; Tool tabs refer to the context tabs that appear when a particular object is selected.

**4. In the list box on the right, select the tab and the group where you would like to put the command.**

You'll need to click the "plus sign" controls to expand the hierarchical lists.

**5. Click the Add button to add the selected command from the left to the group on the right.**



**Figure 19-1:**  
The  
Customize  
Ribbon tab  
of the Excel  
Options dia-  
log box.

Keep in mind that you can use the New Tab button to create a new tab, and the New Group button to create a new group within a tab. New tabs and groups are given generic names, so you'll probably want to give them more meaningful names. Use the Rename button to rename the selected tab or group. You can also rename built-in tabs and groups.

Figure 19-2 shows a custom group (named Text To Speech) that I added to the View tab. This group has five commands.

**Figure 19-2:**  
The View  
tab, after  
adding a  
new group  
named Text  
To Speech.





Although you cannot remove a built-in tab, you can hide the tab by unchecking the check box next to its name.

## *Adding a macro to the Ribbon*

Fortunately, you can also add macros to the Ribbon. Follow the instructions in the previous section, but in Step 1 choose Macros from the drop-down list on the left. All of the currently available macros are listed, ready to be added to the Ribbon. You just need to decide on a tab and group for the macro.

If you customize the Ribbon to include a macro, the macro command in the Ribbon is visible even when the workbook that contains the macro is not open. Clicking the command will open the workbook that contains the macro.



If you add a button to the Ribbon that executes a macro, that Ribbon modification applies to your copy of Excel only. The Ribbon modifications are not part of the workbook. In other words, if you give your workbook to a colleague, the Ribbon customizations you made will *not* appear on the colleague's system.

## *Customizing the Ribbon with XML*

In some situations, you may want to modify the Ribbon automatically, when a workbook or add-in is opened. Doing so makes it easy for the user to access your macro. It also eliminates the need for the user to modify the Ribbon manually by using the Excel Options dialog box.

Making automatic changes to the Ribbon can be done with Excel 2007 and later versions, but it's not a simple task. Modifying the Ribbon involves writing XML code in a text editor, copying that XML file into the workbook file, editing a bunch of XML files (which also are stashed away inside the new Excel file format, which in reality is nothing more than a zipped container of individual files), and then writing VBA procedures to handle the clicking of the controls you put in the XML file.



Fortunately, software is available to assist you with customizing the Ribbon — but you still need to be on familiar terms with XML.

You can download a sample file from this book's website, which contains this customization. If you'd like to create it yourself, follow these steps exactly:

- 1. Create a new Excel workbook.**
- 2. Save the workbook and name it ribbon modification.xlsxm.**
- 3. Close the workbook.**

## Get the software

If you'd like to follow along with the Ribbon customization example, you need to download a small program called Custom UI Editor for Microsoft Office. This free program greatly simplifies the process of customizing the Ribbon in Microsoft Office applications. Using this software still requires a lot of work, but it's a lot easier than doing it manually.

The download location tends to change, so you should just search the web for "Custom UI

Editor for Microsoft Office" to find the software. It's a small download, and it's free.

Explaining all the intricate details involved in customizing the Ribbon is well beyond the scope of this book. However, I walk you through a quick example that demonstrates the steps required to add a new Ribbon group to the Home tab. The new Ribbon group is named *Excel VBA For Dummies*, and it contains one button, labeled Click Me. Clicking that button runs a VBA macro named ShowMessage.

### 4. Launch the Custom UI Editor for Microsoft Office.

If you don't have this software, you need to find it and install it. Refer to the sidebar, "Get the software," earlier in this chapter.

### 5. In the Custom UI Editor, choose File→Open and find the workbook you saved in Step 2.

### 6. Choose Insert→Office 2007 Custom UI Part.

Choose this command even if you're using Excel 2010 or Excel 2013.

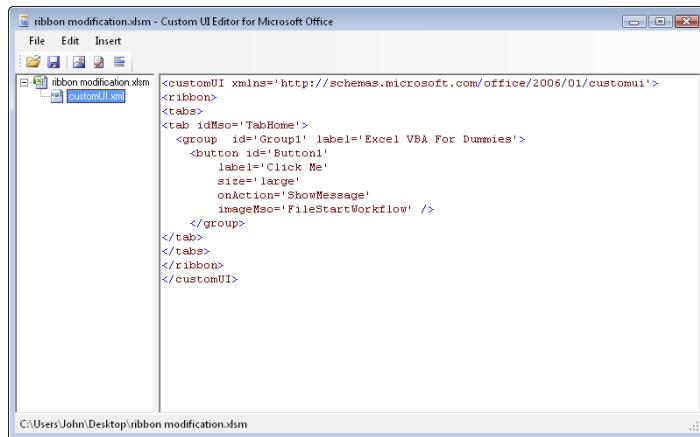
### 7. Type the following code into the code panel (named customUI.xml) displayed in the Custom UI Editor (see Figure 19-3):

```
<customUI xmlns='http://schemas.microsoft.com/
            office/2006/01/customui'>
    <ribbon>
        <tabs>
            <tab idMso='TabHome'>
                <group id='Group1' label='Excel VBA For Dummies'>
                    <button id='Button1'
                            label='Click Me'
                            size='large'
                            onAction='ShowMessage'
                            imageMso='FileStartWorkflow' />
                </group>
            </tab>
        </tabs>
    </ribbon>
</customUI>
```

### 8. Click the Validate button in the toolbar.

If the code has any syntax errors, you will get a message that describes the problem. If any errors are identified, you must correct them.

**Figure 19-3:**  
RibbonX  
code dis-  
played in  
the Custom  
UI Editor.



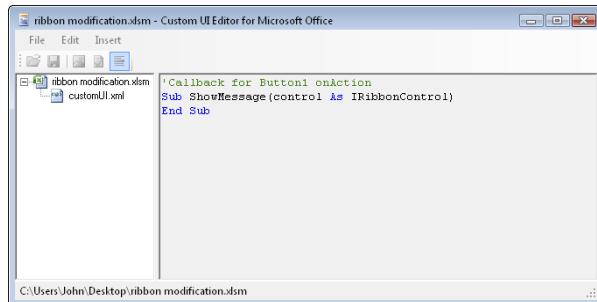
```
<customUI xmlns='http://schemas.microsoft.com/office/2006/01/customui'>
<ribbon>
<tab idMso='TabHome'>
<group id='Group1' label='Excel VBA For Dummies'>
<button id='Button1'
label='Click Me'
size='large'
onAction='ShowMessage'
imageMso='FileStartWorkflow' />
</group>
</tab>
</tabs>
</ribbon>
</customUI>
```

C:\Users\John\Desktop\ribbon modification.xlsx

### 9. Click the Generate Callback button.

The Custom UI Editor creates a VBA Sub procedure that is executed when the button is clicked (see Figure 19-4). This procedure is not actually inserted into the workbook, so you need to copy it for later use (or memorize it if you have a good memory).

**Figure 19-4:**  
The VBA  
callback  
procedure  
that is  
executed by  
clicking the  
Ribbon but-  
ton.



```
'Callback for Button1 onAction
Sub ShowMessage(control As IRibbonControl)
End Sub
```

C:\Users\John\Desktop\ribbon modification.xlsx

### 10. Go back to the customUI.xml module and choose File→Save (or click the Save icon in the toolbar).

### 11. Close the file by using the File→Close command.

### 12. Open the workbook in Excel; click the Home tab.

You should see the new Ribbon group and Ribbon button. But it doesn't work yet.

### 13. Press Alt+F11 to activate the VBE.

### 14. Insert a new VBA module and paste (or type) the callback procedure that was generated in Step 9; add a MsgBox statement, so you'll know if the procedure is actually being executed.

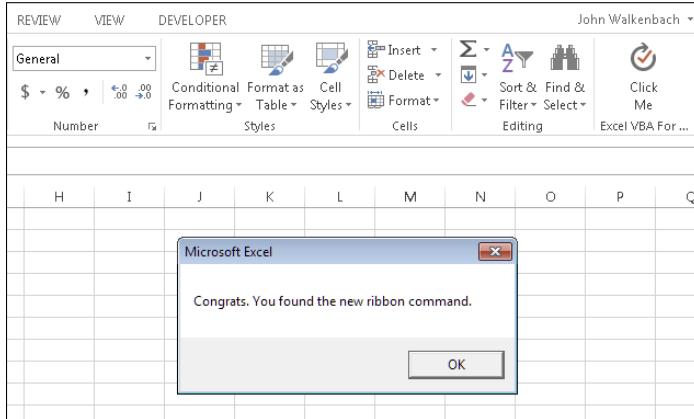
The procedure is

```
Sub ShowMessage(control As IRibbonControl)
    MsgBox "Congrats. You found the new ribbon command."
End Sub
```

**15. Press Alt+F11 to jump back to Excel; click the new button on the Ribbon.**

If all goes well, you'll see the MsgBox shown in Figure 19-5.

**Figure 19-5:**  
Proof that  
adding a  
new Ribbon  
command  
using XML  
is actually  
possible.



In the Custom UI Editor, when you choose Insert→Office 2007 Custom UI Part, you insert a UI part for Excel 2007. The Custom UI Editor also has an option to insert a UI part for Excel 2010 (and at some point, probably an option to insert a UI part for Office 2013). For maximum compatibility, use the Excel 2007 Custom UI Part.

You only need to insert a UI part for Excel 2010 (or Excel 2013) if you use features that are unique to Excel 2010 or (Excel 2013). You can also have a UI part for each version, but that's rarely necessary.

As I was writing this, the schema for an Office 2013 custom UI part was not yet available.

You probably realize that making Ribbon modification using XML is not exactly intuitive. Even with a good tool to help (such as the Custom UI Editor), you still need to understand XML. If that sounds appealing to you, search the web or find a book devoted exclusively to customizing the Ribbon interface in Microsoft Office. This isn't one of them.

## Adding a button to the Quick Access toolbar

If you create a macro that you use frequently, you may want to add a new button to the Quick Access toolbar. Doing so is easy, but you must do it manually. The Quick Access toolbar is intended to be customized by end users only—not programmers. Here's how to do it:

- 1. Right-click the Quick Access toolbar and select Customize Quick Access toolbar to display the Quick Access toolbar tab of the Excel Options dialog box.**
- 2. In the drop-down box labeled Choose Commands From, select Macros.**
- 3. Select your macro from the list.**
- 4. Click the Add button, and the macro is added to the Quick Access toolbar list on the right.**

- 5. If you like, click the Modify button to change the icon and (optionally) the display name.**

When you click a macro button on the Quick Access toolbar, the workbook that contains the macro is opened (if it's not already open). And the macro can be executed when any workbook is open.

You'll also find an option to display the Quick Access toolbar button only when a particular workbook is open. Before you add the macro, use the drop-down control at the top-right of the Excel Options dialog box and specify the workbook name, rather than For All Documents (Default).

If you have macros that are useful for many different workbooks, storing them in your Personal Macro Workbook is a good idea.

Because this XML stuff is way too complex for the beginner VBA programmer, the remainder of this chapter focuses on UI customization that uses the *old* method (VBA only). It's not as slick as the Ribbon, but it's a lot easier, and it still provides quick access to your macros.

## Customizing Shortcut Menus

Before Excel 2007, VBA programmers used the CommandBar object for creating custom menus, custom toolbars, and custom shortcut (right-click) menus.

Beginning with Excel 2007, the CommandBar object is in a rather odd position. If you write code to customize a menu or a toolbar, Excel intercepts that code and ignores many of your commands. Instead of displaying your well-thought-out interface enhancement, Excel 2007 (and later versions) simply dumps your customized menus and toolbars into a catchall Ribbon tab named Add-Ins.

Menu and toolbar customizations end up in the Add-Ins⇒Menu Commands or the Add-Ins⇒Custom Toolbars group. But customizing right-click shortcut

menus (which also uses the CommandBar object) still works as it always has. That's what I cover in the sections that follow.

## *Commanding the CommandBars collection*

Excel supports three types of CommandBars, differentiated by their Type property. For shortcut menus, you're interested in type 2, also known by its built-in constant name, msoBarTypePopup.

### *Listing all shortcut menus*

The procedure listed here uses the CommandBars collection. It displays, in a worksheet, the names of all shortcut menus — CommandBars that have a Type property of 2 (msoBarTypePopup). For each CommandBar, the procedure lists its Index and Name.

```
Sub ShowShortcutMenusName()
    Dim Row As Long
    Dim cbar As CommandBar
    Row = 1
    For Each cbar In Application.CommandBars
        If cbar.Type = msoBarTypePopup Then
            Cells(Row, 1) = cbar.Index
            Cells(Row, 2) = cbar.Name
            Row = Row + 1
        End If
    Next cbar
End Sub
```



Figure 19-6 shows a portion of the result of running this procedure (using Excel 2013), which is available at this book's website. For example, you see that the shortcut menu named Ply has an index of 42. That oddly named shortcut menu appears when you right-click a sheet tab. You might expect Ply to be named Worksheet Tabs, but that one (CommandBar 36) displays a list of worksheet names.

## *Referring to CommandBars*

In theory, you can refer to a particular CommandBar by using its Index property or its Name property. If you refer to Figure 19-6 you see that the Cell right-click menu has an Index of 10 or 39. This is because the content of the Cell right-click menu differs when Excel is in a different state. Number 10 is the one you get when Excel is in Normal view mode, number 39 shows when you are in Page Break Preview mode. You can refer to the shortcut menu in either of two ways:

```
Application.CommandBars(10)
```

or

```
Application.CommandBars("Cell")
```

	A	B	C
1		10 Cell	
2		24 PivotChart Menu	
3		36 Workbook tabs	
4		37 Column	
5		38 Row	
6		39 Cell	
7		40 Column	
8		41 Row	
9		42 Ply	
10		43 XLM Cell	
11		44 Document	
12		45 Desktop	
13		46 Nondefault Drag and Drop	
14		47 AutoFill	
15		48 Button	
16		49 Dialog	
17		50 Series	
18		51 Plot Area	
19		52 Floor and Walls	
20		53 Trendline	
21		54 Chart	
22		55 Format Data Series	
23		56 Format Axis	
24		57 Format Legend Entry	

**Figure 19-6:**  
A VBA  
macro  
produced  
this list of  
all short-  
cut menu  
names.



You might think that referring to CommandBars by using their Index property is better. Wrong! The problem is that the index numbers change with each version of Excel. If you write code to add a new item to CommandBar 10, the code will fail in Excel 2010. In that version of Excel, the index number for the Cell right-click menu was 36. So, forget about referring to CommandBars by using index numbers, and refer to them by name.

You can display a built-in, right-click menu using VBA (no right-clicking required!). The following statement, for example, causes the Cell right-click menu to display:

```
Application.Commandbars("Cell").ShowPopup
```

## Referring to controls in a CommandBar

A CommandBar object contains Control objects, which are buttons, menus, or menu items. The following procedure displays the Caption property for the first Control in the Cell's right-click menu:

```
Sub ShowCaption()
    MsgBox Application.CommandBars("Cell")._
        Controls(1).Caption
End Sub
```

When you execute this procedure, you see the message box shown in Figure 19-7. The ampersand is used to indicate the underlined letter in the text — the keystroke that will execute the menu item.

**Figure 19-7:**  
Displaying  
the Caption  
property for  
a control.



In some cases, Control objects on a shortcut menu contain other Control objects. For example, the Sort control on the Cell right-click menu contains other controls.

Each control has a Name and an Id property. You can access a control by using either of these properties (locating a control by its Id is slightly more complex though):

```
Sub AccessControlByName()
    MsgBox CommandBars("Cell").Controls("Copy").Caption
End Sub

Sub AccessControlById()
    MsgBox CommandBars("Cell").FindControl(ID:=19).Caption
End Sub
```



Don't use the Caption property to access a control if you are writing code that may be used by users with a different language version of Excel. The Caption is language-specific, so your code will fail on those users' systems. Instead, use the FindControl method in conjunction with the Id of the control (which is language-independent). Luckily, the CommandBar names are not internationalized.

## Properties of CommandBar controls

CommandBar controls have a number of properties that determine how the controls look and work. This list contains some of the more useful properties for CommandBar controls:

- ✓ **Caption:** The text displayed for the control. If the control shows only an image, the Caption appears when you move the mouse over the control.
- ✓ **FaceID:** A number that represents a graphics image displayed next to the control's text.
- ✓ **BeginGroup:** True if a separator bar appears before the control.
- ✓ **OnAction:** The name of a VBA macro that executes when the user clicks the control.
- ✓ **BuiltIn:** True if the control is an Excel built-in control.
- ✓ **Enabled:** True if the control can be clicked.
- ✓ **Visible:** True if the control is visible. Many of the shortcut menus contain hidden controls.
- ✓ **ToolTipText:** Text that appears when the user moves the mouse pointer over the control.

The ShowShortcutMenuItems procedure lists all the first-level controls on every shortcut menu. In addition, it identifies hidden controls by placing their Captions in angle brackets.

```
Sub ShowShortcutMenuItems()
    Dim Row As Long, Col As Long
    Dim Cbar As CommandBar
    Dim Ctl As CommandBarControl
    Row = 1
    Application.ScreenUpdating = False
    For Each Cbar In Application.CommandBars
        If Cbar.Type = msoBarTypePopup Then
            Cells(Row, 1) = Cbar.Index
            Cells(Row, 2) = Cbar.Name
            Col = 3
            For Each Ctl In Cbar.Controls
                If Ctl.Visible Then
                    Cells(Row, Col) = Ctl.Caption
                Else
                    Cells(Row, Col) = "<" & Ctl.Caption & ">"
                End If
                Col = Col + 1
            Next Ctl
            Row = Row + 1
        End If
    Next Cbar
End Sub
```

Figure 19-8 shows a portion of the output when the procedure is run using Excel 2013 (it will be different for Excel 2010). It's not exactly the most fascinating reading, but you might find it informative — or at least a bit interesting.



The ShowShortcutMenuItems procedure is available at this book's website. If you run the macro, you can see that many of the shortcut menus contain hidden controls.

**Figure 19-8:**  
Listing all  
top-level  
controls in  
all shortcut  
menus.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	10 Cell	Cu&t	&Copy	&Paste	Paste &Special...	&P
2	24 PivotChart Menu	Field Setti&ngs	&Options...	&Refresh Data	&Hide PivotChart Field Buttons	For
3	36 Workbook tabs	Sheet1	<&Sheet List>	<&Sheet List>	<&Sheet List>	<&
4	37 Column	Cu&t	&Copy	&Paste	Paste &Special...	&P
5	38 Row	Cu&t	&Copy	&Paste	Paste &Special...	&P
6	39 Cell	Cu&t	&Copy	&Paste	Paste &Special...	&P
7	40 Column	Cu&t	&Copy	&Paste	Paste &Special...	&P
8	41 Row	Cu&t	&Copy	&Paste	Paste &Special...	&P
9	42 Ply	&Insert...	&Delete	&Rename	&Move or Copy...	&V
10	43 XLM Cell	Cu&t	&Copy	&Paste	Paste &Special...	&P
11	44 Document	&Save	Save &As...	&Print...	Page Set&up...	&S
12	45 Desktop	&New...	&Open...	Save &Workspace...	&Calculate Now	<F
13	46 Nondefault Drag and Drop	&Move Here	&Copy Here	Copy Here as &Values Only	Copy Here as &Formats Only	&L
14	47 AutoFill	&Copy Cells	Fill &series	Fill &Formatting Only	Fill With&out Formatting	Fill
15	48 Button	Cu&t	&Copy	Copy Ink As &Text	&Paste	Cle
16	49 Dialog	&Paste	Ta&b Order...	&Run Dialog	<F&ull Screen>	
17	50 Series	&Selected Object	Chart T&ype...	S&elect Data...	Add T&rendline...	Cle
18	51 Plot Area	&Selected Object	Chart T&ype...	S&elect Data...	Chart Opt&ions...	Mo
19	52 Floor and Walls	&Selected Object	3-D &View...	Cle&r		
20	53 Trendline	&Selected Object	Cle&r			
21	54 Chart	&Selected Object	Cle&r			
22	55 Format Data Series	&Selected Object	Chart T&ype...	S&elect Data...	Add T&rendline...	&H
23	56 Format Axis	&Selected Object	Cle&r	&Hide Detail	&Show Detail	
24	57 Format Legend Entry	&Selected Object	&Hide Detail	&Show Detail	Cle&r	
25	58 Formula Bar	Cu&t	&Copy	&Paste	&Format Cells...	Pic
26	59 PivotTable Context Menu	&Copy	&Format Cells...	<Number Forma&t...>	&Refresh	<&
27	60 Query	Cu&t	&Copy	&Paste	Paste &Special...	&P
28	61 Query Layout	Cu&t	&Copy	&Paste	Paste &Special...	&P
29	62 AutoCalculate	&None	&Average	&Count	C&ount Nums	&N
30	63 Object/Plot	&Format Object...	Chart T&ype...	S&elect Data...	Chart Opt&ions...	Mo
31	64 Table/Range/Chart	Point	Format C...	Format C...	Format C...	

This has been a quick and dirty overview of CommandBars. There's a lot more to CommandBars, of course, but this is as far as I take it in this book. The next section provides some examples that may help clear up any confusion you have.

With the introduction of the new Ribbon user interface, a lot has changed. For amateur developers, some of the changes are for the better, and some for the worse. The possibilities for gaining control over the user interface by using just VBA are now very limited.

## VBA Shortcut Menu Examples

This section contains a few examples of using VBA to manipulate the Excel right-click menus — commonly known as shortcut menus. These examples give you an idea of the types of things you can do, and they can all be modified to suit your needs.

## *Resetting all built-in, right-click menus*

The following procedure resets all built-in toolbars to their original state:

```
Sub ResetAll()
    Dim cbar As CommandBar
    For Each cbar In Application.CommandBars
        If cbar.Type = msoBarTypePopup Then
            cbar.Reset
            cbar.Enabled = True
        End If
    Next cbar
End Sub
```

This procedure will have no effect unless someone has executed some VBA code that adds items, removes items, or disables shortcut menus.

## *Adding a new item to the Cell shortcut menu*

In Chapter 16, I describe the Change Case utility. You can enhance that utility a bit by making it available from the Cell shortcut menu.



This example is available at this book's website.

The AddToShortcut procedure adds a new menu item to the Cell shortcut menu. Recall that Excel has two Cell shortcut menus. This procedure modifies the normal right-click menu, but not the right-click menu that appears in Page Break Preview mode.

```
Sub AddToShortCut()
    Dim Bar As CommandBar
    Dim NewControl As CommandBarButton
    DeleteFromShortcut
    Set Bar = Application.CommandBars("Cell")
    Set NewControl = Bar.Controls.Add _
        (Type:=msoControlButton, ID:=1, _
         temporary:=True)
    With NewControl
        .Caption = "&Change Case"
        .OnAction = "ChangeCase"
        .Style = msoButtonIconAndCaption
    End With
End Sub
```

## What's different in Excel 2013?

If you've used VBA to work with shortcut menus in previous versions of Excel, you need to be aware of a significant change.

In the past, if your code modified a shortcut menu, that modification was in effect for all workbooks. For example, if you added a new item to the Cell right-click menu, that new item would appear when you right-clicked a cell in *any* workbook (plus, other workbooks that you open). In other words, shortcut menu modifications were at the *application* level.

Excel 2013 uses a single document interface, and that affects shortcut menus. Changes that you make to shortcut menus affect only the active workbook window. When you execute the code that modifies the shortcut menu, the shortcut menu for windows other than the

active window will not be changed. This is a radical departure from how things worked in previous versions.

And another twist: If the user opens a workbook (or creates a new workbook) when the active window displays the modified shortcut menu, then the new workbook will also display the modified shortcut menu. In other words, new windows display the same shortcut menus as the window that was active when the new window was opened.

Bottom line: In the past, if you opened a workbook or add-in that modified shortcut menus, you could be assured that the modified shortcut menus would be available in all workbooks. With Excel 2013, you no longer have that assurance.



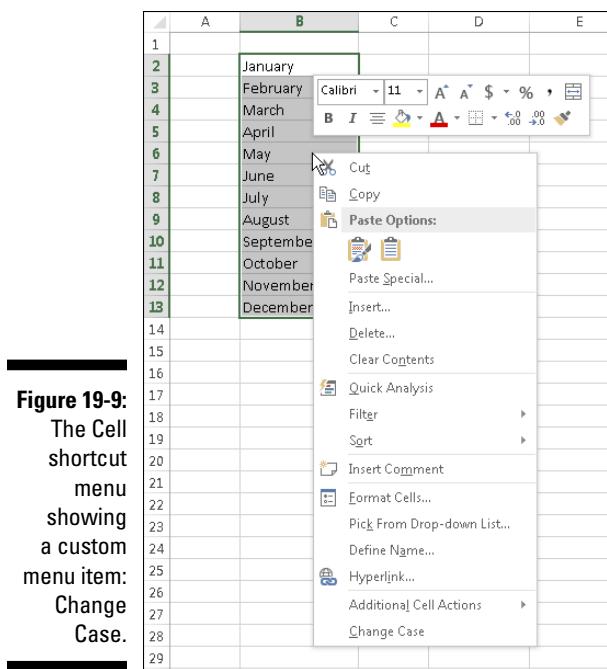
When you modify a shortcut menu, that modification remains in effect until you restart Excel. In other words, modified shortcut menus don't reset themselves when you close the workbook that contains the VBA code. Therefore, if you write code to modify a shortcut menu, you almost always write code to reverse the effect of your modification.

The DeleteFromShortcut procedure removes the new menu item from the Cell shortcut menu.

```
Sub DeleteFromShortcut()
    On Error Resume Next
    Application.CommandBars("Cell").Controls _
        ("&Change Case").Delete
End Sub
```

Figure 19-9 shows the new menu item displayed after right-clicking a cell.

The first actual command after the declaration of a couple of variables calls the DeleteFromShortcut procedure. This statement ensures that only one Change Case menu item appears on the shortcut Cell menu. Try commenting out that line (put an apostrophe at the start of the line) and running the procedure a few times — now don't get carried away! Right-click a cell, and you can see multiple instances of the Change Case menu item. Get rid of all the entries by running DeleteFromShortcut multiple times (once for each extra menu item).



**Figure 19-9:**  
The Cell  
shortcut  
menu  
showing  
a custom  
menu item:  
Change  
Case.

Finally, you need a way to add the shortcut menu item when the workbook is opened and to delete the menu item when the workbook is closed. Doing this is easy . . . if you've read Chapter 11. Just add these two event procedures to the ThisWorkbook code module:

```
Private Sub Workbook_Open()
    Call AddToShortCut
End Sub

Private Sub Workbook_BeforeClose(Cancel As Boolean)
    Call DeleteFromShortcut
End Sub
```

The Workbook\_Open procedure is executed when the workbook is opened, and the Workbook\_BeforeClose procedure is executed before the workbook is closed. Just what the doctor ordered.

## Disabling a shortcut menu

If you're so inclined, you can disable an entire shortcut menu. For example, you can make it so that right-clicking a cell does not display the normal shortcut menu. The following procedure, which is executed automatically when the workbook is opened, disables the Cell shortcut menu:

```
Private Sub Workbook_Open()
    Application.CommandBars("Cell").Enabled = False
End Sub
```

And here's its companion procedure that enables the shortcut menu when the workbook is closed.

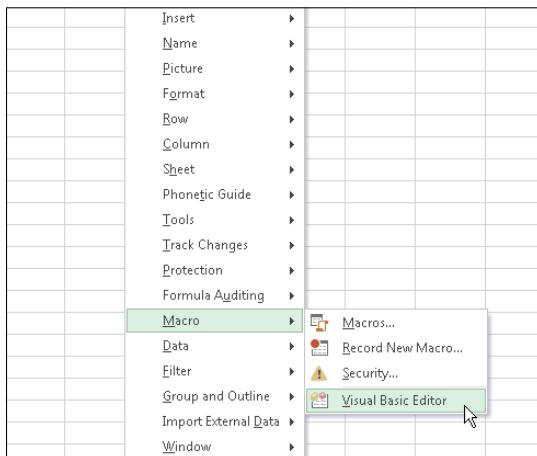
```
Private Sub Workbook_BeforeClose(Cancel As Boolean)
    Application.CommandBars("Cell").Enabled = True
End Sub
```

Both of these procedures must be in the Code module for the ThisWorkbook object.

## *Creating a Custom Toolbar*

If you check out all the CommandBars available, you may have noticed one called Built-In Menus. This CommandBar contains all the old Excel 2003 menu commands. Figure 19-10 shows part of this giant pop-up menu. All the old commands are there, but they aren't arranged very well.

**Figure 19-10:**  
Displaying  
the Built-In  
Menus  
shortcut  
menu.



In this example, I present a VBA procedure that (kind of) re-creates the old Excel 2003 menu bar. It creates a new CommandBar and then copies the controls from the Built-In Menus CommandBar.

```
Sub MakeOldMenus()
    Dim cb As CommandBar
    Dim cbc As CommandBarControl
```

```

Dim OldMenu As CommandBar

' Delete it, if it exists
On Error Resume Next
Application.CommandBars("Old Menus").Delete
On Error GoTo 0

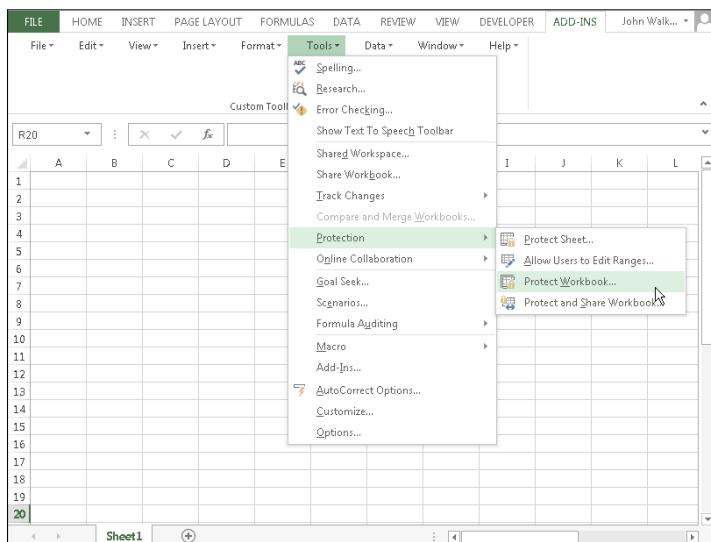
' Create an old-style toolbar
' Set the last argument to False for a more compact menu
Set OldMenu = Application.CommandBars.Add("Old Menus", , True)

' Copy the controls from Excel's "Built-in Menus" shortcut menu
With CommandBars("Built-in Menus")
    .Controls("&File").Copy OldMenu
    .Controls("&Edit").Copy OldMenu
    .Controls("&View").Copy OldMenu
    .Controls("&Insert").Copy OldMenu
    .Controls("F&ormat").Copy OldMenu
    .Controls("&Tools").Copy OldMenu
    .Controls("&Data").Copy OldMenu
    .Controls("&Window").Copy OldMenu
    .Controls("&Help").Copy OldMenu
End With

' Make it visible. It appears in the Add-Ins tab
Application.CommandBars("Old Menus").Visible = True
End Sub

```

Figure 19-11 shows the result of running the MakeOldMenus procedure. Notice that it appears in the Custom Toolbars group of the Add-Ins tab. This menu is, after all, a toolbar. It just looks like a menu.



**Figure 19-11:**  
A toolbar,  
pretending  
to be the  
Excel 2003  
menu  
system.

The new CommandBar is named Old Menus. The procedure starts by deleting that toolbar, if it already exists. Then code copies the “top level” controls from the CommandBar named Built-In Menus to the Old Menus CommandBar. A new CommandBar is hidden by default, so the final statement makes it visible.

The new “menu” system isn’t perfect. A few of the commands don’t work. You’ll also notice that the recent files on the File menu show only placeholders. To get rid of the toolbar, right-click it and choose Delete Custom Toolbar.

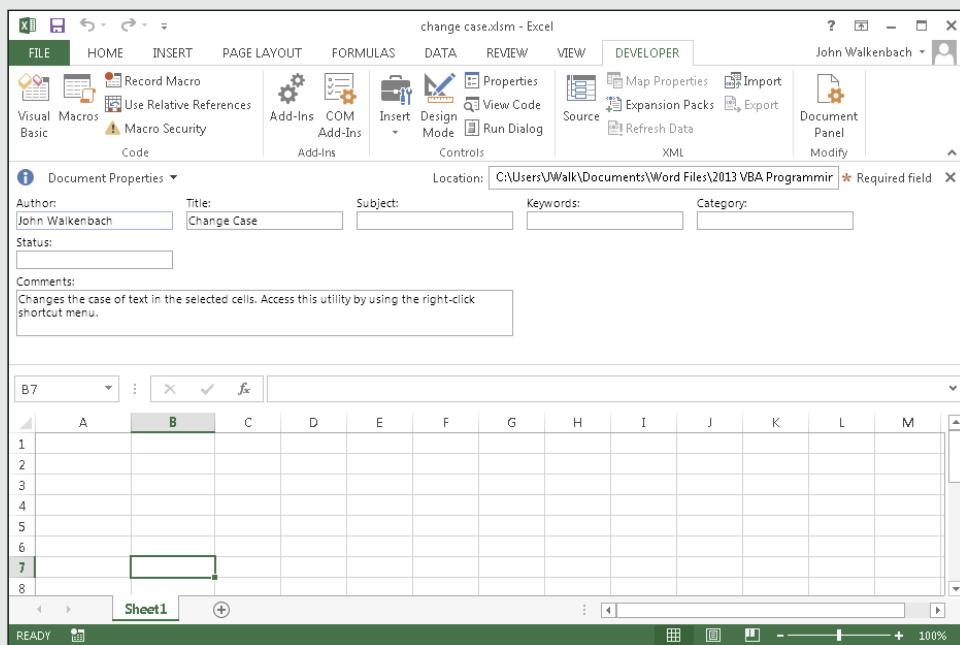


This example is available on this book’s website.



# Part V

# Putting It All Together



Get advice for finding items online at Dummies.com: [www.dummies.com/extras/excelvbaprogramming](http://www.dummies.com/extras/excelvbaprogramming).

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ Find out why you might want to create custom worksheet functions
- ✓ Make your custom functions work just like Excel's built-in functions
- ✓ Discover all about Excel add-ins
- ✓ Create simple add-ins
- ✓ Get advice for finding items online at Dummies.com: [www.dummies.com/extras/excelvbaprogramming](http://www.dummies.com/extras/excelvbaprogramming).

## **Chapter 20**

---

# **Creating Worksheet Functions — and Living to Tell about It**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Knowing why custom worksheet functions are so useful
  - ▶ Exploring functions that use various types of arguments
  - ▶ Understanding the Insert Function dialog box
- 

**F**or many macro mavens, VBA's main attraction is the capability to create custom worksheet functions — functions that look, work, and feel just like those that Microsoft built into Excel. A *custom function* offers the added advantage of working exactly how you want it to (because *you* wrote it). I introduce custom functions in Chapter 5. In this chapter, I get down to the nitty-gritty and describe some tricks of the trade.

## ***Why Create Custom Functions?***

You are undoubtedly familiar with Excel's worksheet functions — even Excel novices know how to use common worksheet functions, such as SUM, AVERAGE, and IF. By my count, Excel 2013 contains more than 450 predefined worksheet functions. And if that's not enough, you can create functions by using VBA.

With all the functions available in Excel and VBA, you may wonder why you would ever need to create functions. The answer: to simplify your work. With a bit of planning, custom functions are very useful in worksheet formulas and VBA procedures. Often, for example, you can significantly shorten a formula by creating a custom function. After all, shorter formulas are more readable and easier to work with.

## What custom worksheet functions can't do

As you develop custom functions for use in your worksheet formulas, it's important that you understand a key point. VBA worksheet Function procedures are essentially *passive*. For example, code within a Function procedure cannot manipulate ranges, change formatting, or do many of the other things that are possible with a Sub procedure. An example may help.

It might be useful to create a function that changes the color of text in a cell based on the cell's value. Try as you might, however, you can't write such a function. It always returns an error value.

Just remember this: A function used in a worksheet formula returns a value — it does not perform actions with objects.

That said, there are a few exceptions to this rule. For example, here's a Function procedure that changes the text in a cell comment:

```
Function ChangeComment(cell, NewText)
    cell.Comment.Text = NewText
End Function
```

And here's a formula that uses the function. It works only if cell A1 already has a comment. When the formula is calculated, the comment is changed.

```
=ChangeComment(A1, "Comment changed!")
```

I'm not sure if this is an oversight or a feature. But it's a rare example of a VBA function that changes something in a worksheet.

## Understanding VBA Function Basics

A VBA *function* is a procedure that's stored in a VBA module. You can use these functions in other VBA procedures or in your worksheet formulas. Custom functions cannot be created with the macro recorder, although the macro recorder can help you identify relevant properties and methods.

A *module* can contain any number of functions. You can use a custom function in a formula just as if it were a built-in function. If the function is defined in a different workbook, however, you must precede the function name with the workbook name. For example, assume you developed a function called *DiscountPrice* (which takes one argument), and the function is stored in a workbook named *pricing.xlsm*.

To use this function in the *pricing.xlsm* workbook, enter a formula such as this:

```
=DiscountPrice(A1)
```

If you want to use this function in a *different* workbook, enter a formula such as this (and make sure the *pricing.xlsm* file is open):

```
=pricing.xlsm!DiscountPrice(A1)
```



If the custom function is stored in an add-in, you don't need to precede the function name with the workbook name. I discuss add-ins in Chapter 21.

Custom functions appear in the Insert Function dialog box, in the User Defined category. Pressing Shift+F3 is one way to display the Insert Function dialog box.

## Writing Functions

Remember that a function's name acts like a variable. The final value of this variable is the value returned by the function. To demonstrate, examine the following function, which returns the user's first name:

```
Function FirstName()
    Dim FullName As String
    Dim FirstSpace As Integer
    FullName = Application.UserName
    FirstSpace = InStr(FullName, " ")
    If FirstSpace = 0 Then
        FirstName = FullName
    Else
        FirstName = Left(FullName, FirstSpace - 1)
    End If
End Function
```

This function starts by assigning the UserName property of the Application object to a variable named FullName. Next, it uses the VBA InStr function to locate the position of the first space in the name. If there is no space, FirstSpace is equal to 0, and FirstName is equal to the entire name. If FullName *does* have a space, the Left function extracts the text to the left of the space and assigns it to FirstName.

Notice that FirstName is the name of the function and is also used as a variable name *in* the function. The final value of FirstName is the value that's returned by the function. Several intermediate calculations may be going on in the function, but the function always returns the last value assigned to the variable that is the same as the function's name.



All the examples in this chapter are available at this book's website.

## Working with Function Arguments

To work with functions, you need to understand how to work with arguments. An argument is not a disagreement between variables. Rather, it's information that is passed to the function and then used by the function to do its thing.

The following points apply to the arguments for Excel worksheet functions and custom VBA functions:

- ✓ Arguments can be cell references, variables (including arrays), constants, literal values, or expressions.
- ✓ Some functions have no arguments.
- ✓ Some functions have a fixed number of required arguments.
- ✓ Some functions have a combination of required and optional arguments.

## Function Examples

The examples in this section demonstrate how to work with various types of arguments.

### A function with no argument

Some functions don't use any arguments. For example, Excel has a few built-in worksheet functions that don't use arguments. These include RAND, TODAY, and NOW.

Here's an example of a custom function with no arguments. The following function returns the UserName property of the Application object. This name appears in the General tab of the Excel Options dialog box. This simple but useful example shows the only way you can get the user's name to appear in a worksheet cell:

```
Function User()
    ' Returns the name of the current user
    User = Application.UserName
End Function
```

When you enter the following formula into a worksheet cell, the cell displays the current user's name:

```
=User()
```

As with the Excel built-in functions, you must include a set of empty parentheses when using a function with no arguments. Otherwise, Excel tries to interpret the function as a named range.

## A function with one argument

The single-argument function in this section is designed for sales managers who need to calculate the commissions earned by their salespeople. The commission rate depends on the monthly sales volume; those who sell more earn a higher commission rate. The function returns the commission amount based on the monthly sales (which is the function's only argument — a required argument). The calculations in this example are based on Table 20-1.

**Table 20-1****Commission Rates by Sales**

<b>Monthly Sales</b>	<b>Commission Rate</b>
\$0–\$9,999	8.0%
\$10,000–\$19,999	10.5%
\$20,000–\$39,999	12.0%
\$40,000+	14.0%

You can use several approaches to calculate commissions for sales amounts entered into a worksheet. You *could* write a lengthy worksheet formula such as this:

```
=IF(AND(A1>=0,A1<=9999.99),A1*0.08,IF(AND(A1>=10000,
A1<=19999.99),A1*0.105,IF(AND(A1>=20000,A1<=39999.99),
A1*0.12,IF(A1>=40000,A1*0.14,0))))
```

A couple reasons make this a bad approach. First, the formula is overly complex. Second, the values are hard-coded into the formula, making the formula difficult to modify if the commission structure changes.

A better approach is to create a table of commission values and use a LOOKUP table function to compute the commissions:

```
=VLOOKUP(A1,Table,2)*A1
```

Another approach, which doesn't require a table of commissions, is to create a custom function:

```
Function Commission(Sales)
    ' Calculates sales commissions
    Const Tier1 As Double = 0.08
    Const Tier2 As Double = 0.105
```

```

Const Tier3 As Double = 0.12
Const Tier4 As Double = 0.14
Select Case Sales
    Case 0 To 9999.99: Commission = Sales * Tier1
    Case 10000 To 19999.99: Commission = Sales * Tier2
    Case 20000 To 39999.99: Commission = Sales * Tier3
    Case Is >= 40000: Commission = Sales * Tier4
End Select

Commission = Round(Commission, 2)
End Function

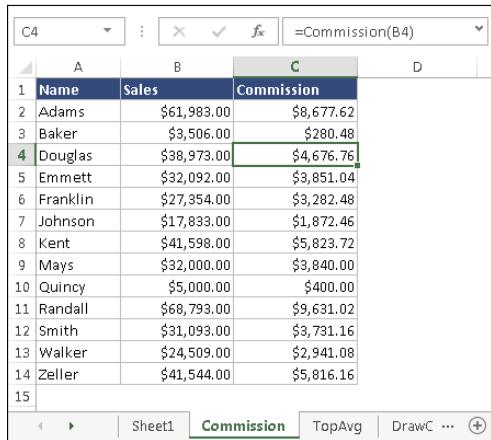
```

Notice that the four commission rates are declared as constants, rather than hard-coded in the statements. This makes it very easy to modify the function if the commission rates change.

After you define this function in a VBA module, you can use it in a worksheet formula. Entering the following formula into a cell produces a result of 3,000. The amount of 25,000 qualifies for a commission rate of 12 percent:

```
=Commission(25000)
```

Figure 20-1 shows a worksheet that uses the Commission function in formulas in column C.



	A	B	C	D
1	Name	Sales	Commission	
2	Adams	\$61,983.00	\$8,677.62	
3	Baker	\$3,506.00	\$280.48	
4	Douglas	\$38,973.00	\$4,676.76	
5	Emmett	\$32,092.00	\$3,851.04	
6	Franklin	\$27,354.00	\$3,282.48	
7	Johnson	\$17,833.00	\$1,872.46	
8	Kent	\$41,598.00	\$5,823.72	
9	Mays	\$32,000.00	\$3,840.00	
10	Quincy	\$5,000.00	\$400.00	
11	Randall	\$68,793.00	\$9,631.02	
12	Smith	\$31,093.00	\$3,731.16	
13	Walker	\$24,509.00	\$2,941.08	
14	Zeller	\$41,544.00	\$5,816.16	
15				

The formula bar shows =Commission(B4) for cell C4. The ribbon tabs at the bottom include 'Sheet1', 'Commission' (which is selected), 'TopAvg', 'DrawC', and other options.

**Figure 20-1:**  
Using the  
Commission  
function in a  
worksheet.

## A function with two arguments

The next example builds on the preceding one. Imagine that the sales manager implements a new policy to reward long-term employees: The total commission paid increases by 1 percent for every year the salesperson has been with the company.

I modified the custom Commission function (defined in the preceding section) so that it takes two arguments, both of which are required arguments. Call this new function *Commission2*:

```
Function Commission2(Sales, Years)
    ' Calculates sales commissions based on years in service
    Const Tier1 As Double = 0.08
    Const Tier2 As Double = 0.105
    Const Tier3 As Double = 0.12
    Const Tier4 As Double = 0.14
    Select Case Sales
        Case 0 To 9999.99: Commission2 = Sales * Tier1
        Case 10000 To 19999.99: Commission2 = Sales * Tier2
        Case 20000 To 39999.99: Commission2 = Sales * Tier3
        Case Is >= 40000: Commission2 = Sales * Tier4
    End Select
    Commission2 = Commission2 + (Commission2 * Years / 100)
    Commission2 = Round(Commission2, 2)
End Function
```

I simply added the second argument (*Years*) to the *Function* statement and included an additional computation that adjusts the commission before exiting the function. This additional computation multiplies the original commission by the number of years in services, divides by 100, and then adds the result to the original computation.

Here's an example of how you can write a formula by using this function. (It assumes that the sales amount is in cell A1; cell B1 specifies the number of years the salesperson has worked.)

```
=Commission2(A1,B1)
```

Figure 20-2 shows a worksheet that uses the *Commission2* function.

Name	Sales	Years	Commission2
Adams	\$61,983.00	4	\$9,024.72
Baker	\$3,506.00	3	\$288.89
Douglas	\$38,973.00	2	\$4,770.30
Emmett	\$32,092.00	1	\$3,889.55
Franklin	\$27,954.00	8	\$3,545.08
Johnson	\$17,833.00	3	\$1,928.64
Kent	\$41,598.00	2	\$5,940.19
Mays	\$32,000.00	1	\$3,878.40
Quincy	\$5,000.00	1	\$404.00
Randall	\$68,793.00	4	\$10,016.26
Smith	\$31,093.00	2	\$3,805.78
Walker	\$24,509.00	2	\$2,999.90
Zeller	\$41,544.00	3	\$5,990.64

**Figure 20-2:**  
Using the  
Commission 2  
function,  
which  
takes two  
arguments.

## A function with a range argument

Using a worksheet range as an argument is not at all tricky; Excel takes care of the behind-the-scenes details.

Here's a simple, but useful, function that concatenates the contents of a range. It takes two arguments: InRange (the worksheet range to be concatenated), and Delim (one or more delimiter characters, to be inserted between each cell).

```
Function JoinText(InRange, Delim)
    Dim Cell As Range
    For Each Cell In InRange
        JoinText = JoinText & Cell.Value & Delim
    Next Cell
    JoinText = Left(JoinText, Len(JoinText) - Len(Delim))
End Function
```

It uses a For Each-Next construct to loop through each cell in the range. It concatenates the cell contents, followed by the Delim character(s). The final statement removes the final delimiter.

Figure 20-3 shows an example. The second argument is a two character string (a comma, followed by a space).

**Figure 20-3:**  
Using the  
JoinText  
function to  
concatenate  
cells.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	January							
2	February							
3	March		January, February, March, April, May, June					
4	April							
5	May							
6	June							
7								
8								
9								
10								

Here's another example of a function that uses a range argument. Assume that you want to calculate the average of the five largest values in a range named Data. Excel doesn't have a function that can do this, so you would probably write a formula:

```
= (LARGE(Data, 1) + LARGE(Data, 2) + LARGE(Data, 3) +
LARGE(Data, 4) + LARGE(Data, 5)) / 5
```

This formula uses Excel's LARGE function, which returns the *n*th largest value in a range. The formula adds the five largest values in the range named

Data and then divides the result by 5. The formula works fine, but it's rather unwieldy. And what if you decide that you need to compute the average of the top six values? You would need to rewrite the formula — and make sure that you update all copies of the formula.

Wouldn't this be easier if Excel had a function named TopAvg? Then you could compute the average by using the following (nonexistent) function:

```
=TopAvg(Data, 5)
```

This example shows a case in which a custom function can make things much easier for you. The following custom VBA function, named TopAvg, returns the average of the  $N$  largest values in a range:

```
Function TopAvg(InRange, N)
    ' Returns the average of the highest N values in InRange
    Dim Sum As Double
    Dim i As Long
    Sum = 0
    For i = 1 To N
        Sum = Sum + WorksheetFunction.Large(InRange, i)
    Next i
    TopAvg = Sum / N
End Function
```

This function takes two arguments: InRange (which is a worksheet range) and N (the number of values to average). It starts by initializing the Sum variable to 0. It then uses a For-Next loop to calculate the sum of the  $N$  largest values in the range. Note that I use the Excel LARGE function within the loop. Finally, TopAvg is assigned the value of the Sum divided by  $N$ .



You can use all Excel worksheet functions in your VBA procedures *except* those that have equivalents in VBA. For example, VBA has a Rnd function that returns a random number. Therefore, you can't use the Excel RAND function in a VBA procedure.

## *A function with an optional argument*

Many Excel built-in worksheet functions use optional arguments. An example is the LEFT function, which returns characters from the left side of a string. Its official syntax follows:

```
LEFT(text [ ,num_chars ] )
```

The first argument is required, but the second (in square brackets) is optional. If you omit the optional argument, Excel assumes a value of 1. Therefore, the following formulas return the same result:

```
=LEFT(A1,1)  
=LEFT(A1)
```

The custom functions you develop in VBA also can have optional arguments. You specify an optional argument by preceding the argument's name with the keyword `Optional`. The argument's name is then followed by an equal sign and the default value. If the optional argument is missing, the code uses the default value.

One caveat: If you use optional arguments, they must always be last in the argument list.

The following example shows a custom function that uses an optional argument:

```
Function DrawOne(InRange, Optional Recalc = 0)  
    ' Chooses one cell at random from a range  
  
    Randomize  
    ' Make function volatile if Recalc is 1  
    If Recalc = 1 Then Application.Volatile True  
  
    ' Determine a random cell  
    DrawOne = InRange(Int((InRange.Count) * Rnd + 1))  
End Function
```

## Debugging custom functions

Debugging a `Function` procedure can be a bit more challenging than debugging a `Sub` procedure. If you develop a function for use in worksheet formulas, you find that an error in the `Function` procedure simply results in an error display in the formula cell (usually `#VALUE!`). In other words, you don't receive the normal run-time error message that helps you locate the offending statement.

You can choose among three methods for debugging custom functions:

- ✓ Place `MsgBox` functions at strategic locations to monitor the value of specific variables. Fortunately, message boxes in `Function` procedures pop up when you

execute the procedure. Make sure that only one formula in the worksheet uses your function, or the message boxes appear for each formula that's evaluated — which could get very annoying.

- ✓ Test the procedure by calling it from a `Sub` procedure. Run-time errors appear normally in a pop-up window, and you can either correct the problem (if you know it) or jump right into the debugger.
- ✓ Set a breakpoint in the function and then use the Excel debugger to step through the function. You can then access all the usual debugging tools. Refer to Chapter 13 to find out about the debugger.

This function randomly chooses one cell from an input range. The range passed as an argument is actually an array (I explain arrays in Chapter 7), and the function selects one item from the array at random. If the second argument is 1, the selected value changes whenever the worksheet is recalculated. (The function is made *volatile*.) If the second argument is 0 (or is omitted), the function is not recalculated unless one of the cells in the input range is modified.

I use the Randomize statement to ensure that a different random number “seed” is chosen each time the workbook is opened. Without this statement, the same random numbers are generated each time the workbook is opened.

You can use this function for choosing lottery numbers, selecting a winner from a list of names, and so on.

## Wrapper Functions

This section contains some relatively simple custom worksheet functions that are also very useful. I call these “wrapper” functions because they consist of code that’s wrapped around intrinsic VBA elements. In other words, they allow you to use VBA functions in worksheet formulas.

Earlier in this chapter, I presented a wrapper function:

```
Function User()
    ' Returns the name of the current user
    User = Application.UserName
End Function
```

This function, in essence, lets your formulas access the UserName property of the Application object.

The remainder of this section contains some additional wrapper functions.

### The NumberFormat function

This function simply displays the number format for a cell. It can be useful if you need to ensure that a group of cells all have the same number format.

```
Function NumberFormat(Cell)
    ' Returns the cell's number format
    NumberFormat = Cell(1).NumberFormat
End Function
```

Notice the use of `Cell (1)`? If a multicell range is used as an argument, only the first cell is used.

You can easily write similar functions that return a cell's text color, background color, font, and so on.

## The *ExtractElement* function

This is easily my favorite wrapper function. It returns a substring from a text string that contains multiple elements, separated by a separator character. For example, this formula returns *cow*, which is the third element in a string that uses a space as a separator. The arguments, of course, could be cell references.

```
=ExtractElement("dog horse cow cat", 3, " ")
```

Here's the code, which is a wrapper for VBA's Split function:

```
Function ExtractElement(Txt, n, Sep)
    ' Returns the nth element of a text string, where the
    ' elements are separated by a specified separator character
    ExtractElement = Split(Application.Trim(Txt), Sep)(n - 1)
End Function
```

Figure 20-4 shows the *ExtractElement* function used in worksheet formulas.

**Figure 20-4:**  
Using the  
Extract  
Element  
function to  
return an  
element  
from a  
string.

	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	123-45-78		2 -	45		
2	a b c d e f g		3	c		
3	a b c	d	3	c		
4	Bob Jones		1	Bob		
5	Bob Jones		2	Jones		
6	Bob Jones		3	#VALUE!		
7	55/98/44/23		3 /	44		
8	1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10		5 ,	5		
9	98--74--872--9823--23		3 ..	872		
10						
11						

## The *SayIt* function

This simple function is a wrapper for the Speak method of the Application.Speech object. It uses a synthesized voice to “speak” the argument.

```
Function SayIt(txt)
    ' Speaks the argument
    Application.Speech.Speak txt, True
End Function
```

Here's an example:

```
=IF(C10>10000,SayIt("Over budget"), "OK")
```

The formula checks cell C10. If the value is greater than 10,000, the function speaks the text: "Over budget." If the value is less than 10,000, the function displays the text OK (and doesn't say anything).

Use sparingly. If you use this function more than one time, it can be very confusing. Also, remember that this function is evaluated each time the worksheet is calculated, so the voice may get very annoying if you're making many changes. This function is probably more suited for amusement purposes.

## *The IsLike function*

VBA's Like operator is a very flexible way to compare text strings. Check it out in the VBA Help system. This function brings that power to your worksheet formulas:

```
Function IsLike(text, pattern)
    ' Returns true if the first argument is like the second
    IsLike = text Like pattern
End Function
```

## *Functions That Return an Array*

Array formulas are one of Excel's most powerful features. If you're familiar with array formulas, you'll be happy to know that you can create VBA functions that return an array.

### *Returning an array of month names*

I'll start out with a simple example. The MonthNames function returns a 12-element array of — you guessed it — month names.

```
Function MonthNames()
    MonthNames = Array("January", "February", "March", _
        "April", "May", "June", "July", "August", _
        "September", "October", "November", "December")
End Function
```

To use the MonthNames function in a worksheet, you must enter it as a 12-cell array formula. For example, select range A1:L1 and enter **=MonthNames()**. Then use Ctrl+Shift+Enter to enter the array formula in all 12 selected cells. Figure 20-5 shows the result.

**Figure 20-5:**  
Using the Month Names function to return a 12-element array.

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	
1												
2	January	February	March	April	May	June	July	August	September	October	November	December
3												
4												
5												
6												
7												

If you want the month names to display in a column, select 12 cells in a column and use this array formula (don't forget to enter it by using Ctrl+Shift+Enter):

```
=TRANSPOSE(MonthNames())
```

You can also pick out a single month from the array. Here's a formula (not an array formula) that displays the fourth element of the array — April.

```
=INDEX(MonthNames(), 4)
```

## Returning a sorted list

Suppose that you have a list of names you want to show in sorted order in another range of cells. Wouldn't it be nice to have a worksheet function do that for you?

The custom function in this section does just that: It takes a single-column range of cells as its argument and then returns an array of those cells sorted. Figure 20-6 shows how it works. Range A2:A13 contains some names. Range C2:C13 contains this multi-cell array formula. (Remember, the formula must be entered by pressing Ctrl+Shift+Enter.)

```
=Sorted(A2:A13)
```

Here's the code for the Sorted function:

```
Function Sorted(Rng As Range)
    Dim SortedData() As Variant
    Dim Cell As Range
```

```

Dim Temp As Variant, i As Long, j As Long
Dim NonEmpty As Long

' Transfer data to SortedData
For Each Cell In Rng
    If Not IsEmpty(Cell) Then
        NonEmpty = NonEmpty + 1
        ReDim Preserve SortedData(1 To NonEmpty)
        SortedData(NonEmpty) = Cell.Value
    End If
Next Cell

' Sort the array
For i = 1 To NonEmpty
    For j = i + 1 To NonEmpty
        If SortedData(i) > SortedData(j) Then
            Temp = SortedData(j)
            SortedData(j) = SortedData(i)
            SortedData(i) = Temp
        End If
    Next j
Next i

' Transpose the array and return it
Sorted = Application.Transpose(SortedData)
End Function

```

The *Sorted* function starts by creating an array named *SortedData*. This array contains all the nonblank values in the argument range. Next, the *SortedData* array is sorted, using a bubble sort algorithm. Because the array is a horizontal array, it must be transposed before it is returned by the function.

The *Sorted* Function works with a range of any size, as long as it's in a single column or row. If the unsorted data is in a row, your formula needs to use Excel's *TRANSPOSE* function to display the sorted data horizontally. For example:

```
=TRANSPOSE(Sorted(A16:L16))
```

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Unsorted		Sorted				
2	Keith		Abigail				
3	Frank		Ann				
4	Jackie		Darren				
5	Tim		Frank				
6	Ann		Jackie				
7	Louise		Keith				
8	Zola		Louise				
9	Opie		Mary				
10	Ralph		Opie				
11	Mary		Ralph				
12	Abigail		Tim				
13	Darren		Zola				
14							

**Figure 20-6:**  
Using a cus-  
tom function  
to return  
a sorted  
range.

## Using the Insert Function Dialog Box

The Excel Insert Function dialog box is a handy tool that lets you choose a worksheet function from a list and prompts you for the function's arguments. And, as I note earlier in this chapter, your custom worksheet functions also appear in the Insert Function dialog box. Custom functions appear in the User Defined category.



Function procedures defined with the Private keyword do not appear in the Insert Function dialog box. Therefore, if you write a Function procedure that's designed to be used only by other VBA procedures (but not in formulas), you should declare the function as Private.

### Displaying the function's description

The Insert Function dialog box displays a description of each built-in function. But, as you can see in Figure 20-7, a custom function displays the following text as its description: No help available.

To display a meaningful description of your custom function in the Insert Function dialog box, perform a few additional (nonintuitive) steps:

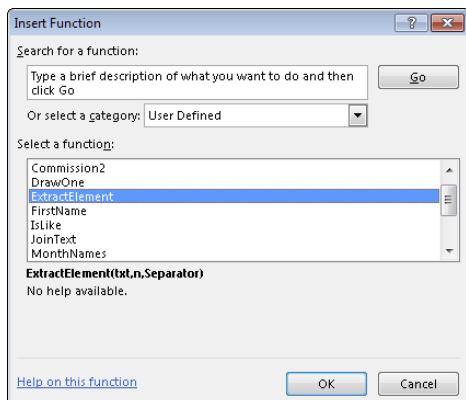
1. Activate a worksheet in the workbook that contains the custom function.
2. Choose Developer→Code→Macros (or press Alt+F8).

The Macro dialog box appears.

3. In the Macro Name field, type the function's name.

Note that the function does not appear in the list of macros; you must type the name.

**Figure 20-7:**  
By default,  
the Insert  
Function  
dialog box  
does not  
provide a  
description  
for custom  
functions.



**4. Click the Options button.**

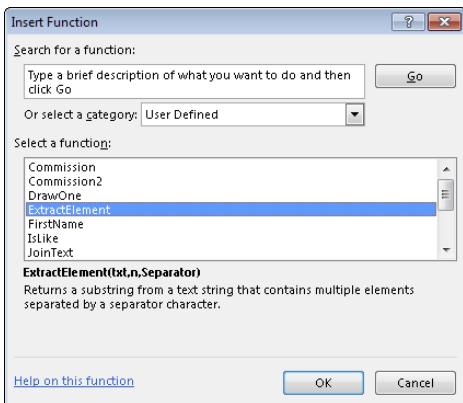
The Macro Options dialog box appears.

**5. In the Description field, type a description of the function.**

**6. Click OK.**

**7. Click Cancel.**

Now the Insert Function dialog box displays the description for your function; see Figure 20-8.



**Figure 20-8:**  
The custom  
function  
now dis-  
plays a  
description.



Custom functions, by default, are listed in the User Defined category. To add a function to a different category, you need to use VBA. This statement, when executed, adds the TopAvg function to the Math & Trig category (which is category #3):

```
Application.MacroOptions Macro:="TopAvg", Category:=3
```

Check the Help system for other category numbers. And remember, you need to execute this statement only one time. After you execute it (and save the workbook), the category number is permanently assigned to the function.

## Argument descriptions

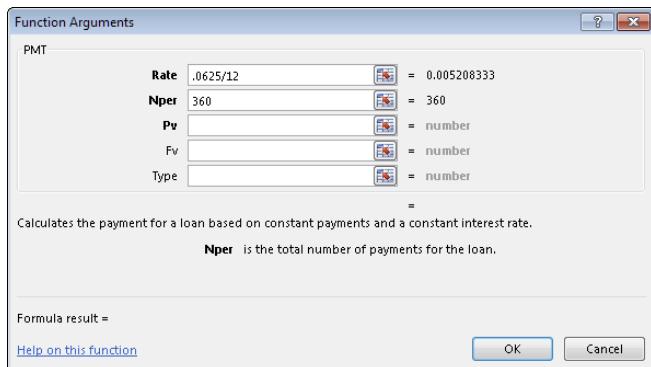
When you access a built-in function from the Insert Function dialog box, the Function Arguments dialog box displays a description of each argument. (See Figure 20-9.) In the past, it was not possible to add argument descriptions. But, beginning with Excel 2010, Microsoft finally implemented this feature. You provide argument descriptions by using the MacroOptions method. Here's an example that adds descriptions for the arguments used by the TopAvg function:

```
Sub AddArgumentDescriptions()
    Application.MacroOptions Macro:="TopAvg", _
        ArgumentDescriptions:= _
            Array("Range that contains the values", _
                "Number of values to average")
End Sub
```

You need to execute this procedure only one time. After you execute it, the argument descriptions are stored in the workbook and are associated with the function.

Notice that the argument descriptions appear as arguments for the Array function. You must use the Array function even if you're assigning a description for a function that has only one argument.

**Figure 20-9:**  
By default,  
the Function  
Arguments  
dialog box  
displays  
Function  
argument  
descriptions  
for built-in  
functions  
only.



This chapter provides lots of information about creating custom worksheet functions. Use these examples as models when you create functions for your own work. As usual, the online help provides additional details. Turn to Chapter 21 if you want to find out how to make your custom functions more accessible by storing them in an add-in.

## Chapter 21

# Creating Excel Add-Ins

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Using add-ins: What a concept!
- ▶ Knowing why you might want to create your own add-ins
- ▶ Creating custom add-ins

**O**ne of the slickest features of Excel — at least in *my* mind — is the capability to create add-ins. In this chapter, I explain why I like this feature and show you how to create add-ins by using only the tools built into Excel.

## *Okay . . . So What's an Add-In?*

Glad you asked. An Excel *add-in* is something you add to enhance Excel's functionality. Some add-ins provide new worksheet functions you can use in formulas; other add-ins provide new commands or utilities. If the add-in is designed properly, the new features blend in well with the original interface so they appear to be part of the program.



Excel ships with several add-ins, including the Analysis ToolPak and Solver. You can also get Excel add-ins from third-party suppliers or as shareware. My Power Utility Pak is an example of an add-in (it adds about 70 new features to Excel, plus a slew of new worksheet functions).

Any knowledgeable user can create add-ins, but VBA programming skills are required. An Excel add-in is basically a different form of an XLSM workbook file. More specifically, an add-in is a normal XLSM workbook with the following differences:

- ✓ The IsAddin property of the Workbook object is True.
- ✓ The workbook window is hidden and can't be unhidden by using the View→Window→Unhide command.
- ✓ The workbook is not a member of the Workbooks collection. Rather, it's in the AddIns collection.

You can convert any workbook file into an add-in, but not all workbooks are good candidates. Because add-ins are always hidden, you can't display worksheets or chart sheets contained in an add-in. However, you can access an add-in's VBA Sub and Function procedures and display dialog boxes contained on UserForms.



Excel add-ins usually have an XLAM file extension to distinguish them from XLSM worksheet files. Pre-2007 versions of Excel created add-ins with an XLA extension.

## Why Create Add-Ins?

You might decide to convert your Excel application into an add-in for any of the following reasons:

- ✓ **Make it more difficult to access your code:** When you distribute an application as an add-in (and you protect its VBA project), casual users can't view the sheets in the workbook. If you use proprietary techniques in your VBA code, you can make it more difficult for others to copy the code. Excel's protection features aren't perfect, though, and password-cracking utilities are available.
- ✓ **Avoid confusion:** If a user loads your application as an add-in, the file is invisible and therefore less likely to confuse novice users or get in the way. Unlike a hidden workbook, the contents of an add-in can't be revealed.
- ✓ **Simplify access to worksheet functions:** Custom worksheet functions that you store in an add-in don't require the workbook name qualifier. For example, if you store a custom function named MOVAVG in a workbook named NEWFUNC.XLSM, you must use syntax like the following to use this function in a different workbook:

```
=NEWFUNC . XLSM ! MOVAVG (A1 : A50)
```

But if this function is stored in an add-in file that's open, you can use much simpler syntax because you don't need to include the file reference:

```
=MOVAVG (A1 : A50)
```

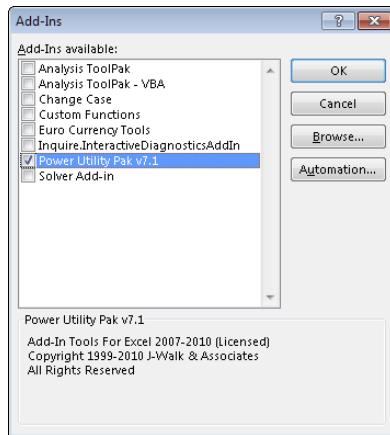
- ✓ **Provide easier access for users:** After you identify the location of your add-in, it appears in the Add-Ins dialog box, with a friendly name and a description of what it does. The user can easily enable or disable your add-in.
- ✓ **Gain better control over loading:** Add-ins can be opened automatically when Excel starts, regardless of the directory in which they are stored.
- ✓ **Avoid displaying prompts when unloading:** When an add-in is closed, the user never sees the dialog box prompt asking if you want to save changes in the file.

## Working with Add-Ins

You load and unload add-ins by using the Add-Ins dialog box. To display this dialog box, choose File→Options→Add-Ins. Then select Excel Add-Ins from the drop-down list at the bottom of this dialog screen and click Go. Or, take the fast track and choose Developer→Add-Ins→Add-Ins. But the easiest method is to just press Alt+TI (the old Excel 2003 keyboard shortcut).

Any of these methods displays the Add-Ins dialog box shown in Figure 21-1. The list box contains the names of all add-ins that Excel knows about. In this list, checkmarks identify any currently open add-ins. You can open and close add-ins from the Add-Ins dialog box by selecting or deselecting the check boxes.

To add a new add-in to the list, click Browse and then locate the XLAM file.



**Figure 21-1:**  
The Add-  
Ins dialog  
box lists all  
the add-ins  
known to  
Excel.



You can also open most add-in files (as if they were workbook files) by choosing the File→Open command. An add-in opened in this manner does not appear in the Add-Ins dialog box. In addition, if the add-in was opened by using the Open command, you can't close it by choosing File→Close. You can remove the add-in only by exiting and restarting Excel or by writing a macro to close the add-in.

When you open an add-in, you may or may not notice anything different. In many cases, however, the Ribbon changes in some way — Excel displays either a new tab or one or more new groups on an existing tab. For example, opening the Analysis ToolPak add-in gives you a new item on the Data tab: Analysis→Data Analysis. If the add-in contains only custom worksheet functions, the new functions appear in the Insert Function dialog box, and you'll see no change to Excel's user interface.

## Add-In Basics

Although you can convert any workbook to an add-in, not all workbooks benefit from this conversion. A workbook with no macros makes a completely useless add-in. In fact, the only types of workbooks that benefit from being converted to an add-in are those with macros. For example, a workbook that consists of general-purpose macros (Sub and Function procedures) makes an ideal add-in.

Creating an add-in isn't difficult, but it does require a bit of extra work. Use the following steps to create an add-in from a normal workbook file:

**1. Develop your application and make sure that everything works properly.**

Don't forget to include a method for executing the macro or macros.

You might want to define a shortcut key or customize the user interface in some way (see Chapter 19). If the add-in consists only of functions, there's no need to include a method to execute them because they will appear in the Insert Function dialog box.

**2. Test the application by executing it when a *different* workbook is active.**

Doing so simulates the application's behavior when it's used as an add-in because an add-in is never the active workbook.

**3. Activate the VBE and select the workbook in the Project window; choose Tools $\Rightarrow$ VBAProject Properties and click the Protection tab; select the Lock Project for Viewing check box and enter a password (twice); click OK.**

This step is necessary only if you want to prevent others from viewing or modifying your macros or UserForms.

**4. Choose Developer $\Rightarrow$ Document Panel and click OK to display the Standard Properties panel.**

Excel displays its Document Properties pane below the Ribbon.

**5. In the Document Properties pane, enter a brief descriptive title in the Title field and a longer description in the Comments field.**

Steps 4 and 5 are not required but make the add-in easier to use, because the descriptions you enter appear in the Add-Ins dialog box when your add-in is selected.

**6. Choose File $\Rightarrow$ Save As.**

**7. In the Save As dialog box, select Excel add-in (\*.xlam) from the Save as Type drop-down list.**

### 8. Specify the folder that will store the add-in.

Excel proposes its default add-ins folder (named AddIns), but you can save the file in any folder you like.

### 9. Click Save.

A copy of your workbook is converted to an add-in and saved with an XLAM extension. Your original workbook remains open.

## An Add-In Example

In this section, I discuss the basic steps involved in creating a useful add-in. The example is based on the Change Case text conversion utility that I describe in Chapter 16.



The XLSM version of this example is available at this book's website. You can create an add-in from this workbook.

## Setting up the workbook

The workbook consists of one blank worksheet, a VBA module, and a UserForm. In Chapter 19, I describe how to add code that adds a new menu item on the Cell right-click shortcut menu.

The original version of the utility included options for uppercase, lowercase, and proper case. For the add-in version, I added two new options to the UserForm, so it has the same options as the built-in tool in Microsoft Word:

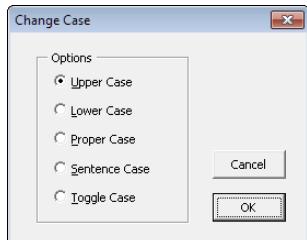
- ✓ **Sentence Case:** Makes the first letter uppercase, and all other letters lowercase.
- ✓ **Toggle Case:** All uppercase characters are converted to lowercase, and vice versa.

Figure 21-2 shows UserForm1. The five OptionButton controls are inside a Frame control. In addition, the UserForm has a Cancel button (named CancelButton) and an OK button (named OKButton).

The code executed when the Cancel button is clicked is very simple. This procedure unloads the UserForm with no action:

```
Private Sub CancelButton_Click()
    Unload UserForm1
End Sub
```

**Figure 21-2:**  
The  
UserForm  
for the  
Change  
Case add-in.



The code that's executed when the OK button is clicked follows. This code does all the work:

```
Private Sub OKButton_Click()
    Dim TextCells As Range
    Dim cell As Range
    Dim Text As String
    Dim i As Long

    ' Create an object with just text constants
    On Error Resume Next
    Set TextCells = Selection.SpecialCells(xlConstants, xlTextValues)

    ' Turn off screen updating
    Application.ScreenUpdating = False

    ' Loop through the cells
    For Each cell In TextCells
        Text = cell.Value
        Select Case True
            Case OptionLower 'lowercase
                cell.Value = LCase(cell.Value)
            Case OptionUpper 'UPPERCASE
                cell.Value = UCase(cell.Value)
            Case OptionProper 'Proper Case
                cell.Value = WorksheetFunction.Proper(cell.Value)
            Case OptionSentence 'Sentence case
                Text = UCase(Left(cell.Value, 1))
                Text = Text & LCase(Mid(cell.Value, 2, Len(cell.Value)))
                cell.Value = Text
            Case OptionToggle 'tOGGLE CASE
                For i = 1 To Len(Text)
                    If Mid(Text, i, 1) Like "[A-Z]" Then
                        Mid(Text, i, 1) = LCase(Mid(Text, i, 1))
                    Else
                        Mid(Text, i, 1) = UCase(Mid(Text, i, 1))
                    End If
                Next i
                cell.Value = Text
        End Select
    Next cell
End Sub
```

```
    End Select
Next

' Unload the dialog box
Unload UserForm1
End Sub
```

In addition to the two new options, this version of the Change Case utility differs from the version in Chapter 16 in two other ways:

- ✓ I use the SpecialCells method to create an object variable that consists of the cells in the selection that contain a text constant (not a formula). This technique makes the routine run a bit faster if the selection contains many formula cells. See Chapter 14 for more information on this technique.
- ✓ I added the Change Case menu item to the Row and the Column shortcut menus. So now, you can execute the utility by right-clicking a range selection, a complete row selection, or a complete column selection.

## *Testing the workbook*

Test the add-in before converting this workbook. To simulate what happens when the workbook is an add-in, you should test the workbook when a different workbook is active. Remember, an add-in is never the active sheet or workbook, so testing it when a different workbook is open may help you identify some potential errors.

### **1. Open a new workbook and enter information into some cells.**

For testing purposes, enter various types of information, including text, values, and formulas. Or just open an existing workbook and use it for your tests — remember that any changes to the workbook cannot be undone, so you may want to use a copy.

### **2. Select one or more cells (or entire rows and columns).**

### **3. Execute the ChangeCase macro by choosing the new Change Case command from your Cell (or Row or Column) right-click menu.**



If the Change Case command doesn't appear on your right-click menu, the most likely reason is that you did not enable macros when you opened the change case.xlsm workbook. Close the workbook and then reopen it — and make sure that you enable macros.

## *Adding descriptive information*

I recommend entering a description of your add-in, but this isn't required.

- 1. Activate the change case.xlsxm workbook.**
- 2. Choose Developer→Modify→Document Panel.**

Excel displays the Document Properties panel above the Formula bar. See Figure 21-3.

- 3. Enter a title for the add-in in the Title field.**

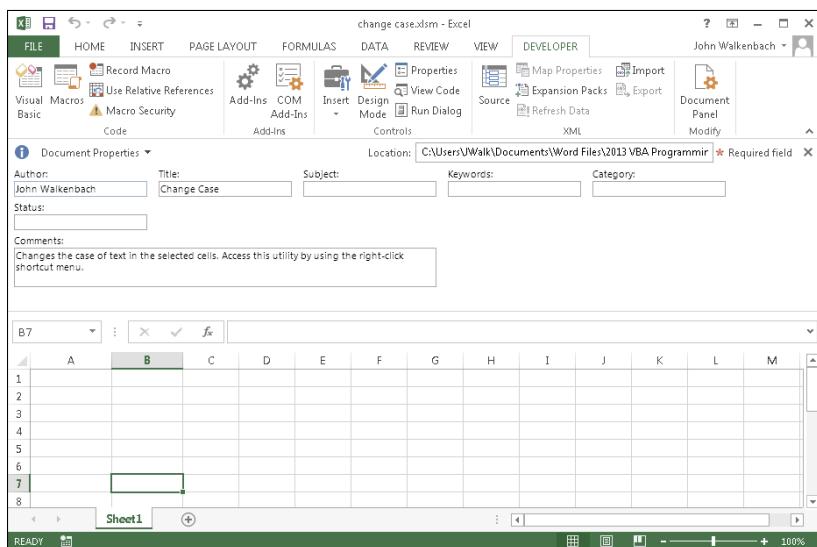
This text appears in the list of add-ins in the Add-Ins dialog box. For this example, enter **Change Case**.

- 4. In the Comments field, enter a description.**

This information appears at the bottom of the Add-Ins dialog box when the add-in is selected. For this example, enter Changes the case of text in selected cells. Access this utility by using the right-click shortcut menu.

- 5. Click the Close button (X) in the upper-right corner of the Document Panel.**

**Figure 21-3:**  
Use the  
Document  
Properties  
panel  
to enter  
descriptive  
information  
about your  
add-in.



## *Protecting the VBA code*

If you want to add a password to prevent others from viewing the VBA code, follow these steps:

1. Activate the VBE and select the change case.xlsxm workbook in the Project window.
2. Choose Tools→VBAProject Properties and click the Protection tab on the dialog box that appears.
3. Select the Lock Project for Viewing check box and enter a password (twice).
4. Click OK.
5. Save the workbook by choosing File→Save from the VBE's menu or by going back to the Excel window and choosing File→Save.

## *Creating the add-in*

At this point, you've tested the change case.xlsxm file, and it's working correctly. The next step is to create the add-in:

1. If needed, reactivate Excel.
2. Activate the change case.xlsxm workbook and choose File→Save As. Excel displays its Save As dialog box.
3. In the Save as Type drop-down menu, select Add-In (\*.xlam).
4. Specify the location and click Save.

A new add-in file (with an XLAM extension) is created, and the original XLSM version remains open.

## *Opening the add-in*

To avoid confusion, close the XLSM workbook before opening the add-in that you created from that workbook.

Open the add-in with these steps:

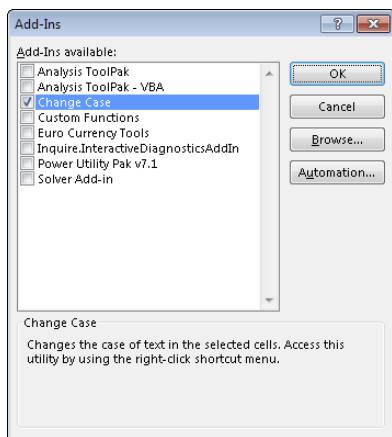
1. Choose Developer→Add-Ins→Add-Ins (or press Alt+T).  
Excel displays the Add-Ins dialog box.
2. Click the Browse button.
3. Locate and select the add-in you just created.
4. Click OK to close the Browse dialog box.

After you find your new add-in, the Add-Ins dialog box lists the add-in. As shown in Figure 21-4, the Add-Ins dialog box also displays the descriptive information you provided in the Document Properties panel.

5. Make sure that the Add-Ins dialog box has a checkmark for your new add-in.

6. Click OK to close the dialog box.

Excel opens the add-in, and you can now use it with all your workbooks. As long as it remains checked in the Add-Ins dialog box, the add-in will be opened every time you start Excel.



**Figure 21-4:**  
The Add-  
Ins dialog  
box has the  
new add-in  
selected.

## Distributing the add-in

If you're in a generous mood, you can distribute this add-in to other Excel users simply by giving them a copy of the XLAM file (they don't need the XLSM version). When they open the add-in, the new Change Case command appears on the shortcut menu when they select a range, one or more rows, or one or more columns. If you locked the VBA project with a password, others cannot view your macro code (unless they know the password).

## Modifying the add-in

An add-in can be edited just like any other workbook. You can edit the XLAM file directly (you do not need to work with the original XLSM version):

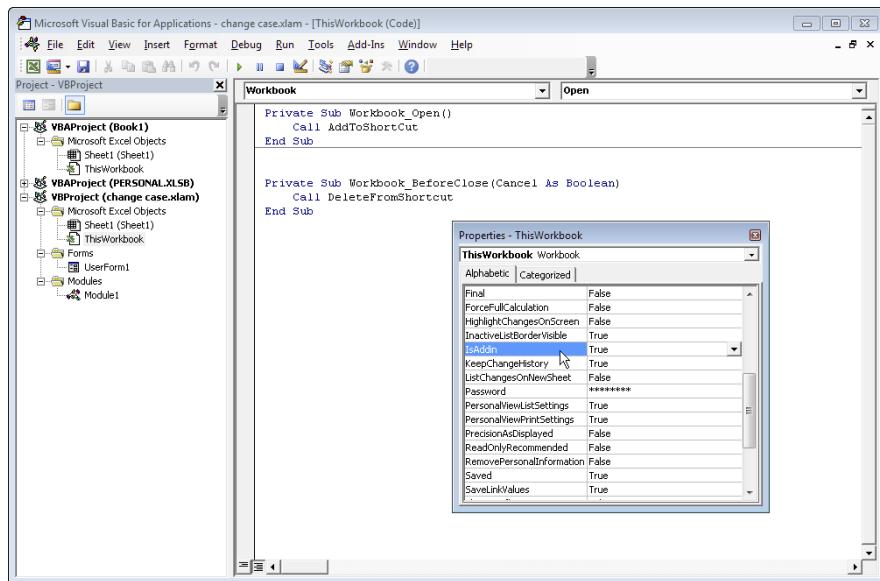
1. Open your XLAM file if it's not already open.
2. Activate the VBE.
3. Double-click the project's name in the Project window.

If you protected the code, you are prompted for the password.

4. Enter your password and click OK.
5. Make your changes to the code.
6. Save the file from the VBE by choosing File→Save.



If you create an add-in that stores information in a worksheet, you must set the workbook's IsAddIn property to False to view the workbook. You do this in the Property window when the ThisWorkbook object is selected (see Figure 21-5). After you've made your changes to the workbook, make sure that you set the IsAddIn property back to True before you save the file.



**Figure 21-5:**  
Making an  
add-in not  
an add-in.

You now know how to work with add-ins and why you might want to create your own add-ins.



## Part VI

# the part of **tens** **guru**



Enjoy an additional Office 2013 Part of Tens chapter online at Dummies.com:  
[www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com)

## *In this part . . .*

- ✓ Discover the answers to common VBA questions
- ✓ Expand your knowledge with ten Excel resources.
- ✓ Find out what you should and shouldn't do in Excel VBA.
- ✓ Enjoy an additional Office 2013 Part of Tens chapter online at Dummies.com: [www.dummies.com](http://www.dummies.com).

## **Chapter 22**

---

# **Ten VBA Questions (and Answers)**

---

### ***In This Chapter***

- ▶ Storing worksheet function procedures
  - ▶ Limiting the macro recorder
  - ▶ Speeding up your VBA code
  - ▶ Declaring variables explicitly
  - ▶ Using the VBA line continuation character
- 

**T**he following ten questions (and answers) address some of the most common issues asked by VBA newcomers.

**I created a custom VBA function. When I try to use it in a formula, the formula displays #NAME?. What's wrong?**

It's possible that you spelled the function incorrectly. But it's more likely that you put your function code in the wrong location. VBA code for worksheet functions must be in a standard VBA module, not in a module for a sheet or in ThisWorkbook. In the VBE, use Insert→Module to insert a standard module. Then cut and paste your code to the new VBA module.

This is a very common mistake, because a Sheet module looks exactly like a standard VBA module. Resist the temptation to put your code there. Spend four seconds and choose Insert→Module.

**Can I use the VBA macro recorder to record all my macros?**

Only if your macros are very simple. Normally, you use it only to record simple macros or as a starting point for a more complex macro. The macro recorder can't record macros that use variables, looping, or any other type of program flow constructs. In addition, you cannot record a Function procedure in the VBA macro recorder.

Many people eventually realize that the macro recorder is most useful as a way to identify properties and methods that are relevant to their task.

#### How can I prevent others from viewing my VBA code?

1. Activate your project in the VBE and choose Tools→xxxxx Properties.

The *xxxxx* corresponds to the name of your VBA project.

2. In the dialog box that appears, click the Protection tab and select Lock Project for Viewing.

3. Enter a password (twice) and click OK.

4. Save your workbook.

Doing so prevents casual users from viewing your code, but password protection is certainly not 100 percent secure. Password-cracking utilities exist.

#### What's the VBA code for increasing or decreasing the number of rows and columns in a worksheet?

No such code exists. The number of rows and columns is fixed and cannot be changed. However, if you open a workbook that has been created by using an earlier Excel version (before Excel 2007), the text Compatibility Mode appears in the title bar. This notice indicates that this workbook is limited to the old 256-x-65536 cell grid. You can get out of this mode (and thus get the new, bigger cell grid) by saving the file as a normal (XLSX or XLSM) workbook and then closing and reopening this new file.

You can, however, hide unwanted rows and columns. For example, you can hide all but the first 10 rows and 10 columns, giving you a 100-cell worksheet.

#### When I refer to a worksheet in my VBA code, I get a “subscript out of range” error. I’m not using any subscripts. What gives?

Like many VBA error messages, this one isn’t very informative. This error occurs if you attempt to access an element in a collection that doesn’t exist. For example, this statement generates the error if the active workbook doesn’t contain a sheet named Fido:

```
Set X = ActiveWorkbook.Sheets("Fido")
```

In your case, the workbook that you *think* is open is probably not open (so it’s not in the Workbooks collection). Or, maybe you misspelled the workbook name.

**Is there a VBA command that selects a range from the active cell to the last entry in a column or a row? (In other words, how can a macro accomplish the same thing as Ctrl+Shift+↓ or Ctrl+Shift+→?)**

Here's the VBA equivalent for Ctrl+Shift+↓:

```
Range(ActiveCell, ActiveCell.End(xlDown)).Select
```

For the other directions, use the constants xlToLeft, xlToRight, or xlUp rather than xlDown.

### How can I make my VBA code run as fast as possible?

Here are a few tips:

- ✓ Be sure to declare all your variables as a specific data type. (Use Option Explicit in each module's Declarations section to force yourself to declare all variables.)
- ✓ If you reference an object (such as a range) more than once, create an object variable using the Set keyword.
- ✓ Use the With-End With construct whenever possible.
- ✓ If your macro writes data to a worksheet and you have lots of complex formulas, set the calculation mode to Manual while the macro runs (but make sure you do a calculation when you need to use the results!).
- ✓ If your macro writes information to a worksheet, turn off screen updating by using Application.ScreenUpdating = False.

Don't forget to reinstate these last two settings to their starting value when your macro is finished.

### How can I display multiline messages in a message box?

The easiest way is to build your message in a string variable, using the vbNewLine constant to indicate where you want your line breaks to occur. The following is a quick example:

```
Msg = "You selected the following:" & vbNewLine
Msg = Msg & UserAns
MsgBox Msg
```

**I wrote some code that deletes worksheets. How can I avoid showing Excel's warning prompt?**

Insert this statement before the code that deletes the worksheets:

```
Application.DisplayAlerts = False
```

**Why can't I get the VBA line-continuation character (underscore) to work?**

The line-continuation sequence is actually two characters: a space followed by an underscore. Be sure to use both characters and press Enter after the underscore.

## Chapter 23

# (Almost) Ten Excel Resources

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Using the VBA Help system
- ▶ Getting assistance from Microsoft
- ▶ Finding help online

This book is only an introduction to Excel VBA programming. If you hunger for more information, feel free to feed on the list of additional resources I've compiled here. You can discover new techniques, communicate with other Excel users, download useful files, ask questions, and lots more.



Most of these resources are online services or Internet resources, which tend to change frequently. The descriptions are accurate at the time I'm writing this, but I can't guarantee that this information will remain current. That's how the Internet works.

## *The VBA Help System*

I hope you've already discovered VBA's Help system. I find this reference source particularly useful for identifying objects, properties, and methods. It's readily available, it's free, and (for the most part) it's accurate. So use it.

If you use Excel 2013, be aware that VBA Help is entirely online. That means you must have an Internet connection to access the Help system.

## *Microsoft Product Support*

Microsoft offers a wide variety of technical support options (some for free, others for a fee). To access Microsoft's support services, go here:

<http://support.microsoft.com>

And don't forget about Microsoft's Office site, which has lots of material related to Excel:

<http://office.microsoft.com>

Another great resource is the Microsoft Developer Network site (MSDN). It has lots and lots of information aimed at the developer (yes, that is you!). Here is a link to the main site, where you can search for Excel-related information:

<http://msdn.microsoft.com>

## Internet Websites

Several websites contain Excel-related material. A good place to start your web surfing is my very own site, which is named The Spreadsheet Page. After you get there, you can check out my material and then visit my Resources section, which leads you to dozens of other Excel-related sites. The URL for my site is

<http://spreadsheetpage.com>

## Excel Blogs

You can find literally millions of blogs (short for *weblogs*) on the web. A *blog* is basically a frequently updated diary about a particular topic. Quite a few blogs are devoted exclusively to Excel. I maintain a list of Excel blogs at my site:

<http://spreadsheetpage.com/index.php/excelfeeds>

## Google

When I have a question about any topic (including Excel programming), my first line of attack is Google — currently the world's most popular search site:

[www.google.com](http://www.google.com)

Enter a few key search terms (along with the word *Excel* or *VBA*) and see what Google finds. I get an answer about 90 percent of the time.

## Bing

Bing is Microsoft's answer to the Google search site. Some people prefer it over Google; others don't. If you haven't tried it, the URL is

<http://bing.com>

## Local User Groups

Many larger communities and universities have an Excel user group that meets periodically. If you can find a user group in your area, check it out. These groups are often an excellent source for contacts and sharing ideas.

## My Other Books

Sorry, but I couldn't resist the opportunity for a blatant plug. To take VBA programming to the next level, check out my *Excel 2010 Power Programming with VBA* or *Excel 2013 Power Programming with VBA* (both published by Wiley).



## Chapter 24

# Ten VBA Do's and Don'ts

### *In This Chapter*

- ▶ Discovering five VBA-related things you should do
- ▶ Discovering five VBA-related things you should not do

If you're reading this final chapter, you've probably read most of the content of this book and are familiar with Excel VBA. Or, maybe you just skipped to the end because you wanted to see whether the butler actually did it.

This chapter gives you some advice you should take into account when you start developing your own VBA solutions. Following these guidelines is no panacea to keep you out of (programming) trouble, but following them can help you avoid pitfalls that others have stumbled over.

## *Do Declare All Variables*

How convenient it is: Simply start typing your VBA code without having to go through the tedious chore of declaring each and every variable you want to use. Although Excel allows you to use undeclared variables, doing so is simply asking for trouble.

The first commandment of VBA programming should be this:

Thou shalt declare every variable.

If you lack self-discipline, add “Option Explicit” at the top of your modules. That way, your code won’t even run if it includes one or more undeclared variables. Not declaring all variables has only one advantage: You save a few seconds of time. But using undeclared variables will eventually come back to haunt you. And I guarantee that it will take you more than a few seconds to figure out the problem.

## Don't Confuse Passwords with Security

You spent months creating a killer Excel app, with some amazing macros. You're ready to release it to the world, but you don't want others to see your incredible macro programming. Just password-protect the VBA Project and you're safe, right? Wrong.

Using a VBA password can keep most casual users from viewing your code. But if someone *really* wants to check it, he'll figure out how to crack the password.

Bottom line? If you absolutely, positively need to keep your code a secret, Excel isn't the best choice for a development platform.

## Do Clean Up Your Code

After your app is working to your satisfaction, you should clean it up. Code housekeeping tasks include the following:

- ✓ Make sure every variable is declared.
- ✓ Make sure all the lines are indented properly, so the code structure is apparent.
- ✓ Remove any debugging aids, such as MsgBox statements of Debug.Print statements.
- ✓ Rename any poorly named variables. For example, if you use the variable MyVariable, there's a pretty good chance that you can make the variable name more descriptive. You'll thank yourself later.
- ✓ If you're like me, your modules probably have a few "test" procedures that you wrote while trying to figure something out. They've served their purpose, so delete them.
- ✓ Add comments so you'll understand how the code works when you revisit it six months from now.
- ✓ Make sure everything is spelled correctly — especially text in UserForms and message boxes.
- ✓ Check for redundant code. If you have two or more procedures that have identical blocks of code, consider creating a new procedure that other procedures can call.

## *Don't Put Everything in One Procedure*

Want to make an unintelligible program? An efficient way to accomplish that is by putting all your code inside one nice big procedure. If you ever revisit this program again to make changes to it, you're bound to make mistakes and introduce some fine-looking bugs in there.

Do you see the problem? The solution is modular code. Split your program into smaller chunks, where each chunk is designed to perform a specific task. After you pick up this habit, you'll find that writing bug-free code is easier than ever.

## *Do Consider Other Software*

Excel is an amazingly versatile program, but it's not suitable for everything. When you're ready to undertake a new project, take some time and consider all your options. To paraphrase an old saying, "When all you know is Excel VBA, everything looks like a VBA macro."

## *Don't Assume That Everyone Enables Macros*

As you know, Excel allows you to open a workbook with its macros disabled. In fact, it's almost as if the designers of recent versions of Excel *want* users to disable macros.

Enabling macros when you open a workbook from an unknown source is not a good idea, of course. So you need to know your users. In some corporate environments, all Microsoft Office macros are disabled, and the user has no choice in the matter.

One thing to consider is adding a digital signature to the workbooks that you distribute to others. That way, the user can be assured that it actually comes from you, and that it hasn't been altered. Consult the Help system for more information about digital signatures.

## *Do Get in the Habit of Experimenting*

When I work on a large-scale Excel project, I usually spend a significant amount of time writing small VBA “experiments.” For example, if I’m trying to find out about a new object, method, or property, I’ll just write a simple Sub procedure and play around with it until I’m satisfied that I have a thorough understanding of how it works — and the potential problems.

Setting up simple experiments is almost always much more efficient than incorporating a new idea into your existing code without the understanding of what those experiments bring.

## *Don’t Assume That Your Code Will Work with Other Excel Versions*

Currently, at least five different versions of Excel are commonly used around the world. When you create an Excel app, you have absolutely no guarantee that it will work flawlessly in older versions or in newer versions. In some cases, the incompatibilities will be obvious (for example, if your code refers to cell XDY877322, you know that it won’t work in versions prior to Excel 2007 because those versions used a smaller worksheet grid). But you’ll also find that things that should work with an earlier version don’t work.

Excel includes a handy compatibility checker (choose File⇒Info⇒Check For Issues⇒Check Compatibility), but it only checks the workbook and ignores the VBA code. The only way to be sure that your application works with versions other than the one you created it with is to test it on those versions.

## *Do Keep Your Users in Mind*

Excel apps fall into two main categories: those that you develop for yourself and those that you develop for others to use. If you develop apps for others, your job is much more difficult because you can’t make the same types of assumptions. For example, you can be more lax with error handling if you’re the only user. If an error crops up, you’ll have a pretty good idea of where to look so you can fix it. If someone else is using your app and the same error appears, they’ll be out of luck. And when working with your own application, you can usually get by without instructions.

You need to understand the skill level of those who will be using your workbooks and try to anticipate problems that they might have. Try to picture yourself as a new user of your application and identify all areas that may cause confusion or problems.

## ***Don't Forget About Backups***

Nothing is more discouraging than a hard drive crash without a backup. If you're working on an important project, ask yourself a simple question: If my computer dies tonight, what will I have lost? If your answer is more than a few hours of work, then you need to take a close look at your data backup procedure. You do have a data backup procedure, right?



# Index

## • Special Characters •

- (Subtraction operator), 110  
& (concatenation operator), 110, 200  
( ) (parenthesis), 111  
\* (asterisk), 107  
\* (Multiplication operator), 110  
\*.\* (wild card file filter specification), 244–245  
. (dot) operator, 57  
/ (Division operator), 110  
: (statement separator character), 150  
\ (Integer division operator), 110  
^ (Exponentiation operator), 110  
+ (Addition operator), 110  
= (equal sign), 95, 109  
' (apostrophe), 93–94  
, (comma), 107, 201  
“ “ (double quotes), 56, 115

## • A •

Abs function, 134  
Absolute References mode, 44, 82–83  
accelerator keys (hot keys), 281–282  
Accelerator property  
CheckBox control, 269  
Label control, 285  
OptionButton control, 259, 275, 285  
overview, 267  
setting hot keys, 281

AccessControlById procedure, 317  
AccessControlByName procedure, 317  
Activate workbook event, 164  
Activate worksheet event, 164  
ActiveX Controls group, 74  
Add Watch dialog box, 206  
AddArgumentDescriptions procedure, 346  
AddAWorkbook procedure, 62  
AddChart methods, 220–221  
add-ins  
creating, 350–351, 355  
defined, 347  
descriptive information, adding, 354  
distributing, 356  
loading/unloading, 349  
modifying, 356–357  
opening, 355–356  
password-protecting code, 354–355  
reasons for creating, 348  
setting up workbook, 351  
testing workbook, 353  
XLSM workbook files versus, 347–348  
Add-Ins dialog box, 349  
AddItem method, 291  
Addition operator (+), 110  
AddNumbers procedure, 154  
AddOddNumbers procedure, 154  
Address property, 122  
AddSheets procedure, 241  
AddToShortcut procedure, 320  
AddTwo function, 16  
alert messages, eliminating, 227–228, 364  
And operator, 110  
apostrophe ('), 93–94  
Application object, 16, 54, 57  
Areas method, 219  
arguments. *See names of specific arguments*  
Array function, 134  
arrays  
declaring, 111–112  
defined, 111  
dynamic, 113  
functions that return month names, 341–342  
sorted lists, 342–343  
multidimensional, 112–113  
treating variables as, 120  
Assign Macro dialog box, 74  
assignment statements  
defined, 108  
equal sign operator, 109  
examples of, 108–109  
asterisk (\*), 107  
Auto Data Tips option, Options dialog box, VBE, 49  
Auto Indent setting, Options dialog box, VBE, 49  
Auto List Members option, Options dialog box, VBE, 48  
Auto Quick Info option, Options dialog box, VBE, 48–49  
Auto Syntax Check option, Options dialog box, VBE, 47–48  
autocompletion feature, VBE, 99  
automatic calculation, turning on/off, 226

automating  
defined, 12  
frequently performed  
tasks, 13  
repetitive operations, 13  
AutoSize property, 267, 278

• B •

BackColor property, 268, 300  
BackStyle property, 268  
backups, 373  
BeforeClose workbook  
event, 164, 171  
BeforeDoubleClick worksheet  
event, 164, 176  
BeforePrint workbook  
event, 164  
BeforeRightClick worksheet  
event, 164, 176–177  
BeforeSave workbook  
event, 164, 172  
BeginGroup property, 318  
Bing, 367  
BoldCells procedure, 296  
Boolean data type, 97,  
122–123  
Boolean settings, 219–220  
BorderStyle property, 271  
Break mode, 203–207  
Break On Unhandled Errors  
setting, Options dialog  
box, VBE, 51  
breakpoints  
debugging custom  
worksheet  
functions, 338  
removing, 203  
setting, 202–205  
BuiltIn property, 318  
buttons. *See also* controls,  
UserForm  
adding to Quick Access  
toolbar, 287, 314  
creating custom, 13

executing Sub procedures  
from, 74  
Buttons argument, 234  
ButtonText argument, 243  
Byte data type, 97

• C •

CalcManual procedure, 105  
Call keyword, 76  
CallerSub procedure, 76–77  
Cancel argument, 172  
Cancel property, 271, 286  
CancelButton\_Click  
procedure, 259–260,  
291, 351  
Cancel\_OnKey procedure,  
182  
Caption property  
CommandBar object,  
316–318  
CommandButton control,  
286  
Frame control, 271, 285,  
300  
Label control, 285, 300  
OptionButton control, 285  
overview, 268  
Cell object, 58  
Cell shortcut menu  
adding items to, 320–322  
deleting items from,  
321–322  
disabling, 322–323  
Cells property  
advantage of, 118  
arguments, 118  
defined, 117  
referring to multi-cell  
range, 118  
Change worksheet event  
data validation  
pasting and, 177–178  
preventing destruction  
of validation rules,  
178–179

overview, 164, 178–179  
ChangeCase procedure,  
249, 261–263, 351–354  
ChangeComment function,  
330  
ChangeValue procedure,  
60–61  
ChartMods procedures,  
224–225  
ChartObject object,  
222–223  
ChartObjects collection, 223  
charts  
applying formatting,  
224–225  
creating, 221–222  
displaying in UserForms,  
304–305  
embedded, 222  
looping through  
ChartObjects  
collection, 223  
macro compatibility,  
220–221  
modifying properties of,  
224  
modifying type of, 223  
Charts collection, 55–56  
ChartType procedures, 223  
CheckBox control, 252, 269  
CheckCell procedure,  
151–152  
CheckSelection procedure,  
218  
CheckUser procedures,  
144–146  
Choose function, 134  
Chr function, 134  
cleaning code up, 370  
Clear method, 128  
ClearRange procedure, 61  
clipart collection, 272  
CloseButton\_Click  
procedure, 288  
Code Colors option,  
Options dialog box,  
VBE, 50

- Code windows, VBE  
 creating modules, 40–41  
 entering code into  
   modules  
   by copying, 46  
   directly, 41–44  
   using macro recorder,  
     44–46  
 event-handler procedures,  
     166–167  
 Full Module View, 49  
 minimizing/maximizing,  
     39–40  
 Object drop-down list, 167  
 overview, 34–35  
 Procedure drop-down list,  
     167–168  
 switching among, 40  
 tiling, 40  
 viewing for UserForms,  
     254
- collections  
 commonly used, 55  
 For Each-Next loops with,  
     160–161, 223  
 methods of, 62  
 overview, 16
- Color property, 124–125
- colors  
 cell background, 124  
 text and background, 50  
 theme, 124
- Column property, 121–122
- columns  
 hiding unwanted, 362  
 selecting, 213  
 selecting to end of, 212–  
     213, 363
- ComboBox control, 252, 270
- comma (,), 107, 201
- CommandBar objects  
 controls  
   properties of, 317–319  
   referring to, 316–317  
 listing all menus, 315  
 overview, 314–315  
 re-creating Excel 2003  
   menu bar, 323–325  
 referring to, 315–316
- CommandButton control,  
     253, 257,  
     270–271, 286
- commands, custom, 13
- comments  
 converting statements to  
   when testing, 94  
 overview, 93–95  
 reducing bugs with, 208  
 using effectively, 94–95
- Commission functions,  
     333–335
- Compatibility Mode, 362
- concatenation, defined, 43,  
     110
- concatenation operator  
     (&), 110, 200
- constants. *See also names  
 of specific constants*  
 actual value of, 106  
 declaring, 104–105  
 predefined, 105–106  
 scope of, 105
- context bugs, 197
- controls, UserForm  
 adding, 252–253, 257–259,  
     265–266  
 aligning, 280  
 changing properties of,  
     253–254, 257–259  
 CheckBox, 252, 269  
 ComboBox, 252, 270  
 CommandButton, 253,  
     257, 270–271, 286
- controls, UserForm  
*(continued)*
- Frame  
 example of, 285  
 OptionButtons in, 297  
 overview, 253, 271  
 progress indicator dialog  
   box, 300  
   tab order, 281
- Image, 253, 271–272,  
     304–305
- Label, 252, 272–273,  
     281–282, 285, 300
- limiting number of, 282
- list of, 252–253
- ListBox  
 determining multiple  
   selections, 293–295  
 determining selected  
   item, 292–293  
 example of, 290–295  
 filling, 291–292  
 methods of, 291  
 MultiSelect property, 306  
 overview, 252, 272–274  
 properties of, 291  
 moving, 279
- MultiPage, 253, 274,  
     303–304
- naming, 255–256
- OptionButton  
 examples of, 258, 285  
 overview, 252, 274–275  
 using multiple sets of,  
     297
- properties of  
 changing, 266–268  
 common, 267–268
- RefEdit, 253, 275–276,  
     295–296
- resizing, 279
- ScrollBar, 253, 276, 306
- selecting multiple,  
     279–280
- spacing, 280
- SpinButton, 253, 277,  
     297–299, 306
- stacking, 279
- TabStrip, 253, 277, 303
- TextBox, 252, 278, 285,  
     297–299, 306
- ToggleButton, 252, 279
- ControlSource property,  
     269–270, 273–278
- Copy method, 127
- CopyCurrentRegion  
 procedures, 211–212
- copying  
 entering code by, 46  
 ranges, 127, 210–211  
 tables, 212
- UserForm controls, 286
- variable-sized ranges,  
     211–212

CopyOne procedure, 61  
 CopyRange procedures, 210  
 CopyTable procedure, 212  
 Count property, 121  
 COUNTA function, 289–290  
 CountBold procedure, 161  
 CountBooks procedure,  
   60–61  
 Create Table dialog box,  
   295  
 CreateAChart procedure,  
   221  
 CubeRoot function, 68,  
   76–78  
 CurDir function, 134  
 Currency data type, 97  
 Custom UI Editor for  
   Microsoft Office,  
   311–313  
 Cut method, 214



data tips, 49  
 data types  
   built-in, 97  
   choosing, 98  
   declaring variables as,  
   98–102, 229  
   defined, 96–97  
 data validation  
   pasting and, 177–178  
   preventing destruction  
   of validation rules,  
   178–179  
 UserForms, 289–290  
 data-type bugs, 198  
 date and time calculations  
   Date variables, 107–108  
   displaying system date or  
   time, 130  
   displaying the name of  
   month, 131–132  
   Month function, 135  
   month names, 131–132,  
   341–342  
 Date data type, 97, 107–108

Date function, 134  
 DateAdd function, 134  
 DateDiff function, 134  
 DatePart function, 134  
 DateSerial function, 134  
 DateValue function, 134  
 Day function, 134  
 Deactivate workbook  
   event, 164  
 Deactivate worksheet  
   event, 164  
 debugging  
   bugs versus syntax  
   errors, 198  
 custom worksheet  
   functions, 338  
 defined, 198  
 identifying bugs, 198–199  
 reducing bugs, 208  
 techniques for  
   examining code, 199  
   inserting Debug.Print  
   statements, 201–202  
   using MsgBox function,  
   200–201  
 types of bugs, 197–198  
 VBA debugger  
   Locals window, 207  
   setting breakpoints,  
   202–205  
   Watches window,  
   205–207  
 Debug.Print statements,  
   201–202  
 decision-making constructs  
   If-Then structure  
     Elseif condition, 148  
     examples of, 146–147,  
     149  
   If-Then-Else structure,  
   147–148  
   overview, 144, 146  
   overview, 145  
   Select Case structure  
   examples of, 150–151  
   nested, 151–152  
   overview, 144  
 declarations, defined, 40  
 Default argument, 240  
 Default property, 271, 286  
 Default to Full Module View  
   option, Options dialog  
   box, VBE, 49  
 Delete method, 128  
 DeleteEmptySheets  
   procedure, 160  
 DeleteFromShortcut  
   procedure, 321  
 deletion warning prompt,  
   disabling, 364  
 Delim argument, 336  
 Description box, Record  
   Macro dialog  
   box, 87  
 Developer tab, displaying,  
   21–22  
 dialog boxes, custom. *See  
   also UserForms*  
 GetOpenFilename method  
   arguments, 243  
   example of, 244–245  
 GetSaveAsFilename  
   method, 246  
 InputBox function  
   arguments, 240  
   examples of, 240–242  
 MsgBox function  
   arguments, 234  
   constants, 236–237, 239  
   customizing, 236–238  
   displaying simple, 235  
   getting responses,  
   235–236  
   overview, 233–234  
   selecting directory names,  
   246  
   UserForms versus, 234  
 dialog boxes, displaying  
   built-in, 247–248  
 Dim statements, 99,  
   101–103  
 Dir function, 134  
 DisplayAlarm procedure,  
   179

Division operator (/), 110  
 Docking tab, Options dialog box, VBE, 52  
 docking windows, 52  
 dot(.) operator, 57  
 Double data type, 97  
 double quotes (" "), 56, 115  
 DoUntilDemo procedure, 160  
 DoWhileDemo procedure, 159  
 Drag-and-Drop Text Editing option, Options dialog box, VBE, 49  
 DrawOne function, 338  
 dynamic arrays, 113

## • E •

Editor Format tab, Options dialog box, VBE  
 Code Colors option, 50  
 Font option, 50  
 Margin Indicator Bar option, 51  
 Size setting, 51  
 Editor tab, Options dialog box, VBE  
 Auto Data Tips option, 49  
 Auto Indent setting, 49  
 Auto List Members option, 48  
 Auto Quick Info option, 48–49  
 Auto Syntax Check option, 47–48  
 Default to Full Module View option, 49  
 Drag-and-Drop Text Editing option, 49  
 Procedure Separator option, 50  
 Require Variable Declaration option, 48, 99  
 Elseif condition, 148  
 embedded charts, 222

Enabled property, 318  
 End method, 213  
 EnterButton\_Click procedure, 288–289  
 EnterRandomNumbers procedure, 301–302  
 EnterSquareRoot procedures, 184–188, 191  
 EntireRow property, 213  
 equal sign (=), 95, 109  
 Eqv operator, 110  
 Err function, 134  
 Error function, 134  
 error messages, 43, 186, 361–362. *See also* error-handling techniques  
 error numbers, 193–194  
 Error Trapping setting, Options dialog box, VBE, 51  
 error-handling techniques  
 adding error-handling code to procedures, 185–187  
 On Error Resume Next statement, 192–193  
 On Error statements  
 adding to procedures, 188–189  
 settings for, 189  
 syntax options, 190  
 identifying specific errors, 193–194  
 intentional errors, 194–196  
 Resume statements, 190–192  
 types of errors, 183–184  
 event-handler procedures  
 activation events  
 workbook, 174–176  
 worksheet, 173  
 adding to UserForms, 259–261  
 BeforeClose workbook event, 171  
 BeforeSave workbook event, 172  
 defined, 165  
 Open workbook event, 168–171  
 placement of, 166–167  
 programming, 165–166  
 writing, 167  
 events  
 keypress, 181–182  
 OnTime event, 179–181  
 overview, 62–63  
 types of, 163–164  
 usefulness of, 165  
 workbook  
 activation events, 174–176  
 BeforeClose event, 171  
 BeforeSave event, 172  
 event-handler  
 procedures, 165–168  
 list of, 164  
 Open event, 168–171  
 worksheet  
 activation events, 173  
 BeforeDoubleClick event, 176  
 BeforeRightClick event, 176–177  
 Change event, 177–179  
 event-handler  
 procedures, 165–167  
 list of, 164  
 Excel 2003 menu bar, 323–325  
 Excel blogs, 366  
 Excel Macro-Enabled Workbook (XLSM) extension, 27–28, 347–348  
 Excel settings  
 Boolean, 219–220  
 non-Boolean, 220  
 Excel versions, 18–19, 372  
 Exit For statements, 155, 157  
 Exp function, 134

Exponentiation operator  
(<sup>^</sup>), 110

ExtractElement function,  
340

## • F •

FaceID property, 318

file size, determining, 132

FileDialog object, 246–247

FileFilter argument, 243, 246

FileLen function, 134

FillRange procedure, 157

FilterIndex argument,  
243, 246

FirstName function, 331

Fix function, 134

fixed-length strings,  
106–107

fixed-width fonts, 50

fmMultiSelectExtended  
constant, 294

fmMultiSelectMulti  
constant, 294

fmMultiSelectSingle  
constant, 294

focus, UserForm controls,  
281

folders, designating as  
trusted locations, 30

Font objects, 123

Font option, Options dialog  
box, VBE, 50

Font property, 123

fonts

fixed-width, 50

size setting, 51

For Each-Next loops  
with collections, 160–161,  
223

efficiency, 214–216

Form Controls group, 74

Format function, 134

FormatCells procedure, 94

Forms node, Project  
window, VBE, 37

Formula property, 125–126

FormulaLocal property, 126

formulas, executing

Function procedures  
from, 77–78

For-Next loops

examples of, 153–154  
with Exit For statements,  
155, 157

modifying chart

properties, 224

nested, 157–159

overview, 144

with Step value, 154–155

Frame control

example of, 285

OptionButtons in, 297

overview, 253, 271

progress indicator dialog  
box, 300

tab order, 281

fully qualified references,  
57–58

Function procedures. *See  
also names of specific  
functions*

defined, 40

executing

overview, 76

from Sub procedures,  
76–77

from worksheet

formulas, 77–78

keeping simple, 208

limits of, 330

naming, 69

overview, 16

Sub procedures versus,  
67–68

functions. *See also names of  
specific functions*

built-in

Abs, 134

Array, 134

checking for, 139

Choose, 134

Chr, 134

CurDir, 134

Date, 130, 134

DateAdd, 134

DateDiff, 134

DatePart, 134

DateSerial, 134

DateValue, 134

Day, 134

Dir, 134

Err, 134

Error, 134

Exp, 134

FileLen, 132, 134

Fix, 134

Format, 134

GetSetting, 134

Hour, 134

InputBox, 133, 134

InStr, 134

InStrRev, 134

Int, 134

IsArray, 134

IsDate, 134

IsEmpty, 134

IsError, 135

IsMissing, 135

IsNull, 135

IsNumeric, 135

LBound, 135

LCase, 135

Left, 135

Len, 131, 135

listing, 133

Mid, 135

Minute, 135

Month, 135

MonthName, 131–132

MsgBox, 133, 135

Now, 135

Replace, 135

RGB, 135

Right, 135

Rnd, 135

Second, 135

Shell, 133, 135

Space, 135

Split, 135

Sqr, 135

- String, 135  
 Time, 130, 135  
 Timer, 135  
 TimeSerial, 135  
 TValue, 135  
 Trim, 135  
 TypeName, 132, 135  
 UBound, 135  
 UCASE, 135  
 Val, 135  
 Weekday, 135  
 Year, 135  
 custom, 14, 140–141  
 defined, 129, 330  
 Insert Function dialog box  
     description of argument, 345–346  
     description of function, 344–345  
 worksheet  
     LARGE, 137  
     listing, 139  
     MAX, 136  
     MIN, 137  
     PMT, 137–138  
     SUM, 136  
     VLOOKUP, 138–139  
 worksheet, custom  
     arguments, 331–339  
     debugging, 338  
     limits of, 330  
     #NAME error message, 361  
     reasons for creating, 329  
     that return arrays, 341–343  
     wrapper, 339–341  
     writing, 331
- G •**
- General tab, Options dialog box, VBE, 51  
 GetAFolder procedure, 246–247  
 GetAnswer procedures, 235–238
- H •**
- GetData procedure, 286  
 GetFileSize procedure, 132  
 GetImportFileName  
     procedure, 244–245  
 GetLength procedure, 131  
 GetName procedure, 241  
 GetOpenFilename method  
     arguments, 243  
     example of, 244–245  
 GetPrice procedure, 138–139  
 GetRange procedure, 242  
 GetSaveAsFilename  
     method, 246  
 GetSetting function, 134  
 GetValue procedures, 216–217  
 global (public) variables, 103  
 Google, 367  
 GoTo method, 127  
 GreetMe procedures, 146–148  
 GroupName property, 275, 297  
 GuessName procedure, 42–44
- I •**
- HasFormula property, 122–123  
 Height property, 268, 300  
 Help system  
     VBA, 63–64, 365  
     VBE, 36  
 HideSheets procedure, 161  
 hot keys (accelerator keys), 281–282  
 Hour function, 134
- Id property, 317  
 If-Then structure  
     ElseIf condition, 148  
     examples of, 146–147, 149
- If-Then-Else structure, 147–148  
 overview, 144, 146  
 If-Then-Else structure, 147–148  
 Image control, 253, 271–272, 304–305  
 Immediate window, VBE  
     debugging, 204–205  
     determining actual value  
         of constants, 106  
     hiding/revealing, 35  
     overview, 34–36  
 Imp operator, 110  
 indentation  
     automatic, 49  
     reducing bugs with, 208  
 Index property, 316  
 InitialFileName argument, 246  
 InputBox function  
     arguments, 240  
     examples of, 240–242  
     overview, 133–134  
 InputBox method, 242  
 InRange argument, 336–337  
 Insert Function dialog box  
     calling functions from  
     worksheet formulas, 77–78  
     description of argument, 345–346  
     description of function, 344–345  
 InStr function, 134, 331  
 InStrRev function, 134  
 Int function, 134  
 Integer data type, 97  
 Integer division operator  
     (\), 110  
 IntegralHeight property, 273, 278  
 IntelliSense, 48  
 Interior objects, 125  
 Interior property, 125

Invalid procedure call  
or argument error  
message, 185, 191  
IsArray function, 134  
IsDate function, 134  
IsEmpty function, 134  
IsError function, 135  
IsLike function, 341  
IsMissing function, 135  
IsNull function, 135  
IsNumeric function, 135

## • J •

JoinText function, 336

## • L •

Label control, 252, 272–273,  
281–282, 285, 300  
labels, code, 114, 144  
LARGE function, 137, 336  
LargeChange property, 276  
LBound function, 135  
LCase function, 135, 261  
left function, 135, 337–338  
Left property, 268, 300  
LegendMod procedure, 224  
len function, 131, 135  
Like operator, 341  
line numbers, 114  
line-continuation  
    characters, 42, 109, 364  
ListBox control  
    determining multiple  
        selections, 293–295  
    determining selected item,  
        292–293  
    example of, 290–295  
    filling, 291–292  
    methods of, 291  
    MultiSelect property, 306  
    overview, 252, 272–274  
    properties of, 291  
ListCount property, 291  
ListIndex property, 291, 293

ListRows property, 270  
ListStyle property, 270, 273  
local user groups, 367  
Locals window, 207  
logic flaws, 197  
logical operators, 110  
Long data type, 97–98  
LOOKUP table function, 333  
loops  
    Do-Until, 144, 159–160  
    Do-While, 144, 159  
For Each-Next  
    with collections,  
        160–161, 223  
    efficiency, 214–216  
For-Next  
    examples of, 153–154  
    with Exit For statement,  
        155, 157  
    modifying chart  
        properties, 224  
    nested, 157–159  
    overview, 144  
    with Step value, 154–155  
reasons for using, 153  
speed of, 156

## • M •

Macro dialog box,  
executing Sub  
procedures from, 70, 72  
Macro name box, Record  
Macro dialog box, 87  
Macro Options dialog  
box, 73  
macro recorder  
    absolute mode, 82–83  
    entering code using, 44–46  
    identifying properties and  
        methods, 208  
    inefficiency of, 88–90  
    limits of, 81–82, 361–362  
    overview, 79–82  
    preparing to record,  
        79–82

Record Macro dialog box  
    Description box, 87  
    Macro name box, 87  
    overview, 86–87  
    Shortcut key option, 87  
    Store Macro In option, 87  
relative mode, 83–85  
viewing code, 85–86  
Macro Settings tab, Trust  
    Center dialog box, 5  
Macro1 procedure, 88–90  
MacroOptions method, 345  
macros  
    absolute references, 82–83  
    accessing  
        re-creating Excel 2003  
            menu bar, 323–325  
        Ribbon customization,  
            307–314  
        shortcut menu  
            customization, 314–323  
    creating macro-driven  
        applications, 14  
defined, 12  
describing, 87  
enabling/disabling, 5–6,  
    29, 371  
extra statements, 26,  
    89–90  
inefficiency of, 88–90  
modifying, 27  
naming, 87  
preparing to record,  
    22–23, 79–82  
recording, 23–24, 80–81  
relative references, 83–85  
saving workbooks that  
    contain, 27–28  
security, 28–30  
shortcut keys, assigning,  
    87  
speeding up  
    by declaring variable  
        types, 229  
    by eliminating alert  
        messages, 227–228

- by simplifying object references, 228  
 tips for, 363  
 by turning off automatic calculation, 226  
 by turning off screen updating, 226  
 by using With-End With structure, 229–230  
 storing, 87  
 testing, 24  
 viewing code, 25–27, 85–86  
**MakeBold** procedure, 213  
**MakeCheckerboard** procedure, 159  
**MakeOldMenus** procedure, 323–325  
**Margin Indicator Bar**  
 option, Options dialog box, VBE, 51  
**MAX** function, 136  
**Max** property, 276–277, 298  
**MaxLength** property, 278  
 menu bar  
 re-creating Excel 2003, 323–325  
 VBE, 34–35  
**methods.** *See also names of specific methods*  
 arguments, 61–62  
 automatically listing, 65  
 collection, 62  
 overview, 17, 58–59  
 referring to, 18  
**Microsoft Developer Network (MSDN)**, 366  
**Microsoft Excel Objects**  
 node, Project window, VBE, 37  
**Microsoft Office support**, 366  
**Microsoft product support**, 365  
**Mid** function, 135, 155  
**MIN** function, 137  
**Min** property, 276–277, 298  
**Minute** function, 135  
**MOD** function, 109  
**Mod** operator, 109–110  
**ModifyChart** procedures, 223  
 module-only scope, 100  
 module-only variables, 102–103  
**modules**, VBA  
 adding, 37  
 advantage of, 371  
 character limit, 40–41  
 creating, 40–41  
 defined, 330  
 entering code into  
 by copying, 46  
 directly, 41–44  
 using macro recorder, 44–46  
 overview, 15–16  
 removing, 38  
**Modules** node, Project window, VBE, 37  
**modulo arithmetic**, 109–110  
**Month** function, 135  
**MonthNames** function, 341–342  
**mortgage payment calculations**, 137  
**MoveRange** procedures, 214  
**MSDN (Microsoft Developer Network)**, 366  
**MsgBox** function  
 arguments, 234  
 constants, 236–237, 239  
 customizing, 236–238  
 debugging, 200–201, 338  
 displaying multiline messages, 363  
 displaying results, 60  
 displaying simple, 235  
 getting responses, 235–236  
 overview, 133, 135  
**MsgBoxDemo** procedure, 235  
**msoBarTypePopup**  
 constant, 315  
**multidimensional arrays**, 112–113  
**MultiLine** property, 278, 306  
**MultiPage** control, 253, 274, 303–304  
**MultipleSelection**  
 procedure, 218  
**Multiplication operator (\*)**, 110  
**MultiplyTwo** function, 140–141  
**MultiSelect argument**, 243  
**MultiSelect** property, 273–274, 291, 293–294, 306  
**MySub** procedure, 101, 103

• N •

- N argument**, 337  
**#NAME** error message, 361  
**Name** property, 268, 285–286, 300, 317  
**NameAndTime** procedure  
 modifying, 27  
 preparing to record, 22–23  
 recording, 23–24  
 running in other workbooks, 30  
 testing, 24  
 viewing code, 25–27  
**NestedLoops** procedure, 158  
**NewSheet** workbook event, 164  
**NewSub** macro, 75–76  
**Not** operator, 110  
**Now** function, 135  
**Null** returns, 122  
**NumberFormat** function, 339–340  
**NumberFormat** property, 126

## • O •

Object Browser tool, VBE, 64–65  
 Object data type, 97  
 Object variable or With block variable not set error message, 186–187  
 objects  
   active, 17  
   collections of, 16, 55  
   as containers, 16  
   events, 62–63  
   Excel as an object, 16, 54  
   exporting, 38  
   hierarchy of, 16, 54–55, 57  
   importing, 39  
   methods of  
     arguments, 61–62  
     collection, 62  
     defined, 18  
     overview, 58–59  
   overview, 16–18, 53  
   properties of  
     changing, 60–61  
     defined, 17  
 objects  
   properties of (*continued*)  
     displaying, 60  
     overview, 58–59  
   referring to  
     navigating through hierarchy, 57  
     overview, 17, 56  
     simplifying references, 57–58, 228  
 Office Compatibility Pack, 19  
 Offset property, 118–119  
 OKButton\_Click procedure, 260–261, 292, 294, 296, 352–353  
 On Error Resume Next statement, 192–193, 208, 215

On Error statements  
   adding to procedures, 188–189  
   settings for, 189  
   syntax options, 190  
 OnAction property, 318  
 OnKey method, 181–182  
 Open workbook event, 164, 168–171  
 operators. *See also names of specific operators*  
   list of, 110  
   logical, 110  
   Mod, 109–110  
   order of precedence, 110–111  
 Option Explicit statement, 48, 98–99, 208, 369  
 OptionButton control  
   examples of, 258, 285  
   overview, 252, 274–275  
   using multiple sets of, 297  
 Options dialog box, VBE  
 Docking tab, 52  
 Editor Format tab  
   Code Colors option, 50  
   Font option, 50  
   Margin Indicator Bar option, 51  
   Size setting, 51  
 Editor tab  
   Auto Data Tips option, 49  
   Auto Indent setting, 49  
   Auto List Members option, 48  
   Auto Quick Info option, 48–49  
   Auto Syntax Check option, 47–48  
   Default to Full Module View option, 49  
   Drag-and-Drop Text Editing option, 49

Procedure Separator option, 50  
 Require Variable Declaration option, 48, 99  
 General tab, 51  
 Or operator, 110  
 • P •  
 page breaks, turning on/off, 219  
 parenthesis (()), 111  
 passwords  
   add-ins, 354–355  
   security and, 370  
   VBE projects, 36, 362  
 Paste method, 127  
 Path property, 132  
 Personal Macro Workbook, storing macros in, 30, 87  
 PgDn\_Sub procedure, 181–182  
 PgUp\_Sub procedure, 182  
 Picture property, 268, 272  
 PictureSizeMode property, 272  
 PMT function, 137–138  
 PmtCalc procedure, 137  
 Private statements, 102  
 Procedure Separator option, Options dialog box, VBE, 50  
 procedure-only variables, 100–102  
 ProcessCells procedure, 214  
 program flow control  
   Do-Until loops, 144, 159–160  
   Do-While loops, 144, 159  
 For Each-Next loops with collections, 160–161

For-Next loops  
 examples of, 153–154  
 with Exit For statement,  
 155, 157  
 nested, 157–159  
 overview, 144  
 with Step value, 154–155  
 GoTo statements, 144–145  
 If-Then structure  
   Elseif condition, 148  
   examples of, 146–147,  
   149  
 If-Then-Else structure,  
 147–148  
 overview, 144, 146  
 overview, 143–144  
 Select Case structure  
   examples of, 150–151  
   nested, 151–152  
   overview, 144  
 progress indicator  
   functionality, 299–302  
 Project window (Project  
   Explorer  
     window), VBE  
   adding modules, 37  
   exporting objects, 38  
   hiding/revealing, 35  
   importing objects, 39  
   overview, 25–26, 34–37  
   removing modules, 38  
 projects, VBE, 36  
 Prompt argument, 234, 240  
 PROPER worksheet  
   function, 261  
 properties. *See also names  
   of specific properties*  
   automatically listing, 65  
   changing, 60–61  
   displaying, 60  
   overview, 17, 58–59  
   referring to, 17  
 public (global) variables,  
 103  
 Public statements, 103

## • Q •

Quick Access toolbar,  
 adding buttons to, 287,  
 314  
 quotation marks, 56, 115

## • R •

Range objects  
 copying ranges, 210–211  
 copying variable-sized  
 ranges, 211–212  
 defined, 115  
 determining selection  
 type, 217–218  
 identifying multiple  
 selection, 218–219  
 looping through ranges,  
 214–216  
 methods of  
   Clear, 128  
   Copy, 127  
   Delete, 128  
   Paste, 127  
   Select, 126–127  
 moving ranges, 213–214  
 overview, 209–210  
 prompting for cell value,  
 216–217  
 properties of  
   Address, 122  
   Column, 121–122  
   Count, 121  
   Font, 123  
   Formula, 125–126  
   HasFormula, 122–123  
   Interior, 125  
   NumberFormat, 126  
   overview, 119  
   Row, 121–122  
   Text, 121  
   Value, 120  
 referring to  
 overview, 115–116

via Cells property,  
 117–118  
 via Offset property,  
 118–119  
 selecting noncontiguous  
 ranges, 116–117  
 selecting row or column,  
 213  
 selecting to end of row or  
 column, 212–213  
 size of, 115  
 RangeConfusion procedure,  
 96  
 read-only properties, 119  
 Record Macro dialog box  
   Description box, 87  
   Macro name box, 87  
   overview, 23–24, 86–87  
   Shortcut key option, 87  
   Store Macro In option, 87  
 ReDim statement, 113  
 redo function, VBE, 42  
 RefEdit control, 253,  
 275–276, 295–296  
 Relative References mode,  
 23, 82–85  
 RemoveAllItems method, 291  
 Replace function, 135  
 Require Variable  
   Declaration option,  
   Options dialog box,  
   VBE, 48, 99  
 ResetAll procedure, 320  
 Resume statements,  
 190–192  
 RGB function, 124, 135  
 Ribbon customization  
   automatically with XML,  
 310–314  
   Custom UI Editor for  
     Microsoft Office,  
 311–313  
 manually  
   by adding macros, 310  
   with groups, 308–309  
   with tabs, 308–310

Right function, 135  
right-click menu  
  customization.  
  See shortcut menu  
  customization  
Rnd function, 135  
routines, defined, 41  
Row property, 121–122  
rows  
  EntireRow property, 213  
  hiding unwanted, 362  
  ListRows property, 270  
  Row property, 121–122  
  RowSource property, 270, 273  
  selecting, 213  
  selecting to end of, 212–213, 363  
  ShadeEveryThirdRow procedure, 154–155  
RowSource property, 270, 273  
Run Sub/UserForm command, 70–72

## • S •

SaveAsUI argument, 172  
SayIt function, 340–341  
screen updating, turning on/off, 226  
ScrollBar control, 253, 276, 306  
ScrollBars property, 278  
Second function, 135  
security  
  checking settings, 5  
  macros, 28–30  
  passwords  
  add-ins, 354–355  
  limits of, 370  
  VBE projects, 36, 362  
Select Case structure  
  examples of, 150–151  
  nested, 151–152  
  overview, 144

Select method, 126–127  
SelectColumn procedure, 213  
SelectDown procedure, 212  
Selected property, 291  
selecting  
  determining selection type, 217–218  
  directory names, 246–247  
  to end of row or column, 212–213, 363  
  identifying multiple selection, 218–219  
  identifying selected object, 132  
  noncontiguous ranges, 116–117  
  ranges, 126–127  
  row or column, 213  
SelectionChange worksheet event, 164  
SelectionSqrt procedure, 192–194  
Sentence Case option, 351–352  
separator bars, 50  
SetAlarm procedure, 179  
Setup\_OnKey procedure, 181–182  
ShadeEveryThirdRow procedure, 154–155  
shapes, executing Sub procedures from, 75  
SheetActivate workbook event, 164  
SheetBeforeDoubleClick workbook event, 164  
SheetBeforeRightClick workbook event, 164  
SheetChange workbook event, 164  
SheetDeactivate workbook event, 164  
Sheets collection, 55–56  
SheetSelectionChange workbook event, 164  
Shell function, 133, 135  
shortcut (right-click) menu  
  customization  
  adding items to, 320–322  
CommandBar objects  
  controls, properties of, 317–319  
  controls, referring to, 316–317  
  referring to, 315–316  
deleting items from, 321–322  
disabling menus, 322–323  
listing all menus, 315–316  
overview, 314–315  
resetting all built-in, 320  
Shortcut key option, Record Macro dialog box, 87  
shortcut keys, assigning, 23, 44, 73, 87  
Show method, 255  
ShowCaption procedure, 317  
ShowCubeRoot procedure, 70–71  
ShowDate procedure, 130  
ShowDialog procedure, 303  
ShowDialogBox procedure, 255  
ShowDiscount procedures, 149–150  
ShowList procedure, 292  
ShowMax procedure, 136  
ShowMessage procedure, 68, 313  
ShowMonthName procedure, 131  
ShowSelectionType procedure, 132  
ShowShortcutMenuItems procedure, 318–319  
ShowShortcutMenusName procedure, 315  
ShowValue procedure, 60  
Single data type, 97

- Size setting, Options dialog box, VBE, 51  
 SkipBlanks procedures, 215–216  
 SmallChange property, 276–277  
 Sorted function, 342–343  
 Space function, 135  
 Speak method, 340–341  
 SpecialCells method, 215–216, 353  
 SpecialEffect property, 300  
 SpinButton control, 253, 277, 306  
**SpinButton1\_Change** procedure, 298  
 Split function, 135  
 Spreadsheet Page, 366  
 Sqr function, 135  
 Standard toolbar, VBE, 34–35  
 statement separator character (:), 150  
 statements  
   break up lengthy lines, 42  
   converting to comments when testing, 94  
   defined, 42  
 Static statements, 103–104  
 static variables, 103–104  
 Step value, 154–155  
 Stop keyword, 204  
 StopClock procedure, 180–181  
 Store Macro In option, Record Macro dialog box, 87  
 StrConv function, 261  
 strictly-typed languages, 97  
 String data type, 97, 106–107  
 String function, 135  
 strings  
   determining length of, 131  
   fixed-length, 106–107  
   variable-length, 106  
 structured programming, defined, 145  
 Style property, 270, 274, 304  
 Sub procedures. *See also names of specific procedures*  
   defined, 40  
   executing  
     from another procedure, 75–76  
     from buttons, 74  
     directly, 70–72  
     from Macro dialog box, 70, 72  
     overview, 69–71  
     from shapes, 75  
     using shortcut key, 70, 72–73  
 Function procedures, executing from, 76–77  
 Function procedures versus, 67–68  
 identifying, 27  
 keeping simple, 208  
 naming, 69  
 overview, 16  
 Subscript out of range error message, 362  
 Subtraction operator (-), 110  
 SUM formula, 125, 129  
 SUM function, 136  
 syntax errors, 198  
 syntax-checking feature, 47–48
- T •**
- Tab Order dialog box, 281  
 TabIndex property, 285–286  
 TabOrientation property, 304  
 TabStrip control, 253, 277, 303  
 TenByTen procedure, 44–46  
 Text property, 121  
 TextAlign property, 268, 278  
 TextBox control, 252, 278, 285, 306  
**TextBox1\_Change** procedure, 299  
 TextPart function, 155  
 ThemeColor property, 124  
 ThisMonth variable, 131  
 Time function, 135  
 Timer function, 135  
 TimeSerial function, 135  
 TimeTest procedure, 156  
 TimeValue function, 135  
 TintAndShade property, 124  
 Title argument, 234, 240, 243, 246  
 Toggle Case option, 351–352  
 ToggleButton control, 252, 279  
 ToggleCalcMode procedure, 220  
 TogglePageBreaks procedure, 219  
 toolbars, VBE, 34–35  
 ToolTipText property, 318  
 Top property, 268, 300  
 TopAvg function, 337  
 Trim function, 135  
 Trust Center dialog box, 5–6, 28  
 trusted locations, 30  
 Type mismatch error message, 186  
 Type property, 315  
 TypeName function, 135
- U •**
- UBound function, 135  
 UCase function, 135, 261

- UDFs (User Defined Functions). *See* functions
- undo function, VBE, 42
- UnhideSheets procedure, 161
- UpdateChart procedure, 305
- UpdateClock procedure, 180
- UpdatePrices procedure, 195–196
- UpdateProgress procedure, 302
- User Defined category, Insert Function dialog box, 77–78
- User Defined Functions (UDFs). *See* functions
- User function, 332, 339
- UserForm\_Initialize procedure, 292
- UserForms
- adding, 265
  - aesthetics of, 282
  - charts, displaying in, 304–305
  - controls
    - adding, 252–253, 257–259, 265–266
    - aligning, 280
    - changing properties of, 253–254, 257–259  - CheckBox, 252, 269
  - checklist for, 305–306
  - ComboBox, 252, 270
  - CommandButton, 253, 257, 270–271, 286
  - copying, 286
  - Frame, 253, 271, 281, 285, 297, 300
  - Image, 253, 271–272, 304–305
  - Label, 252, 272–273, 281–282, 285, 300
  - limiting number of, 282
- ListBox, 252, 272–274, 290–295, 306
- moving, 279
- MultiPage, 253, 274, 303–304
- OptionButton, 252, 258, 274–275, 285, 297
- properties of, changing, 266–268
- properties of, common, 267–268
- RefEdit, 253, 275–276, 295–296
- resizing, 279
- ScrollBar, 253, 276, 306
- selecting multiple, 279–280
- spacing, 280
- SpinButton, 253, 277, 297–299, 306
- stacking, 279
- TabStrip, 253, 277, 303
- TextBox, 252, 278, 285, 297–299, 306
- ToggleButton, 252, 279
- creating, 284–285
- checklist for, 305–306
- example of, 256
- overview, 250–251
- custom dialog boxes
- versus, 234
- data validation, 289–290
- displaying, 255, 261
- event-handler procedures, adding, 259–261, 288–289
- grid, turning on/off, 265
- inserting, 251–252
- keyboard functionality
- hot keys, setting, 281–282
  - overview, 280
  - tab order, changing, 281
- macro for displaying
- making available, 262–263, 286–287
- testing, 263–264, 287–288
- writing, 261, 286
- modeless tabbed, 303–304
- progress indicator
- functionality, 299–302
- range selection
- functionality, 295–296
- testing, 282
- using information from, 255–256
- viewing Code window for, 254
- when to use, 249–250
- UserName property, 331–332

• V •

- Val function, 135
- Value property
- CheckBox control, 269
  - ComboBox control, 270
  - ScrollBar control, 273, 291
  - MultiPage control, 274, 304
  - OptionButton control, 275, 285, 297
- overview, 60, 120, 268
- ScrollBar control, 276
- SpinButton control, 277
- variable-length strings, 106
- variables
- declaring, 98–102, 229, 369
  - defined, 95
  - life of, 104
  - naming, 95–96
  - overview, 17
  - purging all from memory, 104
- scope of
- module only, 100, 102–103
  - overview, 100
  - procedure only, 100–102
  - public, 103
  - static, 103–104
- treating as arrays, 120

- Variant data type, 97–98, 120, 122, 245
- VBA (Visual Basic for Applications)
- advantages of, 14–15
  - capabilities of
    - automating frequently performed tasks, 13
    - automating repetitive operations, 13
    - creating custom add-ins, 14
    - creating custom buttons, 13
    - creating custom commands, 13
    - creating custom functions, 14
    - creating macro-driven applications, 14
    - inserting text, 13
    - overview, 12
  - components of
    - collections, 16
    - methods, 17
    - modules, 15–16
    - objects, 16–18
    - procedures, 16
    - properties, 17
    - variables, 17
  - disadvantages of, 15
  - overview, 11
- vbAbort constant, 239
- vbAbortRetryIgnore constant, 237
- vbCancel constant, 239
- vbCritical constant, 237
- vbDefaultButton constants, 237
- VBE (Visual Basic Editor)
- activating, 33–34
  - Code windows
    - creating modules, 40–41
    - entering code by copying, 46
    - entering code directly, 41–44
    - entering code using macro recorder, 44–46
    - minimizing/maximizing, 39–40
    - overview, 34–35
    - switching among, 40
    - tiling, 40
  - components of
    - Code windows, 34–35
    - Immediate window, 34–36
    - menu bar, 34–35
    - overview, 34
    - Project window, 34–35
    - shortcut menus, 35
    - toolbars, 34–35
  - new features of, 36
  - Options dialog box
    - Docking tab, 52
    - Editor Format tab, 50–51
    - Editor tab, 47–50
    - General tab, 51
  - Project window
    - adding modules, 37
    - exporting objects, 38
    - importing objects, 39
    - overview, 34–37
    - removing modules, 38
    - undo and redo functions, 42
  - vbExclamation constant, 237
  - vblgnore constant, 239
  - vblnformation constant, 237
  - vbNewLine constant, 200, 238
  - vbNo constant, 239
  - vbOK constant, 239
  - vbOKCancel constant, 237
  - vbOKOnly constant, 237
  - vbProperCase argument, 261
  - vbQuestion constant, 237
  - vbRetry constant, 239
  - vbRetryCancel constant, 237
  - vbYes constant, 239
  - vbYesNo constant, 237
  - vbYesNoCancel constant, 237

## • W •

- watch expressions, 206
- Watches window, 205–207
- websites
- Bing, 367
  - Excel blogs, 366
  - Google, 367
  - Microsoft Developer Network, 366
  - Microsoft Office, 366
  - Microsoft product support, 365
  - sample files for book, 8
  - Spreadsheet Page, 366
  - technical updates for book, 8
- Weekday function, 135
- Width property, 268, 300
- wild card file filter
- specification (\*.\*), 244–245
- WindowActivate workbook event, 164
- WindowDeactivate workbook event, 164
- With End-With construct, 222, 225, 229–230
- WordWrap property, 278, 306

workbook events  
activation events, 174–176  
BeforeClose event, 171  
BeforeSave event, 172  
event-handler procedures,  
165–168  
list of, 164  
Open event, 168–171  
**Workbook\_Activate**  
procedure, 175  
**Workbook\_BeforeClose**  
procedure, 171,  
322–323  
**Workbook\_BeforeSave**  
procedure, 172  
**Workbook\_Deactivate**  
procedure, 175  
WorkbookIsOpen functions,  
195–196  
**Workbook\_Open**  
procedure, 168–170,  
322–323  
Workbooks collection, 55  
**Workbook\_SheetActivate**  
procedure, 174–175  
**Workbook\_SheetDeactivate**  
procedure, 174–175

worksheet events  
activation events, 173  
BeforeDoubleClick event,  
176  
BeforeRightClick event,  
176–177  
Change event, 177–179  
event-handler procedures,  
165–167  
list of, 164  
worksheet functions. *See*  
functions  
**Worksheet\_Activate**  
procedure, 173  
**Worksheet\_**  
BeforeDoubleClick  
procedure, 176  
**Worksheet\_**  
BeforeRightClick, 177  
**Worksheet\_Change**  
procedure, 165,  
177–178  
**Worksheet\_Deactivate**  
procedure, 173  
WorksheetFunction object,  
136  
Worksheets collection, 55

wrapper functions  
defined, 339  
ExtractElement function,  
340  
IsLike function, 341  
NumberFormat function,  
339–340  
SayIt function, 340–341  
User function, 339



XLAM extension, 348  
xlCalculationManual  
constant, 105–106  
XLSM (Excel Macro-Enabled  
Workbook) extension,  
27–28, 347–348  
xlToLeft constant, 128  
xlUp constant, 128  
XoR operator, 110



Year function, 135

**Special Offer: Save \$30.00!**

## **Power Utility Pak v7**

*"The Excel tools Microsoft forgot"*

**A \$40.00 value — yours for only \$10.00**

### **Pro-Quality Tools**

PUP v7 is a handy collection of 60 general-purpose Excel utilities, plus 50 new worksheet functions. Download a trial version from the URL at the bottom of this page. If you like it, use this coupon to save \$30 on the licensed version.

### **VBA Source Code Is Available**

You can also get the complete VBA source files for only \$20 more. Learn how the utilities and functions were written, and pick up useful tips and programming techniques in the process. These files are a must-have for all VBA programmers.

### **YES, I want Power Utility Pak v7**

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Company: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

City: \_\_\_\_\_ State: \_\_\_\_\_ Zip: \_\_\_\_\_

#### **Check one:**

PUP v7 Licensed Version ..... \$10.00

Developer's Pak: Licensed version (\$10) + VBA Source (\$20.00) ..... \$30.00

Upon receipt of this coupon, you will receive download instructions via e-mail. Please make your e-mail address legible.

E-mail: \_\_\_\_\_

Credit Card: \_\_\_\_\_ Expires: \_\_\_\_\_

Make check or money order (U.S. funds only) payable to:

**JWalk & Associates Inc.  
P.O. Box 68797  
Tucson, AZ 85737 (USA)**

Download a free 30-day trial version of PUP from:

<http://spreadsheetpage.com>

PUP v7 is compatible *only* with Excel 2007 and later. For earlier versions of Excel, use PUP v6.



# Mobile Apps FOR **DUMMIES**<sup>®</sup>

## There's a Dummies App for This and That

With more than 200 million books in print and over 1,600 unique titles, Dummies is a global leader in how-to information. Now you can get the same great Dummies information in an App. With topics such as Wine, Spanish, Digital Photography, Certification, and more, you'll have instant access to the topics you need to know in a format you can trust.

To get information on all our Dummies apps, visit the following:  
**[www.Dummies.com/go/mobile](http://www.Dummies.com/go/mobile)** from your computer.  
**[www.Dummies.com/go/iphone/apps](http://www.Dummies.com/go/iphone/apps)** from your phone.

